

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

GRAMMAR OF THE TIBETAN LANGUAGE

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

GRAMMAR

OF THE

TIBETAN LANGUAGE

LITERARY AND COLLOQUIAL.

With copious Illustrations, and treating fully of Spelling, Pronunciation and the Construction of the Verb, and including
Appendices of the various forms of the Verb.

BY

HERBERT BRUCE HANNAH, Esq.,



COSMO PUBLICATIONS
N. DELHI-110002 1978 INDIA

CO-S MO PUBLICATIONS. 24-B, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, N. Delhi-110002

SBN 336 00405 2

PUBLISHED BY MRS. RANI KAPOOR, COSMO PUBLICATIONS, 24-B, ANSARI ROAD, DARYAGANJ, N. DELHI-110002, AND PRINTED BY TAJ OFFSET PRESS, URDU BAZAR, DELHI.

PREFACE.

For many centuries Tibet has been a terra incognita—little or nothing being known about it, as regards either its physical conditions or its inner life.

Not, indeed, till a few years ago, when a British force entered Lhasa, the "Place of the minor gods," was the veil withdrawn; and even then the withdrawal was only partial, transient, and very local.

As for the language, though there have been several gallant attempts to plunge into the labyrinthine obscurities of its construction—notably on the part of Alexander Csoma de Körös in 1834 and subsequently of H. A. Jäschke—that also, it must be confessed, remains more or less a mystery; for no one, I take it, is likely to aver that the present state of our knowledge on the subject is at all satisfactory.

Much, no doubt, has been contributed by the more recent labours of Rāi Sarat Chandra Dās Bahādur, Mr. Vincent Henderson, the Rev. Edward Amundsen, and Mr. C. A. Bell, I.C.S. But, in spite of all, even they, and every one else who has taken up the stúdy, will admit that, wherever one treads, the ground still feels uncomfortably shaky, especially in regard to certain aspects of the so-called verb; wherever he gropes there is something that seems ever to elude him; and, amid the weird philological phantoms that flit uncertainly around in the prevailing gloom, his constant cry, I feel very sure, is still one for more light.

I do not for one moment claim for this grammar the character of a scientific work. Many years ago when I was studying the language in Darjeeling, under Kāzi Dawa Sam Dūp—a particularly intelligent and scholarly Tibetan—it was my habit during the course of my morning's lesson to make notes of what I then learnt. After a time these notes became so numerous that for my own convenience I was obliged to reduce them to some degree of order. These ordered notes themselves growing in bulk, the idea occurred to me that I might just as well put them into the form of a book, and this I did—the result being a MS. which has long lain by me, but which is now about to be published.

It is merely another attempt on the part of one who has tried

to profit by the works of others, to re-state (originally for his own private satisfaction) what has already been achieved in a field of obscure and somewhat difficult research; to correct or modify previous effort, wherever correction or modification seemed necessary or desirable; and even, to some extent, to supplement it in one or two respects which appeared to be susceptible of further elucidation and expansion.

Both Literary and Colloquial Tibetan have been dealt with, the particular dialect chosen for exposition being that standard one, known as the 55 or Ü Kā', which is now spoken in and around the centre of Tibetan Civilisation—Lhasa.

This is the dialect in which, as the result of centuries of developing Lamäic culture, the phonetic values of Tibetan are found to have undergone a greater degree of change from those of the original speech than any of the other dialects.

In other regions of Tibet, it is said, the prefixes, superposed letters, and suffixes, are still more or less pronounced as of old, and the original vowel-sounds are still more or less unaltered, in a degree corresponding to the remoteness of the speakers from, or their proximity to, the Holy City.

The difficulties confronting the student of Tibetan are considerably enhanced by the fact that in addition to the Literary Language and the Modern Colloquial, it also possesses a totally different vocabulary the employment of which is de rigueur when one is conversing or corresponding with a person of quality. This is known as the Honorific Language; and besides that there is another called the High Honorific, which is only used when addressing exalted personages such as the Dalai Lama or the Tashi Lama. With these honorific forms of speech, however, this work is not particularly concerned. The student, if so inclined, can easily hunt them up for himself, after he has acquired a working knowledge of the ordinary literary or book language and the modern colloquial.

Attention is particularly invited to the earlier paragraphs of the Grammar dealing with the important subject of Pronunciation, in which an endeavour has been made, on principles more systematic and accurate than those hitherto in vogue, to ascertain, fix, and express roman characters, the subtle distinctions that lurk between the numerous phonetic values of the Tibetan consonants and vowels, also

to the paragraph explanatory of the use of the Tibetan Dictionary; and to the tabular statement showing what dominant consonants in a Tibetan word take particular prefixer

A paragraph has also been exclusively devoted to an exhaustive treatment of the subject of Spelling. This is a most useful accomplishment, and one that the student should take some pains to acquire.

The so-called verb has also been elaborately treated in the body of the book; but in the appendices a novel and perhaps somewhat risky attempt has been made (how far successfully remains to be seen) to present it in the guise of skeleton conjugations or paradigms. These forms, however, should not be taken too literally, as they are not always absolute or rigid expressions, but are liable to frequent modification, or moulding, in accordance with the elusive and temporizing genius of the Tibetan sentence, the construction of which is unique, and can only be appreciated after much mental effort and distress.

As a matter of fact the only real verb in Tibetan is the verb Tobe, whether in the form of War Yin-pa, or War Yo'pa, and the beginner is advised to master it at as early a stage as possible in the course of his studies. He should make special note of the manner in which Literary War differs from Colloquial War Also of the important fact that War is sometimes a substantive verb, meaning To be present, To exist, and sometimes a mere copular or an auxiliary. like War

all other verbs are practically a kind of noun-phrases, dependent for their significations upon the various moods and tenses of these two verbs जिन्न and जिन्न।

Throughout, the observations explanatory of each subject are followed by numerous illustrations, both Colloquial and Literary, the latter being mostly taken from the Tibetan version of the New Testament—a mine of idiomatic wealth. Amongst these illustrations will be found a few culled from Jäschke's and Das's Dictionaries, or from Amundsen's Primer. In most of such cases either the names or the initials of these authors have been given, but in one or two instances (from Amundsen) on p. 256, the reference has been omitted by an oversight.

Up to a certain stage the romanized equivalent of the Tibetan is given: but after that the student is left to discern the proper pronunciation by means of his own unaided skill.

Here it may interest others as well as students of Tibetan to mention that Oh, the jewel in the lotus! Lieutenant-Colonel Waddell's rendering of the celebrated formula www.pc.zr. | 58 | Om mani pā'me hūm, hri, is wholly inadequate and indeed inaccurate.

Om does not mean Oh at all, and the phrase as a whole, is much deeper and more complex in its signification than the above rendering would imply.

Om alone is an all-embracing expression, and stands mystically for the incarnation of the Deity, or rather for the immanence of the Supreme Being in, as well as for Its transcendence above, the phenomenal or existent world, so far as the terms 'immanence' and 'transcendence' are applicable to the relations subsisting between that world and Pure Subsistence. In other words, it stands for the never-ending kosmic process of the self-effacing involution of Paramatman, or Brahman, into Existence, or the world of Matter, and Its self-expressing evolution through Matter back to Substantial Being. This process indeed, constitutes the famous so-called "Wheel of Life" in its Kosmic aspect.

The formula may be roughly analysed thus:

IN - The source of all speech

5 - ,, ,, vitality 5 - ,, ,, thrilling consciousness Embodiment of the Trinity.

Wish-granting jewel; symbolical of temporal blessings also of the Psychical Atman or Spiritual Ego.

प्रहें or प्रहें Lotus; symbolical of biune man and of spiritual re-birth.

5. - It is, or I am, omnipresent.

Sat, the universal Life Principle, or Satyasya Satyam of the Upanishads, i.e., the Noumenal Reality underlying Empirical Reality.

The entire phrase, therefore, merely in this one limited aspect of its meaning (and it may be read in many other ways) signifies—"The Embodiment of the Trinity, or Incarnation of Deity, is my wish-granting jewel in the lotus of spiritual rebirth"; the idea apparently being that since the Kosmical Atman, or Brahman, i.e. the first or inner principle of the universe, and the Psychical Atman, or inner principle of individual Man, are essentially one and the same, our hope of spiritual rebirth is assured in and by the fact of the eternal subsistence of Brahman and the ceaselessness of the kosmic process above referred to—human re-incarnation being a microcosmic effect, or aspect, of the macrocosmic law.

Hence, whenever a lama is heard droning out his Om mani pa' me hum, he is really reciting his version of one of the profoundest creeds known to philosophy—but in most cases probably with an artless ignorance that is equally profound

Another mistake that one often meets with, especially in Theo sophical literature, is that which represents the word Devachan as signifying The dwelling of the gods, doubtless from some vague idea that it is derived from the Perso-Hindustāni words Dewa, 'a god,' and Khān, or Khāneh, 'a dwelling-house.' It is really the Tibetan word \(\sigma_{\sigma} \sigma_{\sigma} \sigma_{\sigma

No one will be better pleased than myself to see any errors in this book corrected, or doubts removed, by competent critics. I am conscious that there must be errors, and I know there are doubts: while the desire of all who are interested in the language cannot but be to see our knowledge of it advanced.

My acknowledgments are due to the grammarians already named, and especially to Mr. Henderson and Mr. Bell, whose respective manuals and vocabularies marked a considerable advance upon the grammars that they supplemented and, if I may say so, displaced. The earlier grammars by Csoma de Körös and Jäschke were concerned for the most part, if not solely, with archaic classical Tibetan. The former's "Colloquial Phrases" were anything but what would now be regarded as colloquial; while Jäschke's colloquial was that of Western Tibet. These grammars, therefore, were not altogether satisfactory for the purposes of modern requirements. Moreover, the manner in which they dealt with the mysteries of the verb left much to be desired. As for the late Rev. Graham Sandberg's grammar, though very elaborate and learned,

X

it did not really constitute a bar to the successful appearance of the Manuals above alluded to. Indeed it may perhaps be said that not until the publication of Mr. Bell's book were the true forms and functions of the verb, and especially of AT and WTT To be, stated with anything like precision and lucidity.

I desire also to acknowledge my obligations to the Hon'ble Vice-Chancellor (Sir Ashutosh Mukerji, Kt.) and Syndicate of the Calcutta University, under whose auspices this contribution to the study of Tibetan has attained the honour and privilege of publication.

Lastly, my grateful thanks are also due to Dr. and Mrs: Denison Ross for much kindness and help accorded from time to time; and perhaps most of all to my Mūnshi, Kāzi Dawa Sam Dūp, and to Mr. David Macdonald of Kalimpong (probably the first Tibetan scholar in India) who was kind enough to go through the entire MS. and to favour me with his critical comments and general approval.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

PRELIMINARY.

				Page
Ş	1.	The TR KA-K'A		1
		I. The η α Kā-Li	••	1
		II. The 'N' A' Ā-LI		-3
ġ	2.	Romanized Equivalents		5
ğ	3.	Phonetic Modifications of Vowels		8
		Notes		11
δ	4.	The Six Reversed Letters		15
§	5.	The Seven Consonants to which _ may be subjoin	ed	16
ģ	6.	The Fourteen Consonants to which a may be subjective.	ined	- 17
ş	7.	The Six Consonants to which 5 may be subjoined	ı	18
Ş	8.	The Six Silent Consonants to which A may be subj	oined	18
ş	9,	The Sixteen Consonants to which a may be subject	ined	18
4	10,	The Twelve Ra-go Consonants		21
ğ	11.	The Ten La-go Consonants		21
5	12.	The Twelve Sa-go Consonants		21
6	13.	The Five Prefixes		22
ş	14.	Initial Letters and the Prefixes each may take		24
		Notes		28
\$	15.	Peculiarities of Pronunciation		29
8	16.	The Ten Consonantal Affixes		33
8	17.	The Eleven Final Duplications		34
8	18.	Colloquial Duplications		37
\$	19.	The Tone System		39
ş	20.	Writing and Punctuation		45

xii

CONTENTS.

								Page
ş	21.	Spe	lling	••	••	•	• • •	50
§	22.	Tra	nsliterat	tion .				55
5	23,			Tibetan Diction			4	. 55
5	24.	Ind	icative	and Differentia	ating Part	ticles	••	57
8	25.	The	Cases o	and their Signs				61
		I.	The No	ominative Case				62
		II.	The Vo	cative Case				63
		III.	The Ol	ojective or Acc	usative C	ase		63
		IV.	The Ge	enitive Case				63
		V.	The Da	ative Case				65
		VI.	The Ag	gentive Case				67
		VII.	The Le	ocative Case				69
	1	III.	The Pe	eriodal or Dura	tional Ca	ise	13.8	71
		IX.	The M	odal Case				73
		X.	The Al	olative Case				75
		XI.	The To	rminative or I	Cransitive	Case		77
9	26.	NU	MERALS.					
		1.	The Co	irdinal Number	8			82
		II.	The Co	ardinals accord	ing to Alp	habetical Enu	niera-	
			tic					85
			Notes	:_ :				
			1.	Pronunciation	ı			86
			2.	Affixes	•			. 86
			3.	Conjunctions				87
			4.	The Indefinit	e Article			87
			5.	Approximate	Numbers			. 87
			6.	Ordinal Num	bers			. 88
			7.	Distributive :	Numbers			- 88
			8.	Aggregates		E/6.6		89
			9.	Fractions				: 89
			10.	Adverbial Ca		mbers		90
			11.		rdinal	,,		91
			12	Definite and		Numerals		91
			13	Noun Substa				93
			14.	Notation by	letters			03

CONTENTS.

xiii

CHAPTER II.

ETYMOLOGY.

				1							Page
ş	27.	The I	Defin	ite Ar	ticle						95
ş	28.	The I	ndef	inite A	Article						99
Ş	29.	The I	Noun								
	A	-STRU	CTUE	E							101
		1. M	Ionos	y!labl	es, Diss	yllal	les, a	nd Pe	olysyllab	les	101
				ffix 8							104
	(n. /	3. Т	The a	offix E	§5.						104
		4. T	he a	ffix đ	יַם.						106
		5. T	he a	ffix 4	1 ∄				••		106
		6. A	bstr	act No	ouns						106
	B.	—Infi	LEXI	ON							
			ender					*			107
		2. N	umb	er							109
		3. C	ase		The second						111
			I. :	Noun	ending i	in a	Vowel				111
		1	II.	,,	,,		না or	L.			115
		I)	II.	,,	 ,,	٠,	5, 5	or	≰I.		116
		I	v.	,,	,,	,,	ৰ', ম	, ۲۰	or Q		116
Ş	30.	THE .	ADJE	CTIVE							
			I. :	Form	and Pla	ce	•				116
		I	IJ	Augm	enting o	f Ac	ljectiv	es			127
		11	I.	The C	omparat	ive	Degree	9			129
		I			perlativ						131
		, 1	7. (ther ?	Methods	of C	ompar	rison	**		134
S	31.	THE !	Pron	OUN.			N.				
3	~.				nal Pron	ouns	,				135
					nsion of			rono	uns		138
					eflexive						140
			1		ounds in						143
		-		Comp	CHARGO IN	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	Toursel		Date of the last o		11.)

xiv

CONTENTS.

			P	age
	V. Possessive Pronouns			
	1. Ordinary Personal Prono	uns ·		144
	2. Reflexive Possessive Pro	nouns		145
	VI. Demonstrative Pronouns	• •	••	147
	VII. The Reciprocal Pronoun			150
	VIII. Interrogative Pronouns			151
	IX. Relative and Correlative Prono	uns		
	A. Relative Pronouns	••		153
	B. Correlative Pronouns	•	••-	160
	X. Indefinite Pronouns			169
§ 32.	Adverbs	••	••	177
§ 33.	Postpositions	**		194
§ 34.	Conjunctions	••		201
§ 35.	र्भेर्य To be			207
§ 36.	र्भेर्'य To have		••	228
§ 37.	भेत्य To be		••	229
§ 38.	THE VERB.			
	I. Preliminary		• •	239
	II. Roots			239
	III. Auxiliary Verbs	••		243
	IV. Auxiliary Particles.			
	(1) में, मुं, गुं, etc.		••	244
	(2) माश, माश, गीश, etc.		••	245
	(3) मीत मीत, गीत, etc.	•		245
	(4) · 5', 5', 8'	.,.	••	246
	(5) 35, 95, 95.	••	••	247
	6) 직적 and 직장			248
	(7, বৃষ্ণ			249
	(৪) মহা			249
	(9) ﴿			25
	(10) ਕਾਂ			25

	CONTEN	15.		x
				Pag
	(11) 貞;			254
	(12) W.			25
	(13) 55.			25
	(14) 5, 5, 5, 5,	शु, व		 257
	(15) यहिन and यहिन			258
	(16) 玄仁	··		259
	(17) 5% and 5% W.	••		 259
v.	Moods and Tenses.			
	A.—Infinitive Mood			259
	B.—The Supine			26:
	C.—The Verbal Noun			265
	D.—Participles			267
	E.—Gerunds	t year.		271
	F.—Indicative Mood.			
	(a) Present			272
	(b) Imperfect			275
	(c) Perfect			276
	(d) Past Indefinit			277
	(e) Pluperfect			279
	(f) Future			281
	GSubjunctive and Con	ditional Mo	oods	283
	H.—Potential Mood			285
	IProbability			288
	JHortative Mood			290
	K.—Purposive Mood			292
	L.—Precative Mood			292
	M.—Permissive Mood			293
	N.—Optative Mood	*		294
	O.—Imperative Mood			296
VI.	The Passive Voice			299
II.	Compound Verbs			300
II.	Verbs of becoming, growing	ing, changing	ng, etc.	303
X.	Inceptives			303
X.	Imminence .			304

xvi

CONTENTS.

		Page
XI. Continuatives		304
XII. Finality or Accomplishment		305
XIII. Desideratives		305
XIV. Frequentatives		306
XV. Use of the PERFECT ROOT in the Colloquial		307
CHAPTER III.		
39. Syntax		308
APPENDIX OF CONJUGATIONS.		
I. COLLOQUIAL W5'To be present; To exist; To	be	310
II. LITERARY Ditto		315
III. COLLOQUIAL WATA To be	7.	320
IV. LITERARY Ditto		325
V. \(\tilde{\pi}_5\) To have; to possess		331
VI. Active, Transitive, 4-Rooted Colloquial V	erb	
नार्द्राचा To send		331
VII. LITERARY Ditto		340
VIII. Passive, 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 455.4	To	
be sent		349
IX. Active, one-Rooted Colloquial Verb AGE 7	To	
8ee		354
X. Neuter, one-Rooted Colloquial Verb 5412.7		00,
be glad, To rejoice	-	360
XI. LITEBARY Ditto	••	361
XII. Passive, 4-Rooted LITERARY Verb 7755	0.	30,
	OI.	
मित्रियर प्रति To be sent		368
XIII. Active, 2-Rooted Colloquial Verb and To	go	37
XIV. LITERARY Ditto		37
XV. 2-Rooted LITERARY Verb QTXT To become,	etc.	38

	CONTENTS.	XVII
		Page
XVI.	Active, 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 354 To do,	
	To make, etc.	397
XVII.	LITERARY Ditto	
XVIII.	Passive, 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 35 5 5 5	903
	or Wall To be made, To be done, etc.	393
XIX.	Passive, 4-Rooted Literary Verb 57 To be	
	made, To be done, etc	394
XX.	Passive, LITERARY Verb 357472977 To be	
	made or done etc	20:

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

ERRATA ET CORRIGENDA.

'age	4, line	l at	bottom.	For	5	read	Ē
,,	8, ,,	5 from	,,	"	lzi.	,,	F
,,	9, ,,]	13 ,,	,,	,,	in col. 2	,,	ī.
,,	12, ,,	6 ,,	top.	,,	"affected"	,,	" effected."
,,	12, ,,	12 ,,	bottom.	,,	"affected"	,,	"effected."
,,	14, ,,	2 ,,	top.	,,	Yata	,,	Yatā.
,,	18, ,,	7 ,,	bottom.	,,	LEN-PA	,,	LÈN-PA.
23	19, ,,	2 ,,	,,	,,	Сно	,,	Ch'o.
,,	21, ,,	1 at	top.	,,	श्रमा.	,,	धर्मे
,,	21, ,,	2 from	,,	,,	Heda	,,	Head.
,,	22, ,,	7 ,,	bottom.	"	শ্ল.	,,	क्ष
,,	22, ,,	в "	,,	,,	ĎA	,,	Ďa.
,,	23, ,,	11 ,,	"	,,	ĞЕВ	,,	ĞЕВ.
,,	25, ,,	7 ,,	top.	,,	Ğ'Ā	,,	Ğ'Ā.
,,	27, ,,	8 ,,	bottom.	,,	Ž	,,	Ž.
,,	27, ,,	7 ,,	,,	,,	ditto.		
,,	28, ,,	4 ,,	"	٠,	Вав	,,	Вав.
,,	31, ,,	6 ,,	top.	,,	m	"	n.
,,	31, ,,	4 ,,	bottom.	,,	BAR	,,	BAR, and
				,,	BA	,,	BA.
,,	33, ,,	3 ,,	top.	,,	ZHYU	,,	ŽHYU, and
				,,	ZHYUM	,,	ZHYUM.
,,	35, ,,	6 ,,	bottom.	,,	Ď.	. ,,	Ü
,,	48, ,,	5 ,,	,,	,,	"lines loping	,,,	"line slop-
							ing."
"	49, ,,	9 ,,	top.	,,	વ	., 46	권 건
,,	49, ,,	14 ,,	,,	,,	" up "	**	"at."
,,	56, ,,	3 ,,		,,	3.	"	त्र
,,	68, ,,	1 at	,,	,,	Ś	,,	é.

XX

XX											
Page	89,	line	10	from	bottom.	For	Źнуг read	ZH	YI.		
,,		,,		,,	,,	,,	ditt	0.			
,,	89,	,,	4	,,	top	,,	ditt				
,,	89,	,,	5	,,	,,	,,				oth pla	aces
,,	91,	,,	3	.,,	,,	,,		read	ZHYI		
.,	91,	1,	4	,,	,,	,,	ZHYI'	,,	ZHYI'		
,,	91,	٠,	4	,,	,,	,,	ZHYIĞ	"	ZHYI	G.	
,,	106,	,,	11	,,	,,	"	5	5.5	رگار		
,,	139,	last	lir	ne.		.,	ビ.ヹヹ.	,,	C.XE.		
,,	140,	line	12	from	bottom.	,,	F	9,	B		
1,	151,	,,	12	,,	,,,	,,	मार्दे:	,,	माने		
,,	153,	,,	10	,,	,,	,,	Delete or l	betw	reen J	and F	Ex.
,,	169,	,,	1	at	top	,,	hath		read t	hat.	
"	243,	,,	10	from	bottom.	,,	महिंद्य र		,, হা	र्नेट.चर	
,,	262,	3,	2	,,	top.	,,	'चेश.		", à	21	
,,	306,	,,	6	`,,,	bottom.	,,	वर्ने सदे				
,;	329,	• ••	.3	• ,,		,,	मन्		,, 6H	ार्च.	
"	347,	last	t di	ie. I	Delete seco	nd ar	nd third dot	bet	ween #	155	
					and	। स्थान	3 1				
,,	351	line	11	from	bottom.	Re	ad "might	be s	ent."		
,,	371,	, ,,	11	, ,,	,,	De	lete " विमा	or -	प्रेचा ०	र उँमा	39.
							and re-inse			Particle	·" on
										-1'A	
							. श्र.वीर.				
"	382	, ,,	10	,,	bottom.	, ,,	दर्गे र		,,	र्जूर.	
,,	386	, ,,	8	3 ,,	"	,,	\$ 5		,,	5 and	for
							बु:		"	वें	

Tibetan Grammar.

CHAPTER I.

PRELIMINARY.

§ 1.—The T Ka-K'a, or TIBETAN GRAPHIC SYSTEM.

I.— শৃথি Kā-li, or Consonantal Series of thirty letters.

Letter.	Name.	Remarks.
η	Ка	Like K in the Urdu word كب KAB, When. A compact sound.
P	K'a	Kh, foreibly aspirated. Like the Persian & Kh.
म्।	Ća	Pronounced softly, from low down in the throat, rather more sharply than hard English G , and in a way that to English ears seems to give it the sound of K .
Г	Nga	Like the sound of ng in the English word sing. It often begins a word in Tibetan. As a final, often represented by a superscribed o, called o TSTATE o Lä'-kor, or o cipher.
3	Cha	Like the Ch in charge. A compact sound.
あ	Chʻa	Chha. A foreibly aspirated ch.
E	Ja, J'a	Like the J in jar. As an initial it is slightly aspirated, and may be pronounced like & ch.

N.B.—For the powers of these letters, as represented by their romanized equivalents, see § 2.

Letter.	Name.	Remarks.
3	Nya	Like the combined sound of the nya in lanyard.
5	Та	A compact dental sound, like the Urdu or Persian , or the Bengali .
व	T'a	Also dental, but forcibly aspirated.
5	Ďа	This is not exactly a dental d, nor is it an aspirated d, as sometimes described, but a dental sound rather like the th in think, as pronounced by some Irishmen; or like the Bengali w, but with a strong similarity to a dental t. A soft sound.
٩	Na	A dental N, softly sounded.
q	Pa	English P, but more fully and compactly pronounced.
Q	P'a	Not Ph (i.e. F, or Fh), but P-h. A strong aspirate.
Q	Ba	Sharper than the English B , and rather like P , but softer than the latter.
en en	Ma	English M, sometimes abbreviated into o, written over the initial, and representing final m, and called o TTT o La'-kor, o cipher. It is also called TTT' To'-kor and is the same as the Sanskrit Anuswara.
र्ड	Tsa	Like the sound of Ts, or Russian Tsē. A compact sound.
为	Ts'a	Not Tsh, but Ts-h, strongly aspirated
Ę	Dz'a	Not Dzh, but Dz-h. Aspirated.
E	Wa	English W.
a	Źhya	Something like the French J in jadis, or Persian), or Russian Zhē, but with a tendency towards the sound sh, and also with the ya sound. Hence, hard z'hya, or soft shya.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Letter.	Name.	Remarks.
я	Źa	English Z, but inclining to sound of s.
q	'a	Spiritus lenis, with a vowel-sound like that in the Urdu word : BAS, Enough; but soft and long, as though gently emanating from the throat. In words from Sanskrit it is used as a "mora," to denote prosodical length, i.e. a long syllable.
W	Ya	English Y, as in yard, you, yoke, ye, yes, yiddish, yea.
=	Ra	English R, well sounded.
a	La	English L, but, at the end of a syllable, sounded either very faintly or not at all, and sometimes
		changed to Z' Ra.
9	Sha	Sh. Full, strong sound.
\$1	Sa	S. Full, strong sound, like ss in hiss, but, at the end of a syllable. not sounded at all.
5	На	H. Well aspirated.
IN	A	Like the vowel-sound in the Urdu word Bas, Enough. Pronounced very short: but a harder, fuller and compacter sound than that of G. The
		sound of UV is inherent in all simple non-final
		consonants unqualified by any vowel-sign, and in all compound consonants sounding as one, when similarly unqualified. It is not inherent in the
		consonant Q which has a softer and more ema
		nating sound.

II.—The UNA A-LI, or Vowel-Series, being five vowels, and four vowel-signs. For the purpose of illustrating the signs, one of the vowels, namely, UN A, which is also regarded as a consonant by Tibetans, is adopted as a basis. Any other consonant, however, would do equally well.

4

Letter.	Name.	Remarks.
94	8	Like a in Bas, Enough. Pronunciation short, hard, compact and full. Inherent in all non-final consonants not qualified by any vowel-signs, and in single-letter and compound-letter syllables sounding as one syllable, when similarly unqualified. Thus, in Etc. Three Posts in the constant of the constant
		fied. Thus, in ST TANO, Path, it is inherent in S but not in the final C. So it is inherent in
		C NGA, I, but not in E NGO, Face; and in
		also ceases to inhere by reason of modifications other than qualifying vowel-signs, as will hereafter be shown. See § 3.
SE .	i	Short, like the i in is. The sign is a called ATG G'I-G'U. The Angle, and it is placed over the letter it modifies. Thus, T KYI, A sign of the Genitive Case.
স্ত	u	Short, like the u in full. The sign is called GRATT ZHYAB-KYU, The hook, and it is placed
		under the letter it modifies. Thus, 5° D'v, A sign of the Terminative Case.
खे	8	Short, like a in made, or the Italian e. The sign is called and Deno-Bu, The standing
		stroke, and it is placed over the letter it modifies. Thus, देने Re-Re, each.
PE	0	Short, like the o in for, or rock. The sign is ~
		called NA-Ro, The horns over the nose, and
		Ro, A corpse; Gono, Price; Trus, To-
		PA, To read : Tay Lo', Lightning : 5 Do, Stone.

§ 2.—The ROMANIZED EQUIVALENTS adopted in this work, showing the Powers of the thirty consonants.

Tibetan Character.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.
		Acute accent, used for instance with g , when \mathfrak{A} GA, is pronounced almost like k ; and with d , when \mathfrak{A} DA, is pronounced almost like T . Thus, \mathfrak{A} GONG, $Price$, because it is pronounced nearly like KONG; but \mathfrak{A} GO, $Door$, pronounced like the ordinary hard English g . So also \mathfrak{A} DE, The , $That$, because it is pronounced almost like dental TE ; but \mathfrak{A} DI, The . This, pronounced as dental d . This sign, placed over any letter, signifies
		a raising of the tone. Spiritus lenis, or gentle breathing. It is placed before a, thus 'a, to represent Q' For example, TTZ' K'A, Order, Command. For simplicity's sake, however, we shall seldom use it. It will never be used to represent Q' as a prefix. Spiritus asper, or rough breathing. Thus FT K'A, for KHA. e.g., QFXT' K'YER-WA, To carry away.
η	K	Tonic pitch high.
	Ġ K'	Pitch lower than K. Pitch deep.

Marine		
Tibetan Character.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.
वा guarded	G	e.g.—মুস ĞAM, Box, Chest. Pitch higher than g.
Ç	Ng	Pitch low; sometimes represented by o Lx'-kor, o cipher.
3	Ch	Pitch very high.
ద్	Chʻ	Pitch lower than ch.
E	J, Jʻ	When an initial, represented by J'. Thus E' J'A, Tea. When it has a prefix, represented by J. Thus, AENI JÜ-PA, To cling: WENI JÄ-WA, To come to, To meet, To pay one's respects to. Pitch very low.
3	Ny	Pitch low.
5	T	Pitch very high.
Į.	T'	Pitch lower than T.
5	D	Pitch very low.
5 guarded	D	e.g.— Š. Do, Sione. Pitch higher than D.
٩	N	Pitch low.
Q	P	Pitch very high.
य	P'	Pitch lower than P.
q	B, W, V	Pitch very deep.
W and o		o (called o M5 M5. Lä' kor, cipher). Is sometimes placed on top of a letter, and stands for a final ng, or m, or ms. The pitch of & is low.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Tibetan Character.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarke
र्ड	Тв	Pitch high.
ಹ	T8'	Pitch lower than Ts.
Ę	Dz	Pitch very low.
21	W	Pitch low.
9	Źhy	Pitch very low. e.g., & ŽHYĀ-MO, Hat, pronounced almost like SHĀ-MO.
Į.	Ż	e.g.,—37 ŹA-WA, To eat, pronounced almost like SA-WA. Pitch very low.
٩	'A	When Q' is a prefix, it is not transliterated at all in this work. Pitch very low.
W	Y	Pitch very low.
5	R	Pitch low.
a	L	Lowest pitch of all.
P	Sh	The state of the s
EJ EJ	S	Pitch high.
5	н	Pitch very high.
PV	A	Pitch low.

No. —The remarks in column 3 regarding Tonic Pitch refer to the Rev. Mr. Amundsen's Tone-system. I would, however, advise the student to direct his attention to the compactness or otherwise of his utterance, and to the shortness or length of his vowel-sounds, rather than to Pitch of Tone. See § 19.

Other letters, compound and reversed, are not included in the above tables. They are dealt with in §§ 4 ct seq.

TIEETAN GRAMMAR.

§ 3.—Phonetic Modifications of the Five Vowels. These are based on the A, as representing any of the thirty consenants.

Tibetan Sound.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.
PD	a	Short, hard and compact, as already explained. Ex. FAN K'AM, Empire, Realm. Pronounced, as regards the vowel-sound, exactly like that of the English word Come. IN differs from Q in that the latter is a long, slow and gentle emanation, while IN is uttered forcibly.
M+dM. }	ā	Long, like a in English far. Ex. 7772 K'A, Order, Command; ATN LA, A courteous expression.
ख त ख स	ā	Long, like a in jar. Ex. 可可 KĀ-SHĀ, A sort of grass: 万円之 TĀ-LE-LĀ-MĀ, Dalai Lama, or ĞYĀ-WA RIM-PO-CH'E; 是写 L'Ā-SĀ.
	â, â, wā,	Long. like the o in corner, or the aw in Bawl, or the Chinese wā as in Kwān, in transliterations from Sanskrit, Indian, Chinese or other foreign languages. Thus,

Tibetan Sound.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.
14+4. } 14+4. }	ä	wise have read NGK-PO; 57817 DA-PO, A district of Tibet south-east of U and Kongpo, which might otherwise have read GK-PO. Short, like a in can. Ex. 76647 ZHYÄN-PA (pronounced ZHYÄM-PA) other: or, 5570 DK'-PA, Faith.
(A)+bi. }	ä	Long, like a in can't, as pronounced by a Yankee. Ex. 分可執 NYE-NA, Disciple, Pupil: 黃本草 or GYÄ-PO, King.
ષ્ટ્રી.	i	Short, like i in is. Ex. भूज्', Yin-pa (pro-nounced Yim-pa), To be.
क्ष+प. हु+श. छो+पश.	ï	Long, like i in ravine. Ex. QENNU It-PA, To be afraid; IN Gt, A sign of the Agentive Case; ITAU KYI-LA, Among, amid,
ري وي.	î	in the midst. Also long, like i in ravine. Used in transliterations from foreign languages. Ex. ART SHI-LA, Moral conduct; STOPEN PUN-DARI-KA, White lotus; A SHRI, Glory.
ष्ट्री.	e	Short, like a in made, or Italian e. Bx. 5. DE, The, That.
ख्रे+ध. ख्रे+ध.	ð	Like the preceding, but long. Ex. 지치되지 GE, Devil, Demon, Evil-spirit; 여러기 SHE- PA, To know: 현대기 SEL-WA, or SE-WA. To absolve.

Tibetan Sound.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.
ध्ये+ <i>द</i> } ध्ये+र }	è	Short, like e in get. Ex. & T' Ch'èn-po (pronounced Ch'èm-po), Great, Big, Large: \$\frac{1}{2}\tau J'è'-pa, To do, to act, to perform, to
Ŕ	ai	achieve. Like i in mind. Ex. 可知可以不知识, mountain on the N. shore of Lake Manasarowar; 記言 Maitri, Love, Friendship; 元記可 Tai-Ling-ga, The modern Telingana.
धु	u	Short, like u in pull. Ex. 57. Hur-po, Active; AJ Bu, Worm; & Ch'u, Water.
स्रु+म् शः	a	Long, like oo in snooze. Ex. 도명기자다 ŽHYU PA, To sit.
हुत्र हुं रहेत्		Same as preceding. Ex. 5.5.7. Wai du- RYA, Azure stone, Lapis lazuli; 5. Hum, A terrifying or angry expression.
खु+द खु+द	} ü	BRUTAL. Like u in French une. Ex. 巧克 Dun. Seven; 預方 T Ku'-pa, Thread.
क्ष+a. क्ष+a.	}	Same as last, but long. Ex. 5장' Ď'ë, Period, Time; 벚과 Yö, Land, Country.
জৈ	0	Short, like o in for, or rock. This is the commonest o in Tibetan. Ex. HN T'OM

Tibetan Sound.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.
		Bazaar; 以可说 YA'-PO, Good; 克克克 Zo-wa, To build; A Lo, Year; 高元 K'YI-mo, Bitch; 瓦克 J'o-wo, Nobleman, master, lord; 孔克 Po-'o, Grandfather.
ल्य-मध्य.	ō	Long, like o in mode. Ex. 黃河和 Ts'ō, A crowd, a multitude.
ह्य	ō	Like the last. Used only in transliterating. Ex. 75% Go-TA-MA, Buddha's name.
छ + द छ + द	ö	Short, like eu in French Jeune. Ex. 국피국 다 Gön-pa (pronounced Göm-pa), A monastery; 중국 다양'-pän, Diadem.
<u></u> <u> </u>	8	Same as last, but long. Ex. &N' Ch'o, Religion; 350 NYA-D'O, Fishing net.
) 2. K	au, ou	Like ou in Noumenon. Ex. 南京 Gou-ri-ma. Sometimes also spelt 以沒 or 函名 Ex. 可沒方式 or 函名 Gau-ta-ma, Gou-ta-ma.

NOTES.

1.—In the above Tabular Statement the sign \dotplus in column 1 means "as modified by the addition of." It will be seen that the basic, inherent \mathfrak{W} a is subject to modifications, not only when quali-

fied by vowel-signs, but also when followed or subjoined by Q'a, or when subjoined by \mathfrak{H}^a , or when subjoined by \mathfrak{H}^a , or when followed by \mathfrak{H}^a , \mathfrak{H}^a ,

2.—In words containing those vowel-modifications which are affected by A' la, the A' when pronounced, should be uttered very softly. Often it is not pronounced at all. e.g., 5527 Noül. or Noü, Money; FINATE Söl-J'A, or Sö-J'A, Tea.

which are affected by 5 D'a, or 9 G'a, or sometimes 9 G'a-sa, the following peculiarity should be noted. In the case of monosyllabic words or final syllables ending in one of the above letters, such letter is not exactly pronounced. Yet it is hinted at; for, just before pronouncing it, the speaker stops short, and, by a sharp contraction of the glottis, forms a kind of innominate sound, which perhaps is best described by reference to the Persian or Arabic & 'ain, or to the curious throat-sound emitted by some Glaswegians when, instead of saying Saturday, they say Se'urday, or instead of saying water, they say wa'er. This emphasized hiatus-sound will be represented by an apostrophe.

Ex. 35 T J'E'-PA, To do; 35 CH'A', Hand (Honorific term):

গুলালুল Nyi-চত', Parasol. In particular, as regards syllables ending in আ G'a, the following rules may be observed:—

- (a) When the syllable forms a word by itself, like 3月 CHI'

 (Chig'), A, an; 只有 Du' (Dug), Is; or 項目 SHO'

 (Shog'), Imperative of 风口口 Yong-wa, To come, the 耳
 G'a should never be pronounced, but only hinted at, in manner above described.
- (b) When the syllable in which ন or নাম occurs is only one in a word of two or more syllables, and is not the final syllable, the না or নাম may be pronounced, or only hinted at, at pleasure. Ex. মুনান টাও'-দুর, or টা'-দুর, Sin. ইনাইনা Dod-চতও, or Do'-চত', A Lump; খেনাই Yaó-Po, or Ya'-Po, Good; মানুনামান Gyō-Po, or Gyōó-Po, Quick.
- (c) Practically the same rules may be observed as regards final 다 la. Ex. 디자 Nox, Fatique, and 닭자고 한타. wa, or ĎE-wa, To fasten on.
- 4.—A consonant, having a prefix, but no affix, nor any qualifying vowel-sign, must be supported by the lengthening affix Q''a, which prevents the prefix from being mistaken for an initial letter. Ex. AMQ' K'A, Order, command, word; ASQ' D'A, Arrow.
 - syllable, it is the initial letter of the second or other following syllable, and the final letter of the immediately preceding syllable is either C'R'S' or A', or if such preceding syllable does not and in a consonant, but is governed by inherent W', or one of the

0

TIBETAN GRAMMAB.

The letter \mathfrak{I} Ba, when sounding as a w, and followed by \mathfrak{I} i, is pronounced somewhat like the hard Russian vower \mathfrak{I} \mathfrak{I} , but with a w before it, or something like the English word way, save that the a must be given the vowel-sound of \mathfrak{I} , and merged into the succeeding i, so as to make the two into a sort of diphthongal sound.

Second vowels, following immediately after a simple or compound consonant, whether qualified by a vowel-sign or not, are always based on Q. 'a, not on W. a. Ex. 43.5% not 43.5% CAU-TA-MA; A3. LE-U, Chapter; A3. MI-U, Little man.

15

§ 4.—The SIX REVERSED (i.e. AT LO') LETTERS. Used chiefly in transliterations from Sanskrit, Pali, etc.

Letter.	Name.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.
5	Ta log-ţa or Ga-sa-da Kyó	Ţ	The dental letter 5 Ta reversed and pronounced as a palatal. A common abbreviation for the double affix TN Ex. 555 Pung-Ro, instead of 555
Þ	T'a-log'ț'a	Ţʻ	T'a reversed, and pronounced as an aspirated palatal.
٦.	Úa-loģ-ḍa	ļò .	5. Da reversed, and pronounced as an unaspirated palatal, much as some Irishmen pronounce the th in think.
Ą	Na-log-ṇa	Ņ	The dental letter of Na reversed, and pronounced as a palatal.
P	Sha-log-K'a	K'	Sha reversed, and pronounced like K'a.
Ed	Ka-Sha-log-ta- pa (디카디N'디) K'ya	K"y	可 Ka, with a reversed 母 Sha subjoined. Pronounced like 日 K'ya, strongly aspirated.

- S.—The seven consonants to which W' Ya, in the form of way be subjoined. W' so subjoined is called W'757N' or W757' YA-TĀ, Ya-subjoined.
 - This is Kya, and it is so pronounced.
 - This is K'ya, and it is so pronounced.
 - This is Gya, and it is pronounced as some Irishmen pronounce Garden, guide, etc., i.e. Gyarden, Gyide, etc.
 - This is Pya, biff YA-TA changes the pronunciation into that of The Cha.
 - This is P'ya, but YA-TA, changes the pronunciation into that of & Ch'a.
 - This is Bya but YA-TA' changes the pronunciation into that of E. That is to say, when J is an initial, it is pronounced J', which is practically like T' Cha; when not an initial, it is pronounced J. If prefixed by 5' Da, it is pronounced Y; and if further qualified by a vowel-sign, it takes the Y sound merged into the vowel-sound. Ex. 53% YAB, Summer; 53% YING, Region, space (e.g. Heaven's vault); 53% YUG-PA, or YU'-PA, To brandish, flourish; 53% YEN-CH'E-WA To-separate.
 - This is Mya, but YA-TA changes the pronunciation to that of Nya.

§ 6.—The fourteen consonants to which \vec{z} : Ra, in the form of MAY BE SUBJOINED. \vec{z} so subjoined is called \vec{z} : \vec{z} or \vec{z} : \vec{z} , \vec{z} ,

Letter.	Name.	Romanized Equivalent.	Remarks.			
可	Ka-ra-tā-Ṭa	Ţ	Like 7			
田	K'a-ra-tā-T'a	Ţ	P			
न्	Ga-ra-ta-Da	Ď	7			
5	Ta-ra-tā-Ṭa	Ţ	7			
. 2	T'a-ra-tā-Ţ'a	Ţ'	p			
5	Ďa-ra-tā-Ņa	Ď	· All palatals			
9	Na-ra-ta-Ņa	Ņ	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
न स	Pa-ra-tā-Ţa	Ţ	7			
4	P'a-ra-tā-Ţ'a	Ţ"	p			
9	Ba-ra-tā-Da	Ď	7			
पा स	Ma-ra-tā-Ma	M				
4	Sha-ra-tā-Shra	Shr				
정	Sa-ra-ta-Sa	S	This is the pronunciation in Literary Tibetan and in Sikhim and Būtān.			
	Sa-ra-tā-Ṭa	Ţ	This palatal pronunciation is the pronunciation in 53NAA' 5' O-P'X-KA', Colloquial of O.			
	Sa-ra-tā-Hra	Hr	Pronunciation in ASCACHAT TSANO-P'X-			
5	Hara-ta-Hra	Hr				

§ 7.—The six consonants to which 5. Ha, in the form 5 (5.4548).

HA-TI), MAY BE SUBJOINED.

With the exception of A. A. a. (commonly seen Lhā), which is frequently met with, these Ha-compounds are only used in transliterations from Sanskrit. Fall etc. The effect of subjoining 5. Ha, is to lengthen and slightly aspirate the consonant Ex. 2.2. L'A-SA, Lhāsa, the Capital of Tibet.

§ 8.—The six silent consonants to which Q' La (Q'757|X' LA-TA) is subjoined.

The effect of subjoining the Q' is to raise and emphasize the tone, and to make the sound more compact.

可用语语 All pronounced at La.
Pronounced Da.

EXAMPLES:—周河飞 La'kor, Cipher, such as o, the abbreviated 对 or C; 周 Lu, Serpent-demon; 面可口 Lõé-pa, To read; 周可克 Lǎ-pa, or Lāō-chor, Clamour, noise, (Literary); 副克口 Lěn-pa. Stupid, foolisk 葡萄 Da-wa, Month, moon; 哥哥 La-ma, Lama 是 Lung, Wir !; 劉司口 Lob-pa, To learn, teach.

§ 9.—The sixteen consonants to which—TET. Wa-zur, in the form of 4, is subjoined.

I is called Wa-zur because it is a corner of the letter 21 Wa.

When scholars from Tibet first visited India to study Ruddhistic

As regards Tibetan words, the effect of subjoining \tilde{a} is merely to lengthen somewhat the sound of the vowel inherent in, or qualifying, the consonant. In the following examples the vowel-sound is the inherent W a, which, when lengthened, is \bar{a} . Thus:—

可以 KA, Oh!
可以 KA-YE, Oh! Holla!
同方 K'A-TA, Crow, Magpie.

可以 DA-PA, Mouth.

□ 以 可以 LAB-DA, School.

5 可 DA-WA, A Medical plant.

6 TSA, Spunk, tinder.

6 TSA, Grass, herb.

6 TSA, Grass, herb.

6 TSA, Solt

6 OL () 以 ZHYA, or ZHYA-MO, Hat, cap.

2 ZA, Nettle.

5 RA, 5 T RA-CHO, Horn, sting.

1

AT LA-WA, A species of deer.

A SHA, Flood, high water.

A SHA-WA, Deer.

A Y SHA-P'O, Stag, buck.

A SH SHA-MO, Doe, hind.

A SHA-T'U', Young deer.

Wa-żui is also used to represent the sound of wa, as found in old Tibetan literature, and in Sanskrit, Pāli, Chinese, and other ancient foreign languages. Ex:—

578 Hwa, Sugared medicine like losenges (old Tibetan).

মন RA-ME-SHWA-RA, Rameshwar, near Ceylon.

वित्र गुन T'o-u kwan, Last Emperor of China of the Tartar dynasty.

dynasty.
5378843754 DWAI- CH'IN-B'A-DUR, A Mongolian king of Tibet.

প্রত্যুক্ত Swa-B'a-t'an, Name of a town.

It also represents the sound of & as found in modern Indian languages, e.g. Bengali, in which that sound and wa seem to be interchangeable. Ex. Swadesi, Shadeshi.

WA-ZUR also sometimes serves to show that a letter which might possibly be mistaken for a prefix is really an initial. Ex. 55% I DANG-PO, Clear; 598 I DA'-PO, A district in Tibet. If the WA-ZUR had not been subjoined to the 5 in these words, one might have read them Nox-PO, and GA-PO.

§ 10.—The twelve consonants on which the silent Tay Ra-Go-Ra-Heda is Placed. The effect is to raise the tonic-pitch and emphasize the sound of each consonant, except those that are regarded as masculine. As to masculine letters see § 19. Sign with Romanized equivalent, above.

所
$$Ka$$
, 所 Ga , 氏 Nga , 民 Ja , Nya , $7a$,

It will be noticed that \mathfrak{P} Ka, \mathfrak{Z} Ta, \mathfrak{Z} Tsa, have not got above them the sign for heightening the Tonic-pitch, they being masculine letters and not requiring it.

§ 11.—The ten consonants on which the silent 四天河 La-Go, La-Head, is placed. It has the same effect as the Ra-Head. Sign .

In all these the A' is not pronounced, except in the case of E' L'à, and except also when there is a preceding syllable which ends in a vowel. In this latter case the A' is usually carried back and given the sound of A' n. Ex. A' A Now. Gön-Chā, Lock; 5' B' Dan-ta, Now. Sometimes, however, it is carried back as A', but not sounded. Yet it modifies the preceding vowel. Ex. 5' A TA-Cha', Whip. Sometimes it even takes the sound of final A' b. Ex. A B' ZOB-ta, Mien.

§ 12.—The twelve consonants on which the silent NAT SA-GO. Sa-Head, is placed. It also has the same effect as the Ra-Head. Sign

| NGON-JU' NGA, THE FIVE PREFIXES, i.e. silent letters, which are prefixed to divers Initial (sometimes called Radical) letters, simple and complex, in the formation of words. Their effect is to remove the aspirate, if any, of low-toned, i.e. Feminine and Very Feminine initials, and to raise the Tonic Pitch, and make the sound more compact. Thus, take \(\Sigma^*\) J'ung, the Perfect and Imperative root of \(\Sigma^*\) J'ung-wa, To happen, originate, arise. Here \(\Sigma^*\) is a feminine letter, and therefore low-toned, and, as an initial with \(\sigma^*\) Ya-t\(\bar{a}\), it is slightly aspirated in \(\Sigma^*\). The addition of the prefix \(\Sigma^*\) 'a removes the aspirate, and makes the Tonic Pitch higher, and the sound more compact.

These prefixes are really a kind of Prepositive Affixes, sometimes modifying the meaning of a word, and sometimes entering into the formation of the Present, Perfect and Future Tenses of a verb. Though doubtless once upon a time actually pronounced, they are now generally silent. In the case, however, of \(\Pi\), \(\Pi\), and \(\Di\), when the syllable in which any of them occurs is preceded by a syllable ending in a vowel-sound, the \(\Pi\), \(\Pi\), or \(\Di\) is often carried back in pronunciation to the vowel-sound and sounded with it. The prefixes \(\Pi\) and \(\Di\) are never sounded or carried back. As regards \(\Qi\) and \(\Di\) the Colloquial had a curious custom of transmuting them into the sound of \(\Di\). Ex. \(\Di\) \(\Di\) \(\Di\) ME-D'A is pronounced MIN-DU', Is not; \(\Di\) \(\Di\) \(\Di\). A-DA is pronounced DAN-DA, similar. Also \(\Di\), as a prefix, is sometimes given the sound of \(\Di\). Ex. \(\Di\) \(\Di\) m. Ex. \(\Di\) \(\Di\).

No letters are ever superposed upon or subjoined to any prefix; and, as will be seen when we come to the paragraph on the Tone System (§ 19), Prefixes, as such, are of genders different

from those of the same letters as Initials, or even as Affixes, save in the case of & which is always Very Feminine.

- 可 Ġa. This prefix is of COMMON GENDER, and it is found before the following Initials, namely, む Cha, み Nya, ち Ta, ち Ďa, む Na, む Tsa, ⑤ Źhya, ヨ Źa, W Ya, 宀 Sha, and N Sa, all of which retain their natural sounds unaffected by the 可 save as regards Tonic Pitch and compactness of utterance, as already explained. This prefix is found in many nouns. It also enters into the formation of the Present and Future Roots of certain verbs. Ex. 可可以表示 NX-Ts'Ang, Inn; 可方 Tong, Present Root, and 可方 Tang, Future Root, of 可方 Tong-wa, To send, dismiss.
- 5. Da. This prefix is of COMMON GENDER, and is met with before the following Initial letters, namely, 可 Ka, 可 Ga, こ Nga, 口 Pa, 口 Ba, and 司 Ma, and nine other letters which are merely compounds of these with Ya-tā', or Ra-tā'. It also enters into the formation of the Future Root of certain verbs. Ex. 55公 む. Future Root of スラスマ BÜ-WA, To offer: 5月 GAB, Future Root of スラスマン GEB-PA, To cover
- 司 Ba. This prefix is of MASCULINE GENDER, and occurs before the Initials 可 Ka, 可 Ġa, ♂ Cha, E Ja, ℨ Nya, ラ Ta, ゔ Da, ゔ Na, ぢ Tsa, Ĕ Dz'a, ⑤ Zhya, ヨ Za, ར Ra, 즉 Sha, ས Sa, and twenty-nine other letters, compounds of the foregoing, some having one or other of the different subjuncts, and some even one or other of the three different superposed letters. It is a very common prefix, and enters into the formation of the Perfect and Future Tenses of many verbs. Ex. བསྡུང་ Kor. Perfect Root and Future Root of སྡུང་ བ་ Kor.wa, To Surround. བྡུང་ ZtǐYö, Perfect Root, and བབུ་ Zưyo, Future Root of འྡངང་ Jo-wa, To milk.

- マ'A. This Prefix is of FEMININE GENDER, and is found before 下 K'a, 可 Ga, ま Ch'a, E Ja, 豆 T'a, 5 Ďa, エ P'a, 耳 Ba, ま Ts'a, É Dz'a, and nine other letters, compounds of some of the foregoing in Ya-tā, or Ra-tā.

The raising-power (if any) of these prefixes, as regards Tone, depends upon their gender as mentioned above, the masculine prefix ∇Ba possessing the greatest power.

§ 14.—The following Tabular Statement of the consonants (in their simple form) which, as Initial Radical letters, take prefixes, and of the particular prefix or prefixes which, and which alone, each such consonant takes, may be found of use, especially in cases where the student feels some difficulty in determining whether any particular letter is or is not a prefix. For instance, no letter except 5. Da, or 3. Ba, immediately preceding a 7. Ka, can be a prefix; no letter except 3. Ma, or 3. A, immediately preceding a 7. Ka, can be a prefix; and so on.

Initial or Prefix or Radical letter.		Example.		
Щ	5	বৃশ্ব স্থা Kar-po, White.		

Initial or Radical letter.	Prefix or Prefixes taken.	Example.
P	ম	ह्याद्व हो. K'ān-po, Abbot.
	٩	ABRIT K'yer-wa, or AFRIT v'ur-wa. To carry away.
व	5	্বার্ন Gā-wa, Joy, Happiness.
	ח	यमीम्बर Gē, Demon.
	स	মান্ Go, Head.
	٩	ম্মুম্ম Gyē-wa, To fall, Stumble.
	5	539' Ngil, Money, Silver.
	ध	स्ट्रिं Ngar-mo, Sweet.
र	या	নানান Choj-pa, To break (Transitive).
	٥	মন্ম Chug-pa, To allow.
ಹ	ম	ਸਨੇਂ ਵੇਂ Ch'o-to; Beak.
	۵.	ලක් Ch'am, Masquerade.
E	٦	শ্রিম্ন্রি, ত্রান্যা, Glory, Splendour.
	ম	মহম্ম Jn-wa, To meet.
	٩	त्रेगरान Ji-pa, To be afraid.
3	П	ಸಾಕ್ಷ- Nyer-Is'ang, Pantry.
	Q	วรู๊ณ'ว" Nyē-ua, To ferment.
	81	মট্রম্ম্ম Nyèn-sā'-pa, To rouse.

	<u> </u>	
	Prefix or Prefixes taken.	Example.
. 5	म	DCII Tom Domi
		758 Tam, Rumour.
	7	759 I' Ton-pa, To cast out.
8	ह्य	মহন্ Tra, End.
	٩	वृद्दः T'ung-wa, To drink.
5	व	দ্বিদ Dong, Face.
	D	ਸਤੈੱਧੋਂ De-po, Good, Well.
	ম	মৃত্ব D'ā, Arrow.
	٩	95म प्र Dam-pa, To choose.
4	व	मिर्देर्भः No'-pa, Injury.
	q	সমুদ্দর Nar-wa, To lengthen, Extend.
	ম	ठाव्यः N'ā, Oath.
Q	5	รุปุรับ Pang-po, Witness.
¥	Q	वस्यान Pre-wa, To increase.
Q		Former A
	5	বিশ্বাস 🗸, Breath: ব্রহমা Yar-ka, Summer.
	٩	द्रनरान Bar-wa, To blaze up.
ম	5	रुमप्रसः Mag-mi. Soldier.
Ŕ	म	দার্থনে Tsang-po, River.
	A	Tsön-K'ang, Prison, Jail.
	1	

Initial or Radical letter.	Prefix or Prefixes taken.	Example.		
ž	হ্য	నెచ్ Ts'o, Lake.		
-	ď	৭৯ন্ম Ts'ig'-pa, To burn (Intransitive).		
É	ם	ন্দ্র Dzün, Lie, Falsehood.		
	হা	महिंदा टी Dzē-po, Lovely.		
	4	AEC'A' Dzing-ra, Fortification.		
긤	None.			
্ৰ	ন	শ্ৰহ্ম Zhyān-pa (pro. Zhyām-pa), Another.		
	Q	ब्राचित्र Nang-z'hyin, According to.		
3	म्	माञ्जमहार्चे । अर्थ-po, Body.		
	.0	วิฮั ธลุ ? Z'ob-ta, Likeness.		
a	None.			
W .	म	नाधना Ya', or Yag, Bull, Yak.		
5	0	ਸ਼ੜ੍ਹ La-sha, Thigh.		
a	None.			
9	म	শ্রন্থ শ্রন্থ সিচ-she tang-wa. To rebuke.		
	D	ব-৭২ Shā'-pa, To tell.		

	Prefix or Prefixes taken.	Example.
EI .	F U	দ্যান নি St-po, Bright, Clear. ব্যান্ত্রা প্রমান Sō'-de kam-po, Misfortune.
গ	None.	

NOTES.

- 1.—Letters are either simple, like 可, or complex, like 可, 可, 可, 可, 可, 与, 可, 有, and so forth. Syllables in which Prefixes occur may consist of two, three, or four such letters. For the purpose of ascertaining what letters are Prefixes, complex letters may be regarded as one letter. No letter that has another letter superadded to it, or subjoined to it, or which is qualified by any of the vowel-signs of the purpose of ascertaining what letters are Prefixes, complex letters may be regarded as one letter. No letter that has another letter superadded to it, or subjoined to it, or which is qualified by any of the vowel-signs of the purpose of ascertaining what letters are Prefixes.
- 2.—In the case of a two-letter syllable, whenever the second letter is qualified by a vowel-sign or is otherwise complex, the first letter, if one of the five mentioned in § 13, may be taken to be a Prefix Ex.—No. Ts'o, A lake; TyNN TA-MI-SHI, Calamity.

In the case of a syllable consisting of more than two letters, the first, if one of the five mentioned in § 13, may be taken to be a Prefix. This is so whether the next letter is or is not sample.

Ex. QQQQ (the Literary form of QQQQQ) BAB-PA, To descend; SQQQ KAN-PO, Abbut: QQQQ KO'PA, To create. Very rarely it is otherwise, as in the case of the 5° in the word \$5000 RI-DA, Wild animal. Such words are often written with a wa-zur under the 5°, to show that it is not a Prefix, but an Initial. Thus \$5000 It is then still pronounced RI-DA.

Should the Prefix be 5, and the Initial be simple \$\Pi\$, then \$\Pi\$ loses its b sound, and is pronounced w, or w as modified by the next letter, if any, such as \$\Pi\$ Na, \$\Pi\$ La, or \$\Pi\$ Sa (see Vowel Modifications, \$3). Should, however, the \$\Pi\$ be accompanied by \$\pi\$ (ya-t\tilde{a})\$, or any vowel-sign, it similarly loses its w sound, and takes that of the ya-t\tilde{a} or of the vowel-sign. Ex. \$\Pi\$ Not Band, but Wang, Authority, Power; \$\Pi\$ ON, Pinnacle, Spire: \$\Pi\$ YAR, Summer \$\Pi\$ OR, A place in Tibet \$\pi\$ ON-PO, Nephew of a Lama. If the \$\Pi\$ be accompanied by \$\pi\$ (Ra-t\tilde{a})\$, it acquires the sound of \$d\$, i.e. palatal \$d\$ (see \$6\$). Ex. \$\Pi\$ DA. Name of a Tibetan tribe; \$\Pi\$ ON Interstice.

§ 15.—Peculiarities of Pronunciation

-When a syllable beginning with one of the Prefixes ∇ , ∇ , or ∇ follows another syllable ending in a vowel-sound, the Prefix is often in the Colloquial carried back, sometimes with its own sound, sometimes with a changed sound, to the preceding syllable, and pronounced as if it were part of it. Ex.—

নত্ত ন্তিন Chu-chi', pronounced Chuc-chi', Eleven. নত্ত নত্তি Chu-zayı, prenounced Chur-zayı Fourteen ਝ-ਸੁਵੇ Ra-z'i, pronounced Rab-z'i, Drunk.

प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त (Hon.) K'A-KYÖN-NANG-WA, pronounced K'AB-KYÖN-NANG-NGA, To censure.

5.732 (Hon.) NA-Z'A, pronounced NAM-Z'A, Clock, Clothes.

মতার K'A-ch'u, pronounced K'AM-ch'u, Law suit.

Wভাইন্টা Ya-Ts'än-Po, pronounced Yam-Ts'äm-Po, Astonishing

2.—The Prefixes 5 and Q are never themselves carried back; but in the case of Q and also of N the sound of n is sometimes substituted, and pronounced with the preceding syllable. Ex.—

মূর্ ২১১ T'o-do', pronounced T'ön-dö', Ambition.

র বৃদ্ধ Mi-চড়', pronounced Min-চড়', Is not, are not

্রিন্র্ (Hon., Ge-চল্ম, pronounced Gen-চল্ম, Clergy.

রমার প্রারমাণ (Hon.) Zhyn-dam, pronounced Zhynn-dam, Cheek.

মূর্ব্বিম্মূর্বা. Nön-BE та'-ра, pronounced Nöm-BE та'-ра'.

To add.

মান্দ্র ME-b' prono inced Men-s' A, Gun.

र्भे स्प्रमा ME-BA pronounced MEN-BA', Ember.

3.—Even when the first syllable ends in T, the same custom sometimes holds, probably because of the incomplete way in which final T is uttered, the syllable therefore seeming to end in a vowel-sound.

প্রসাম বুর্ (Hon Ch'ad-bu', or Ch'a'-bu' pronounced Ch'an-bu', Knot.

The sound of n is sometimes transmuted into that of m. Ex.

W3. U. YIN-PA, pronounced YIM-PA, To be (copula).

মূল্বেন্স্ন্র্ন্ম Nön-BE Ṭā'-PA, pronounced Nom-BE Ṭā'-PA,

To add.

ন্ত্র'ন Zryan-pa, pronounced Zhyam-pa, Other.

5.—The sound of A as final of first syllable is also sometimes changed into that of m: Ex.—

ਸਾਹਿਪ ਨੇਸ਼ (Hon.) Gr-ch'am, pronounced Gun-ch'am, Catarrh.

নুপান্তর্ক Gya-Ts'an, pronounced Gyan-Ts'an, Banner of Victory.

6.—The sounds that are latent in superadded letters, sometimes result in audible sounds, pronounced with the preceding syllable. Ex.

দার্থনি নানা (Hon.) Sö-bong, pronounced Sön-bong, Churn.

ETT. J'A-DONG, pronounced J'An-DONG, Tea churn.

ਸਲੌਂ ਦਾ Ch'o-nga, pronounced Ch'ö-nga, Fifteen.

रार्के देव Ch'o'-Ten, pronounced Ch'or-Ten, A monument containing the ashes of a saint or other relics.

SER-KA, pronounced SE-KA. Chink.

WT'U' YAR-LA, pronounced W'U' YT-LA, Above.

「ハス・ラにて (ロ) Mar-Hrang-wa, pronounced Ma-Hrang-Nga. Naked.

TY'N' BAR-LA, pronounced BA-LA, Between.

5ኛ Έና Dur-T'ö', pronounced Du-T'ö' Cemetery.

영지함 'Un-pa, pronounced U-pa, Noise.

5ηΣ Way Kar-vö, pronounced Ka-vö, Earthen mug or cup.

TSAR, pronounced TSA, Margin

মার্থ Ser. pronounced Se, Gold.

QESE K'AR-NGA, pronounced K'A-NGA, Gong.

বাম্বর' Sar-Pa, pronounced Sa-Pa, New.

- 8.—When the first of two syllables ends in a vowel-sound, and the next syllable consists of \mathbb{T}^* wa, the latter often takes the sound of a. Ex.— \mathbb{T}^* Chu-wa, pronounced Chu-a, Dung of cattle.
- 9.—The following is a common case of ∇ wa. or ∇ pa, being reduced to the sound of a:

মৃত্যুত্ত Yö'-wa-Rè pronounced Yaw-a-Rè'. Is, are, was, were (in the sense of possibly or probably being).

10.—When the first of two syllables ends in \mathfrak{A} , and the next syllable is \mathfrak{A}^* wa, the latter is often pronounced as \mathfrak{A}^* ra, but sometimes it is reduced to a mere a. Ex.—

ম্ভারান্ত্রা (Hon.) Jä-wa Mang-wa, pronounced Jä-ba Mang-nga, To meet.

অম'ন Yö-wa, pronounced Yöl-A, Curtain.

11.—The above are samples of irregularities with which one sometimes meets; practice alone will enable the student to know when other words similarly spelt follow these Colloquial customs, and when they ought to be pronounced according to the regular rules. The following are a few more specimens of irregular pronunciations:—

ਮੌਤ Ma-nyono, pronounced Ma-nyung, Never.

हांश नेश मुं त्र्व Sü she kui bu' pronounced Sü shin-ái bu', Who knows?

শিলামান্ত্র K'A Lä sha'-PA pronounced K'AB-Lä sha'-PA.

মিম্ম (Hon.) P'EB-PA, pronounced P'E-PA, To arrive, depart, come, go

নপুন্ধ (Hon.) Žhyu-Bö, pronounced Žhyum-Bö,

Mattress.

ৰুমন্বদা (Hon.) Zhyä-Ba', pronounced Zhyam-Ba', Mask.

ਰੂ ਤ੍ਰੇ-ਧ' L'A-pi-pa, pronounced L'ab-Ri-pa, Painter.

মুর্মেম Mön-Lam, pronounced Mö-Lam, Prayer.

স্ত্রীবামনার Kyab-gön, pronounced Kyam-gön, Helper, Protector, Saviour.

16.—The Ten Consonantal Affixes, called ENGENTS JE-Ju' chu, each of which, when following an Initial, simple or complex, completes the formation of a syllable.

Of these T, C, T, and H are frequently seen with an additional silent N, or Second Affix, called WC'AFT Yang-Ju'. They are then called Double Affixes.

Another kind of Double Affixes is met with in old Tibetan books. It is very rare, but for Literary purposes the student may as well make a note of it. It consists of of Na, 5. Ra, or O. La, collowed by 5. Da, here called 5.57. Da-Da', Hard D. Thus:—

बुद् " गर्व, दुर्- गर्व, युद् !d.

It is used to express the Past Tense. Ex:-

TINAS L' SAND-PA, He heard.

गुर्द्राः Gyurd-PA, He became.

न्यान्त्र Söld-Pa, He requested.

34

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

The modern Literary practice, however, is to omit the final 5, which may be regarded as obsolete.

The DIOTIONARY ORDER of the above-mentioned ten Consonantal Finals, and of the four Double Finals in \$1, is as follows:—

1.;	म	••	gu.	8.	181	••	ba-sa.
			ga-8a.	9.	ম	••	ma.
3.	۲.	••	ngu.	10.	প্রধ্য	••	ma-sa
4.	EN.		nga-sa.	11.	۹٠		'a
5.	5	•••	da.	12.	₹.	••	ra.
6.	ৰ	••	na.	13.	a.		la.
7.	۵٠.	•	ba.	14,	≰1.		sa.

The above, of course, is their order under each letter of the TA KA-K'A; that is to say, it is their order after, or in subordination to, the Alphabetical Order, if that term may be used in connection with the TA

As to the Gender of the Ten Final Affixes, see § 19.

S 17.—N. THE ELEVEN DUPLICATIONS in N. o, of certain letters when forming the terminals of verbs. The Duplication has the effect of emphasizing, or intensifying, or solemnizing the expression of a fact. It is a feature of Literary Tibetan only, and is met with in nearly every sentence of the existing translation into Tibetan of the New Testament.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

 \overrightarrow{A} . \overrightarrow{G} . \overrightarrow{A} . \overrightarrow

EXAMPLES :-

1 -श्रिश्र गुट विंट अअना दास्र देन ने ।

Sh-kyang k'ong-la lag-pa ma re'go: And no man laid hands on him.

In the Colloquial this would be:— इस्सर्याट दिलाया देन स्त्राचलमामा (for चल्नाया) देन or

Sử yang k'o-la lag-pa ma żhyugga (for żhyag-pa) rè' or żhyagma song.

2. — भैं भू भैं मुंभ में द नेद नु द दें।

In the Colloquial this might be:— ਘੌ:ਸਕੈ:ਸ਼ੁਰਾਜ਼੍ਰਕਾਜ਼ਾਵ-ਸੈਵ-ਐਫ਼। or:—

ल.चे.ल्झ.मेंज.चू.र.चूर.चमुंर.सूट.।

3.—हिंद र्हे वि बद ब स्मा सेद दें।

Colloquially :— हिंदु:स्टर्फ दि:ब्रट:य:श्वेना:से**द्।**

4.—हिंद्राणुः सुःमार्थेदः दे।

Colloquially:—
ब्रिंद-देव-वुःमार्थेद-मेः त्रुम।

5.—८'नार्ड'र्स्र'स्यामञ्जून'से'सुन'र्दे।

Yi-shā-yi bu gyā-po Da-wid j'ung ngo: Jesse's son was king David —Jesse begat David the king.

Yi-shāi bu gyā-po Da-wid yin: Jesse's son was King David.

Yi-shā-yī gytt-po Da-wid kyè'song: Jesse begat King David

K'yō'-ts'ōi nang-na to' mè'-do: Ye have not life in yourselves.

K'yō'-rang-18'ōi nang-la to' mè'.

K'yō' kyi bu sōn-no: Thy son liveth.

K'yo' rei hu son-gyidu'.

Nga ga-ru yō'-sa la leb mi t'ub-ho Where l am. ye cannot come Colloquially:

or लूट.श.म.जूट.बैच.ग्री.भर.

Nga ga--pa yo'-sa la Jong t'uh-kyi mān, or yong mi t'uh.

Yang ngữ de t'a-mai nyin par lang-war j'a-o: And I will raise him up at the last day.

Colloquially :— अदःदशःदेःकृश्चःम्बुगःर्वेशःयःअरः गृमार्थेदः।

Yang ngữ đe nyi-ma zhyug-sho la yar kya' yong.

7. - निर्मेष्ट्र सक्रिया में भुष्या स्ट्राह्म वर त्युरः महरूपा में भुष्या स्ट्राह्म वर त्युरः

Kôn-ch'o' gi t'ū'-t'o-wa de la nnpar jyur-ro: The wrath of Godwill abide on him.

Colloquially : -भूगेर सङ्क्षां मी मात रहर है ता (or मिंता) अंट मी रे |

Kon-ch'o' gi k'ā-ch'ā' de la (or k'o la) yong-gi-rè'.

बश्चरमञ्जूर नेमा हरा वश्चेर वजुर नेमा हरा महारस्य व

Yang k'ong gĩ nga-la kôn-ch'o' la nyên-kur j'ô shi' chẽ sung-so: Then said he unto me, worship God.

Colloquially:-
रे'द्यामिर्देशाटायान्मिद्याद्यायाः
द्वितायसःचिरान्यान्यान्यान्याः

De-na k'o-rē nga la kön-ch'o' la mā-lam t'ob dag-ga-rang labj'ung.

भर्ते: नर-मुर-रे.। भर्ते: नर-मुर-रे.।

De uit nam k'a na tit zh jan zhyi t'ong-war gyur-to: And there was seen another sign in heaven. Colloquially :-

हैं देश देश स्थानित त्या भारत मानित De-nit nam-k''ā la yam-ts'ān र्थ रेम्yām-pa chi' t'ong j''ning.

N.B. - 5 is used only with the Literary Perfect root after final 자, 자, 즉 (for 즉두, 교두, 즉두) 기

The Full stop |, or ||, will henceforth be omitted. See WRITING AND PUNCTUATION, § 20.

§ 18.—Colloquial Duplications.

As regards certain verbs in the Infinitive Mood, or in the Perfect tense of the Indicative Mood, i.e. verbs, the roots of which end in the final consonant ∇ , ∇ , ∇ , ∇ , ∇ , ∇ , or ∇ , the following custom obtains in the Colloquial. Instead of pronouncing in the ordinary way the particle ∇ or ∇ that follows the root, the speaker merely duplicates, or emphasizes with an added a sound, the final consonantal-sound.

Thus, as regards the Infinitive Mood, instead of saying [] 기자리스 다. (Hon.) Dod-pa Nang-wa, the Colloquial speaker would say [] 기자리스 다. Dod-da-nang-nga, To proclaim or publish.

So, too, as regards the Perfect Indicative, instead of saying মোন্দ্রামানামান্দ্র সতি চিত্র চিত

Other Examples are:

지지 (for 다) 되었다. (Hon.) SE-LA (for WA) NANG-WA, OF NANG-NGA: To absolve.

स्प्राच होता ता (for ता) महिदा (for ता) धिंद (Hon.) Kushō kyi se-la (for wa) Nang-nga (for wa) yin; the muster ubsolved or hus ubsolved.

- দার্থ নিমামমামা (for বা) নার্বাবামীর (Vulg.) Tso-wö sh-la (for wa) nang-nga (for wa) yin; The lord absolved or has absolved.
- न्दिय (for प) प्रदाप (Hon.) Nor-Ra (for wa) Nang-nga,
 To err.
- स्पानिकानीशार्तेर र (for प्र.) मान्द्र (for प्र.) धेद (Hon.) Kushō kyi nor ra (for wa) Kang-nga (for wa) yin: or still better:--
- (for प्र) ध्रेन Ku-2hyo-kyi T'U nor kano-nga (for wa), or T'U nor shor-ra (for wa) yin, The master erred, or has erred.
- LN'AXX (for D') WA (Vulg.) NGA NOR-RA (for WA) YIN:
- To shan, To renounce.
- दिन्याराष्ट्रियार (for या) मान्द्राया (for या) देन (Hon.) K'ongci pong-nga (for wa) nang-nga (for pa) RE': He shunned, He has shunned.
- RE': He shunned, He has shunned.

When the root ends in final A, the Colloquial sometimes resorts to a following 5, instead of the Duplication as above. Ex.

व्योगम Gye-wa, To stumble.

- प्रमाया (for प्र) मान्द्राय (Hon.) GYE-RA (for WA) NANG-NGA:
- मिट दिनेयार (for य) निर्दार (for य) धेर (Hon.) K'ong Gybna (for wa) Kang-nga (for pa) yin: He stumbled, He has shambled.

At the same time this were percer phrased thus:-

(or ku hab) shor-ra (for wa) BE'. He has stumbled.

प्रमुक्षर (for प्र) धेर् (Vulg.) NGA GYE-RA (for WA) YIN:
stumbled, I have stumbled.

As regards verbs the roots of which end in 5, or 5, or 5, or 5, there is no such duplicating custom. They are pronounced in the regular way.

See also § 15, 8, as to \square wa changing into a after a vowel-sound.

§ 19.—THE TONE SYSTEM.

Tone is a very important factor, a fairly correct tone being almost more desirable than absolutely correct grammar; and there exist certain rules on the subject which should be carefully studied.

The Marka, or Consonantal Series of the Marka, is classified by Tibetan Grammarians under six heads, having reference to the respective Genders of the several letters.

These heads are :-

- 1. Z P'o, Masculine.
- 2. A'at Ma-ning, Common.
- 3 Fr Mo, Feminine.
- 4. ब्रेड्रॉडॉ Shin-tu mo, Very Feminine.
- 5. มีๆ ๆ Mo-Sham, Sub-Feminine, or Barren
- . हार्क होर्च किंद्र केंद्र केंद्र अर्थ अर्थ, Neuter.

MASCULINE LETTERS.

These are pronounced with a special emphasis, fullness, compactness, and distinctness, arising from a powerful use of the vocal organs. They never undergo any modifications in this respect, even when

guarded by Prefixes or Super-posed Letters, but always preserve intact their own natural sounds.

FEMININE AND VERY FEMININE LETTERS.

In pronouncing these the vocal organs are relaxed, and the phonetic body of the letter is not so much sent forth from the mouth, as suffered to emanate from it gently and gradually. These letters are subject to phonetic modification when guarded. For instance, the addition of Prefixed or Super-posed Letters has the effect of raising the Tonic Pitch, and softening the sound. Thus, AC GANG, is unguarded, and therefore, to an English ear, sounds very like Kang. But GAR, pronounced like the Ga in Garland, and AC GANG, similarly pronounced, are guarded, in the first case by a Prefix. and in the second by a Super-posed Letter, and therefore the sound is no longer hard and compact like the k sound of unguarded AT, but softer and exactly like the sound of the English hard g, and the tone is moreover raised, or brought to the Pitch-level of a Masculine Letter.

COMMON LETTERS.

The manner of pronouncing these differs only in degree from the way in which Masculine and Feminine Letters are pronounced. That is, they are uttered less compactly and emphatically than the Masculine, and less softly than the Feminine Letters.

· SUB-FEMININE OR BARREN LETTERS.

The pronunciation of these is also only a matter of degree as compared with the pronunciation of Feminine Letters.

NEUTER LETTER.

This has a hard and compact sound.

The following Tabular Statement will elucidate the above remarks:—

	Letter.		Gender.	Pronunciation.
ण इ इ इ इ इ	Ka Cha Ta Pa Tsa		Masculine	With distinctness, emphasis, fullness and compactness, effected by a special effort of the vocal organs.
A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	Kʻa Chʻa Tʻa Pʻa Tsʻa Sha	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	Common	Not so compactly as the Masculine, and not so softly as the Feminine Letters.
中国了中国社会主义	Ġa Ja Ďa B'a Dz'a Wa Źhya Ża Ya		Feminine	A gentle and gradual emanation of the sound, rather than an emphatic and compact projection of it.

Letter.		Gender.	Pronunciation.
۲.	· Nga		
3.	Nya [1000年,
٩	Na	Very Feminine.	More gently and gradually than the Feminine.
श्र.	Ma		reminio.
<u></u>	Ra		
מי.	La		The second secon
5	Ha	Sub-Feminine or Barren	Without effort.
۹.	'A	Or 17action	Wienotto enoru.
M.	Α	Neuter	Hard, from the base of the throat.

Even the Five Prefixes possess a gender of their own. Thus:—
\[\text{\text{\$\text{\$\Bar{e}}\$}} \] \(\text{Ba} \) is Masculine, having been Feminine, as an Initial.

5 Da are Common, having been Feminine, as Initials.

Q'A is Feminine, having been Barren, as an Initial.

Ma is Very Feminine, unaltered.

So, too, the TEN FINAL AFFIXES have the following genders :-

Ga, Masculine, having been Feminine as an Initial, and Common as a Prefix.

5° Da, Ditto. Ditto.

Ditto. having been Feminine as an Initial. and Mascu-

N Sa, Masculine, having been Common as an Initial.

5 Na, Common, having been Very Feminine as an Initial.

Q' La Ditto, having been Barren as Initials.

다 Nga Feminine, having been Very Feminine as Initials, and \mathbb{N} Maying been Very Feminine, as a Prefix.

Q' 'A, Feminine, having been Barren as an Initial, and Feminine as a Prefix.

Thus, the only Letter which undergoes no change in gender, whether as Initial, Prefix, or Final Affix, is 57 Ma.

In his PRIMER OF STANDARD TIBETAN the Revd. Mr. Edward Amundsen, when dealing with the Tone system, gives prominence to the Pitch and Length, rather than to the Compactness, Emphasis, and Distinctness of the tone. His classification may be represented thus:

ा जी. थ. रे. त. थे.	High and short.
5. q. d. x.	High and long.
3. मि. क. स. स. क्.	Medium and short.
4. 5 3 4 21 2 20	Medium and long.
2. 4. E. 2. 4. E. 3. 3. 4. M.	{ Descending but re-ascending and long.
6. Q.	Very low and long.

We have seen that the LENGTH or SHORTNESS of the TONE is governed by rules of its own (see § 3): hence we need not consider it here in connection with PITCH. So far, therefore, as Pitch alone is concerned, Mr. Amundsen's system may be reduced to only three classifications, namely:

44

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

1. High

2. Medium

3. Low

1. High and short.

2. High and long.

3. Medium and short.

4. Medium and long.

5. Low and a-cending.

6. Very low.

Now, if, instead of regarding this question of Tone frem the point of view of Pitch, we regard it from that of emphasis, fullness, compactness and distinctness, we shall find that the subject again arranges itself under three heads namely, utterances that are very compact and full, those that are only moderately so, and those that are soft and gradual emanations.

beginning with the Masculine Initials Π , \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , should be pronounced compactly and fully, and in a high key; (2) words beginning with the Common Initials Π , \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , should be pronounced with moderate emphasis and in a moderately high key (3) while words beginning with the Feminine Initials Π , Ξ , \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , or with the Barren Initials \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , or with the Barren Initials \Im , \Im , \Im , \Im , or with the Neuter Initial \Im , should be pronounced softly and in a low key. It should also be remembered that when an Initial has a Prefix, or a Surmounting Letter, the utterance according to these three rules is somewhat intensified as regards Masculine and Common Initials, and heightened and rendered more compact as regards all the others.

It would appear, however, to be doubtful whether PREFIXES have much to do with the russing of the Tonic Pitch. What is more certain is that they are used (1) for modifying the meaning of a word, e.g. IST CHO'-PX. To be cut off. To be decided, but SESTO CHO'-PX.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

To honour; TET Dong-wa (for TET DANG-wa, Cold), but ਰਜ਼੍ਰੋਟ ਹੈ Dong-wa, To count, and ਕ੍ਰਜ਼੍ਰੋਟ ਹੈ Dong-wa, To die ; (2) in the formation of the tenses of verbs, as already explained (§ 13); and (3) to effect changes in the pronunciation of Initial Letters. Thus T, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like K in English; but, when refixed by 万, 刀, 趴, or 尺, it is pronounced like hard G in English. Again 刀, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like P in English; but when prefixed by 5, it is pronounced as W, when unqualified by any vowel-sound, and as the vowel-sound only, when so qualified; or, if prefixed by a, it takes the sound of B in English. Again, as regards 5, see § 13. Again, 5, as an Initial, is pronounced as a dental T; but if prefixed by \, \, \, or \, it takes the sound of a dental D. Again, E and E, when Initials, are pronounced with a slight aspirate; but, when prefixed by T, N, or Q, they lose the aspirate. Again I, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like S in English; but, when prefixed by T or T, it is pronounced like Z in English. Lastly, G, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like shya; but, prefixed by T or T, it takes the sound of zhya.

§ 20.—WRITING AND PUNCTUATION.

Originally. Tibetan was a monosyllabic language. Nowadays, however, its words are mostly dissyllabic. There is no attempt in the written or printed language to divide off words from one another, either by spacing or by punctuation. Hence, they all succeed and seem to run into each other in one continuous line, and the reader's knowledge is all that enables him to recognize them individually. It is otherwise, however, with syllables. A syllable may consist of a single consonant, simple or complex. or of two or more such consonants, silent or pronounced. But he its consonantal structure what it may, the whole collocation of letters possesses only one vowel-sound, inherent or expressed by vowel-signs. Every such collocation or syllable must be marked off

from its successor by a dot (') placed at the right-hand top corner of the final consonant. This dot is called 59 Ts'E'. To mark the termination of clauses such as those for which we generally use a comma, a semi-colon, or a colon, another sign is used in the shape of a vertical stroke (|), called JE-95. KYANG-SHÄ'. Whenever this sign is used, the En after the last consonant is omitted, except in the case of final T nga, which always retains it. A double vertical stroke (||), called ЭN'-45' Nyi-Sha', is used where we would use a full stop At the end of a paragraph, or of a chapter, a fourfold vertical stroke (||||), called ДЭ ZHYI-Shä', is placed. Instead of the four plain strokes the following may be used:)))), or , or , or , or , or , or)). Instead of the two plain strokes the following, one plain stroke the following, . In some books the comma is seen thus, &. Sometimes the dot (') or En is seen 6, and sometimes even In Book-letter and in Running-hand the 57 is seen thus, C.

At the commencement of printed and written matter symbols like the following may often be seen:—

This is called Swasti or the Auspicious Benediction. It may begin any work dealing with Ethics and Morality. The top figures are the DOUBLE FLAME, or RADIANCE, the next are the DOUBLE GEM, and the lowest are the DOUBLE LOTUS. On the right is 38.451

TRIPLE DITTO, for writings on Philosophy and Theology.

RADIANCE, GEM, TRIPLE LOTUS, and STALK. Beginning chapters in Religious works.

Torus and Stalk. Used with official correspondence, proverbs, maxims, etc., to indicate a fresh beginning.

ORDINARY BLOCK PRINT.

Ine proper method of writing this is first to make the thick horizontal stroke at the top of each letter, and then the rest of the character, working from left to right as in English, and adding the Ya-tas, Ra-tas, and vowel-signs last. The straight vertical strokes should be long, fairly thick at the top, and tapering to the bottom.

In writing &, the vertical stroke on the left may first be made downwards, and then the rest, never omitting clearly to define the loop in the centre. Or, a horizontal stroke may first be made, then the vertical stroke on the left downwards, and then the remainder, from the right-hand end of the horizontal stroke. The down-stroke from the loop must be long, quite vertical, and tapering, otherwise the beginner is apt to produce something which might be mistaken for &, which has no central loop, and whose final down-stroke is short, and instead of being vertical slopes off to the right.

Other letters which the beginner is apt to mix up with each other when attempting to write them, are Γ Nga, Γ Ta, and Γ Da. The down-strokes in nga and da begin at or near the right end of the horizontal line, and curve well to the left, whereas the down-stroke of Ta begins at the left end of the horizontal line, and comes straight down, or even with a slight slant to the right. The final stroke of m is short and thick, while those of Ta and Da are long and tapering. Ta's final down-stroke, moreover, takes a bend to the left, while that of Da bears well to the right. Both, too, are brought well down, whereas Nga's final stroke is stunted.

In writing of the little stroke or the left should first be made, then the thin stroke next to it, then the top horizontal stroke and undercircle, and finally the long vertical down-stroke.

may be written by first making the top horizontal stroke, then the whole left side of the letter, and finally the vertical down-stroke on the right. Or, after the horizontal stroke, first the little curved stroke in the top left-hand corner, then a straight diagonal line from

right to left downwards, and finally the vertical stroke on the right downwards.

In writing letters like of and of, the down-stroke containing the loop is usually commenced from near the right-hand and of the horizontal stroke.

The vertical stroke of 5 should project down slightly beyond the point of junction with the curve on the right.

- First the horizontal, then the thin curving down-stroke, beginning it from the centre of the horizontal, and lastly the thick curving stroke on the right, the top end of which should meet the thin down-stroke a little below the letter's junction with the horizontal. Or thus, I, that is, first the horizontal stroke, then the short down stroke, and lastly the curving stroke, somewhat after the way we write the figure five.
- First the horizontal, next from the centre of that stroke the down-stroke, then the loop on the left, working upwards, and then by carrying on the pen, the loop on the right working downwards.
- A' First make an Q' That is to say, a vertical down-stroke, then the rest of the figure. Lastly make a straight down-stroke, meeting the end of Q' A' has no loop.
- First the dot, or thick short stroke on the left at the top, then the half circle to the right, then the thick short stroke slanting from left to right, and finally the long hook. Or else, first a horizontal stroke, then the dot or short thick stroke on the left at the top and then the rest as stated.
- First the horizontal, then from its centre or from near its right-hand end the short thin lines loping downward to the left, then the hook with the tail brought up level with but clear of the horizontal stroke; next, from near the top of the second stroke a straight or urving line downwards with a slant to the right; and lastly the versical down-stroke.

W First a short horizontal, then a sort of v with another horizontal over the right-hand limb, then the stroke slanting to the right, and finally the vertical down-stroke. Or, first two parallel vertical strokes of equal length, with a horizontal on each, then another parallel vertical stroke a little longer than the others. Then join the first two with an under-curved stroke; and lastly, with a slanting stroke from left to right, join the second and third vertical strok: at the bottom. The first way is the better.

First write an elongated Q, thus Q, and then add the bar across the middle.

Or first write an ordinary A, and then subjoin a W without its horizontal stroke.—Thus A

First a short horizontal, then the thin short down-stroke, slanting to the left, then the thick stroke up the end of it, slanting to the right. Then, from near the top of the second stroke, make the long down-stroke, sloping to the right, and lastly the vertical down-stroke.

Tirst a horizontal, then the short thin down-stroke from near the right-hand end of the horizontal, and slanting to the left, then the thick stroke at the bottom, beginning it from well to the left of the down-stroke and carrying it boldly across the end of the latter, with a good sweep to the right and with a downward trend.

In making I the beginner should see that he does not make it look like I

IT First a fairly long horizontal. Then from near the left-hand end a thin downward stroke slanting to the left, then a thick downward-stroke slanting to the right, and finally the vertical down-stroke commencing it from the right-hand end of the horizontal.

Tirst a fairly long horizontal. Then the first half of it

subjoin a small Q without its horizontal. Then, from the right-hand end of the horizontal, make the long vertical down-stroke.

This is the same as T reversed.

T First the horizontal. Then the two little strokes, and finally the long vertical down-stroke.

BOOK-LETTER and RUNNING-HAND.

These are very much alike, the Running Hand, however, being the more difficult of the two to read and write. Specimens of both, in all possible combinations, are given in Csoma de Körös's Grammar (1834).

Tibetan spelling may be described as a cumulative process, one only of the component parts of a syllable being taken up at a time. Next, the sound so taken up is repeated, but with the addition in advance, or by way of assumption, of the second component part. Then this second component part is pronounced by itself. Finally, the phonetic effect of all that has thus been taken up is pronounced together, and that effect represents the literal expression of the syllable.

A knowledge of how to spell is most useful, and it is quite worth the student's while to take the trouble to acquire it.

The following examples are intended to exhibit the process progressively, through most of the stages from simple to complex . syllables :-

1. -Simple Consonants.

η (for example), and one final affix.

пр. Ka, Kag-ga. Ka'.

ης Ka. Kang-nga. Kang.

ης κα. Κä'-da. Κā'.

শুন Ka Kān-na, Kān.
শুমুণ Ka, Kā-la, Kā.

TN Ka. Kä-sa. Ka.

II .- Consonant and Double Affix.

দামে Ga, Gang-nga-sa, Gang.

TAN K'a, K'am-ma-sa, K'am.

ኮችህ K'a, K'am-ma (Lä'-kor)-sa, K'am.

III.—Consonant with Prefix and Affix.

5ης Ďa-wo: Ka, K'ā-'ā, K'a.

सम्बद Ma-wo: K'a, K'a-'a, K''ā.

IV -Consonant and Single Vowel-sign.

Μ Ka, gi-gu, Ki.

刑 Ka, źhyab-kyu, Ku. 元 Ka, deng-bu, Ke.

m Ka, na-ro, Ko.

V .- Consonant with double Vowel-sign and Subjunct.

जैं Ga, na-ro, go; 'ā, na-ro, oû; Goû.

VI .- Consonant with Vowel-sign and Affix.

ΤΕ Ka, na-ro, ko; kong, nga, Kong.

35' Ra, deng-bu, re; rè'-da, Rè'.

VII .- Consonant with Vowel-sign and Double Affix.

PAN K'a, na-ro, K'o; k'om, ma, sa, K'om.

VIII. - Reversed Letters.

Ta-log-Ta; Tam-ma (Lä'-kor) Tam; k'a; Tam-k'a.

73 Da-log-Da; ma; Ra. zhyab-kyu, Ru; Da-ma-ru.

IX .- Ya-tas.

T Ka, Ya-ta, Kya.

T Pa, Ya-ta, Cha.

F P's, Ya-ta, Ch'a.

J Ba, Ya-ta, J'a.

Ma, Ya-ta, Nya.

X .- Ya-ta with Vowel-sign.

ng Ka, ya-ta, kya; kya, gi-gu, kyi.

XI.—Ya-tā with Vowel-sign and Affix.

TN Ka, ya-ta, kya; kya, gi-gu, kyi; kyi, sa, kyi.

XII.—Ya-tā with Vowel-sign and Double Affix.

ba, sa, k'yeb.

XIII .- Ya-tā with Prefix and Affix.

JUZ. Da-wo: ka, ya-ta, kya; kyar, ra, kyar.

Da-wo: pa, ya-tā, cha; chā, la, chā.

XIV .- Ya-tā with Prefix, Vowel and Affix.

5 jar Da-wo: ka, ya-ta, kya; kya; gi-gu, kyi; kyi-la, kyi.

555 Da-wo: pa, ya-ta, cha; cha, na-ro, cho; cho', da,

XV.—Ya-tā with Prefix, Vowel and Double Affix.

Ba-wo: ka, ya-tā, kva; kya gi-gu, kvi kvi.

XVI .- Ya-tā and Affix, each with Vowel-sign.

Bg. K'a, ya-ta, k'ya; k'ya, deng-bu, k'ye; 'a, zhyabkyu, 'u; k'ye'u.

XVII.—Ra-tās and Ha-tās.

Spelt like ya-tas, but the following would be new:-

Ba, ban, na, ban; da, ha-ta, d'a; d'a, źhyab-kyu, d'ū; ka; Bān-d'ū-kā.

Ba, ha-tā, b'ā; b'ā, ra-tā, br'ā; br'ā, zhyab-kyu, br'ū; br'um, ma, br'ūm; ha, ra-tā, hra; hra, gi-gu, hri ; Br'ūm-hri.

XVIII.-La-tās.

Ka, Ġa, Ba, > la-ta, La. Za, la-ta, Da.

תְּקְי Ka, la-tā, la; la, na-ro, lo; log-ga, Lo'.

XIX .- Wa-zurs.

あ四可 Ts'a, wa-źur, ts'ā; k'a, źhyab-kyu, k'u; k'uģ, ga, k'u' : Ts'ā-k'u'.

वृद्धे Zhya, wa-zur, zhyā; ma, na-ro, mo; zhya-mo.

Ba, na-ro, bo; da, ha-tā, d'ā; d'ā, ģi-ģu, d'ī; sa; ta, wa-zur, tâ: Bo-dī-sa-ta.

XX. Ra-gos, La-gos, and Sa-gos.

Ra, ka-tā, Ka. 市

1 Ra, ga-tā, G'a.

54

E Ra, nga-ta, Nga.

La, ka-ta, Ka.

La, ga-tā, Ğa.

La, nga-tā, Nga.

Sa, ka-tā, Ka.

Sa, ga-tā, Ğa.

N Sa, nga-tā, Nga.

In spelling, the Prefix is taken first, then the surmounting letter, then the ya- $t\bar{a}$, or ra- $t\bar{a}$, or other subjunct, then the vowel, then the affix or affixes. Thus:—

אָרָא. Ba-wo: Sa, ga-tā, ga; ga, ra-tā, da; da, źhyab-kyu, du; dung, nga, sa, Dung.

XXI. Miscellaneous Examples.

Ра, рап, па, рап; ch'a, deng-bu, ch'e; ch'én; na, ch'èn; ra, gi-gu, ri; rin, na, rin; ра па-го, ро; ch'a, deng-bu, ch'e: Рап-он'én, кім-ро-сн'є, The Grand Lama of Tashī L'ümpo in Tsang, usually called the Tashī Lama, and an incarnation of 'Ö'-рад-mè'.

প্রি-স্থান্থিন 'A, na-ro, 'o; 'ö', da, 'ö'; da-wo; pa, pag, ga, pag; ma, deng-bu, me; mè', da, mè': 'Ö'-раб-мѐ', Buddha Amitabha, or Boundless Light.

Ta; La; 'ā, gi-gu. 'ī; laī; Ba, ia-tā, la; ma:
Ta-Lai La-ma, The Dalai Lama. or Spiritual
Head of Tibet until Sir Frank Younghusband's
entry into Lhassa.

৭র্মানুন্ম 'A-wo; ba. ra-tā, da; dā, sa. dā; la, ja-tā, ja;

Ja, na-ro, Jo; Jong, nga, sa. Jong: DX-Jong (pronounced DXn-Jong), Sikkim.

Ra, da-tā, da; da, na-ro, do; ra, ja-tā, Ja; Ja-dengbu. Je; ga, la-tā, la; la, ģi-gu, li; ling, nga, ling: Do-ye-ling, or Don-ye-ling, Darjeeling, or the Place of Ecclesiastical Sway; literally the Place of the Sovereign Stone.

ሽኝ 'ሕኝ' Ba, na-ro, bo; bö', da, bö'; sa, ka-tā, ka; Kä', da, Kä': Bö'-κä', Language of Tibet.

\$ 22.—Transliteration.

For the system adopted in this work of transliterating Tibetan words into Romanized Equivalents see § 2.

The best method, no doubt, is the one that was adopted at the Vienna Congress of Orientalists, and which may be found exemplified in Rai Sarat Chandra Das Bahadur's Tibetan-English Dictionary. By that system each letter in a Tibetan word is transliterated, but a line is drawn under every letter that is not pronounced, or it is distinguished by special type from the letters that are pronounced. It is not adopted in this work, as it is really only necessary for purposes of scientific precision

§ 23.—USE OF THE TIBETAN DICTIONARY.

The following appears to be the way in which the words in a Tibetan Dictionary (ATNET T'SIG-DZÖ') are arranged.

1.—According to the order of the Ta Kā-Lī, or Consonantal Series of the Ta Ka-Ka, regarded as *Initials*, or as they are sometimes called. *Root letters*, with the inherent vowel-sound of W. A. The first thing, therefore, that the student has to do, when he wants to look up a word, is to ascertain what its Initial letter is.

Then the words under each consonant, beginning for instance with $abla^* | Ka$, are arranged thus:---

- 2.—The simple consonant, e.g. 7
- 3.—The simple consonant with subjuncts like Q' 'ā, wa-zur, or Pr Sha-log K'a-e.g. 37 LA-WA, Woollen Blanket.
- 4.—The simple consonant with affixes, single and double, for the order of which as amongst themselves, see § 16. Then the same with subjuncts.
- 5.—Next, according to the foregoing order as regards their consonants, words qualified by the vowel-signs ģi-ģu, żhyab-kyu, Deng-bu, and Na-ro, in that order.
- 6.—Simple consonant qualified by ya-tā alone.
- 7.—Ya-tā words in all orders down to 5, inclusive.
- 8.—Simple consonant qualified by Ra-tā alone.
- 9.—Ra-tā words in all orders down to 5, inclusive.
- 10.—Simple consonant qualified by 5 Ha-tā alone.
- 11.—Ha-tā words in all orders down to 5, inclusive.
- 12.—Simple consonant qualified by la-tā alone.
- 13.—La-tā words in all orders down to 5, inclusive.
- 14.—Foreign or other special words formed with the Reversed letters.
- 15.—Words with the Prefixes T, 5, 7, N, and Q, in that sequence, and each sequence arranged according to the foregoing orders.
- 16.—Consonant qualified by Ra-go.
- 17.—Ra-go words according to foregoing orders.
- 18.—Consonant qualified by La-go.
- 19.—La-yo words according to foregoing orders.
- 20.—Consonant qualified by Sa-go.
- 21.—Sa-go words according to foregoing orders.
- 22.—No words with at La, as an Initial, and having any Superposed letter like 3 or 3, need be looked for under a La. They will only be found under the head of the Super-

Words in A. La, however, are found with qualifying vowel-signs, and such words may be looked for under A. La.

N.B.—Csoma de Körös's Dictionary is differently arranged.

§ 24.—Indicative and Differentiating Particles.

The Summer; 到如 The Autumn; 为为可 The Winter.

Sometimes, in this connection, 图 is seen instead of 可 [

নাইমাশা Both, The two together; সাম্ভামাশা All three, The three together. In this connection & sometimes replaces শ্।

元可 The very, That very; 元可强元 Just so; 元可说 (as a reply) Yes, exactly, precisely, to be sure.

Sometimes its sole use is to differentiate between words that resemble each other, e.g. The Confidence; but The Hood of a snake; The To show, To teach; but The Autumn.

The When used, is generally found attached to words ending in The Theorem The Theorem The Theorem The

下 K'a. When this particle is used, it is generally found attached to Literary words ending in ず, ざ, and は, and to Colloquial words ending in こ, or これ |

Ex.: - 독자 (properly 독자미) Appetite; 페디지미 (properly 데디지미) Number, Enumeration.

Also sometimes used instead of T as above explained.

A also indicates the top, upper surface, or front of anything

58

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

- inanimate. Ex.: A or AAA Lid; ALA Ridge, or Summit of a hill; AA Top, or head of a mountain, or pass; AAA Head of cliff.
- 和 Ga. Used after vowels, or after 口, 对, Q, and A' It is used as a Differentiating Particle with many roots. Ex.: 以以口 To disappear; but 以口口 Branch; 又口 Plain or Steppe; but 又口 Painted Scroll; 页 Husband; but 页可 A man, as distinguished from an effeminate person.
- & Ch'a. Apart from its meanings as a word by itself, this Particle is often seen added to roots. Ex.:— 및막'& (Literary), or 지'& (Colloquial), Echo; 워크를 Conversation; 워크를 Negotiations.
- 지 Pa. Used after 직, 듯, 亐, བ, བ, ས་, ས་ expresses ownership, or possession, or the connection subsisting between a person and some thing, action, employment, place, etc. Ex.:— 문화 A house, but 문화 디 A married man, or householder; 亐 A horse, but 亐디 Horseman; 좡 Water, but 좡디 Water-carrier; 자칫 Arrow, but 자칫 디 A title of Cupid as holder of five arrows; 찍다 The Tibetan Alphabet, but 찍다디 A child learning its letters; 꽁지 Lhassa, but 광자리 An inhabitant of Lhassa.
 - 2.—When added to all Cardinal Numbers except স্ট্রিস্ One, it forms the Ordinal Numbers. Thus, স্ট্রম্ম Two. but স্ট্রম্ম Second.
 - 3.—It is used also in connection with other enumerational expressions. Ex.:— শুসাস্থান the শ্রী or consmantal series of 30

letters; द्वामार्श्वेषादा A two-year-old boy; व्रिनाट र Measuring a cubit.

- 5. 一口 is also used to distinguish the different meanings of homonymous roots. Ex.:— 青口 Marrow, but 青口口 Foot.
- 6.—In the Colloquial it is often used instead of the supinal particle ঘ্রম (much used in Literary Tibetan). Ex.:— মিল্লম্মর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট্রম্বর্ট
- To Po. Indicates an agent. It is then sometimes, e.g. when annexed to the Infinitive, preceded by 只 pa. Thus. 到初以完 A or the hearer.

It also expresses the idea of the Definite or Indefinite Article

in connection with Noun Substantives. Ex. 3727 An or the eye; 2727 A or the country; 2727 A or the tree, or piece of wood: 2827 A or the road; 2727 The poor.

Used with numerals it also performs the functions of the Definite Article, or of the word aforesaid. Ex: — 기생자기 The three together.

- Y P'o. An affixed or prefixed particle, signifying Male, or paternal.

 Ex.:— 写证 Cock-bird; 识证 Male fox; 证可以可 Bull Yak; 证误 Dog.
- 可 Wa. The form assumed by 되 when the root to which it is annexed ends in a vowel, or in こ、ロ、ス or ス In many noun-substantives, however, its place is taken by 耳 Ex.:— 中下口 An oriental; 没て口 Valley; 以れ口 A provincial or rustic; 和文 A frontiers-man.
- ম Bo, or Wo. The form assumed by ম when the root to which it is annexed ends in a vowel, or in দ, ম, ম or ম Ex.:—ইম A river; মন্ত্ৰী or নিমান ; ম্বাম Brave.
- Ma. An immovable particle after various roots of substantives.

 Ex.:— 카지 Sun; 등자 Monk; 즉자 Milk. Sometimes, though not always, it indicates the Feminine Gender. Ex.:— 취기자 A mare.
- Feminine Gender. Ex.:— 日初 or 和日 But not always.

 Ex.:— 和 Music; 表記 Top-point.

Attached to adjectives, it does not always indicate gender. Ex.

- স্ত্ৰ A differentiating particle. Ex. সাজ A steep declivity, but সাজ স্থান প্ৰাণেশ্বৰ
- 表 Tse. A point, top, or edge. Also, however, an affix of Chinese origin. Ex.:— 与可可录 Polish, lustre, brilliant to a point or degree; dazzling; 以录 A duck; 五元 A brass coin; 可元录 Tibetan name of Confucius.
- रें Ni. See § 27, 2, on the Definite Article.
- Indicate the Definite or Indefinite Article, but are not much met with. Ex.:— The or an egg; NCA The or a lion; The deep.

 η Ku.

17. K'11

IJ Gu.

5 Ngu.

d' Nu.

J' Bu, Wu.

5 Ru.

a. Lu.

Q. 'u

W Yu.

Definite or indefinite and diminutive particles. Apparently a re-duplication in (źhyab-kyu) of the final letter of the root. Ex.:— 表写: A or the mite; 對可可 (其可) A or the child; 可有可, A or the youth. But not always. Ex.:— 和文, A or the mannikin; 對不可, A or the little drop.

§ 25. THE CASES AND THEIR SIGNS.

(N.B.—The student is advised to glance at the paragraphs and conjugations relating to the verb To BE. See post.)

The various relations in which a Tibetan Noun and Pronoun may stand to some other word in the sentence are nearly all expressed by means of divers monosyllabic primitive particles, and words compounded therewith, which perform the same functions as are performed by English Prepositions, but which, save for sundry Vocative Signs, are all Postpositional. These relations or cases are as follow:—

I.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

Except in connection with Intransitive Verbs (Active; Neuter or Inactive; and Inceptive, i.e., implying a beginning or change of state), and also with the verbs $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{a}}$ T_{o} be (the mere copula which is used attributively); $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{a}}$ or $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{a}}$ its negative form; $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{a}}$ T_{o} be, to exist, to be present; $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{a}}$ its negative form; $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{a}}$ its emphatic or intensive form (hardly ever used), and one or two other forms of the verb T_{o} be used in Literary Tibetan; there is practically no such thing in Tibetan as a verb governed by the Nominative Case. The following is an instance in which, though the practice is irregular, it is allowable and common in the Colloquial to use the Nominative in the usual European way:—

BY-ZCE O BEN ME CHI

Will you drink tea?

The more correct way would be :—

To The more co

The subject, however, is always put in the Nominative Case in sentences like the following, where, though the verb is Transitive, it is also Passive:—

র ক্রিন্ট্রেন্ট্রিন্ট্

In such cases Q. la is optional, and may be omitted if desired.

The subject is always put in the Nominative Case in sentences like the following, where the verbs are Intransitive (active, neuter, or inceptive):—

इ.ह. मुनानी वर्ना। द्विमयम्बर वर्ने नी स्पर्। इ.स.वर मी वर्गा। के स.वर मी वर्गा। सुनु क्य हेर्र मी वर्गा। सुनु नाकेर सर मी वर्गा।

The horses run.

I am going down to the bazaar ..

It is raining.

The sun shines.

The child sleeps.

The child wakes, or breaks from slumber.

Where, however, the verb is transitive, the Nominative Case is never used, but always the Agentive Case. See § 25, VI.

II .- THE VOCATIVE CASE.

There is practically no Vocative Case, but several polite expressions are often used by way of assent, dissent, or address. The commonest is QUEL, and its variants.

III .- THE OBJECTIVE OR ACOUSATIVE CASE.

This is the same as the Nominative, with or without A. LA, signifying As regards. Ex.:—

নিমানু মি (মা) ব্রমমান নিমানু নিমানু মি loves the girl. Literally, By him, as regards the girl, a loving is.

हिर्नेश्राटः (वा) सहर्तानेर।

Do not forget me.

IV.—GENITIVE CASE.

The signs are:

To KYI, used after words ending with 5, 5, or N, or in the Colloquial after 95. DI, This.

भुँ (त्रा, ,, ,, ,, ,, व, अ, र, or व्य वे । भे भा } ,, after vowels.

W YI ,, in verse.

N.B. T, J, and J may all alike be pronounced GI in conversation.

1.—Possessive Aspect.

When the word to which the sign is annexed is in that part of the sentence which contains the subject, it should precede the chief substantive of the subject. Ex.:—

भूर प्रदेश मुनास केंद्र दि दिन्।

गुद्र ५ २ ६ १ मा स्वाप्त स्

2.—Qualificative Aspect.

When the word to which the sign is annexed is indicative of some quality, it may be regarded as an adjective; but, unlike Tibetan adjectives in general, it should precede whatever it qualifies. Ex.:—

क्षुः अव्हें व्यक्ति विराद्धि Lhassa is the city of the Jolmo (a sweet-singing bird).

ब्रॅंड प्राप्त हें सुक्ष प्राप्त (or नाबद Tibet was formerly a hidden (or प्राप्त) ध्राप्त विना हेर। secret) land.

N.B.—The particle & NI (see § 27, 2) has the effect of singling out and laying stress on the word 55 WW Bö'-vü, Tibet. This

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

64

English word TIBET seems to have originated from some phrase such as ๑ริ๋รัร Di-Böd, whence Ti-bōt=TiBet; for, to a European (i.e., Continental, e.g. German) ear the sound of 5 is very like t.

As to the adjectival use of the Genitive case-sign, see also \$ 30, I, (vi).

3 .- Purposive Aspect.

श्रव.मी.श्रम।

For medicine the box. The medicine box.

इ.समामा विमास or मुग्ममा or, For tobacco a bay—A tobacco better still, simply श्रामना।

pouch.

र्ट्यामना।

Money-bag.

इस्रापना।

A leather bag for dry barley flour.

V .- THE DATIVE CASE.

1.—The only genuine Dative sign is A' LA, which should be used in this sense after verbs of giving, shewing, speaking or telling, and teaching, and some others.

Ex. :--

दशार्तिर त्याद्ये क दे हेर मी फीका

I will give you the book.

द्वे केनशर्वे मुंश मिं ता त्यमाना नर्ष My syce showed him the way.

यारेर or मध्यार्गेट or पर्मा।

श्राताः विचात्वयः दरः।

Tell the man to come.

प्रिंट. मुश्नाम क्. जाम रेट क्रा मिश्रश חאַם שׁביון

He will teach them his (religious) law.

मिंद्र ग्रीस मार्थिमा द्या था अप में विषय पा or 3x.x. (for a.) natan 1

Did you tell the servant not to 90 ?

2.—When the verb To be is used impersonally; for instance, in sentences intended to be the equivalent of English sentences beginning with the phrases, There is, There was, There has been, Tibetan requires that the word to which A' LA, when used, is annexed, should precede the chief substantive of the subject. With regard to the idiom for expressing the verb To have, Tibetans use the verb W5-L' Yô'-PA, To be present, To exist, in connection with the Dative in A' LA, after the manner of the Russians when the latter, instead of saying YA IMEYU, I have, say U MENYA YEST, To me is, or To me there is. Ex:—

If the speaker has some uncertainty regarding the fact to which he is speaking, he will use the verb 95% instead of W5. Thus:—

There is (I am almost sure) snow on that hill-top.

If he is not at all sure, but is only hazarding the statement, he will use the phrase W5.2.5. Yö-PA-RE', pronounced YAW-A-RE', instead of either W5. or 9597, or he may even use W5. You. Thus:—

रे हे देवे हेट व्यम्दशर्थे द्धारे There is (I understand) snow on that hill-top.

When There is, There was, etc., is used indefinitely, WC. Yong. Will, be, takes the place of the above, much as the future is employed by a Highlander in Scotland to express the present tense. Thus:—

भ्राह्म मिन्द्रें क्राक्ष मिन्द्रें क्रिक्ट क्रिक्ट क्रिक्ट क्षा there are (I expect), or There will be, very many trees in that valley down there.

3.—The following examples also illustrate the verb To have: ইম্ব্রিমেস্ম্স্র্রা This man has parents:

এন্ম নি এখন মির্ (মির্ is not No, he has no parents. used now.)

यमशामितायासा से प्

Yes, he has parents (emphatic).

4.—The Dative instead of the direct construction may also be used thus:—

दत्र श्रेस्रसः यः हिंद् गुःष्टा सः स्वतः स्राधितः दत्र स्रोससः यः हिंद् गुःष्टा सः स्वतः स्राधितः

I suppose your mother is aged. Literally, To my mind your mother seems aged.

The Honorific form of this would be :-

द्वे स्थेमश्रातानिर्गीश्यम्भु महिमाशः इमें द्वे स्थानिर्गीशः स्थानिर्गीशः

ম', La, is used to express for in sentences like the following:—
5'বিই'ম্ম'ন্দ্ৰ'ম'ব্ৰেম্ম'ৰ বিশ্ব বি

ABOUT, or CONCERNING, is also expressed by Q LA. Thus :-

पश्चीहरार (घ) हरे. or श्रूरा

I was or have been troubled about many affairs.

VI.—THE AGENTIVE CASE.

This case, which expresses the idea of anything being done by a person or thing, should always be used instead of the Nominative case with Transitive Verbs. The case-signs are as follow, and are annexed to the subject, that is to say, to the noun-substantive, the adjective if any, the definite or indefinite article, if any, or to the phrase constituting the subject.

N' SA. usable after vowels, or after a consonant sounding in in herent IN' a. This N' is silent, but modifies the immediately preceding vowel-sound. Sec § 3.

শীধা Gi. used after words ending with শা or ম দীধা Kyi.

गुँखा Gri. 5, or ar

68

(N.B.- দ্বীমা', দুমা', and দুমা' may all be pronounced দ্বীমা' St.)

Qমা' I

was Yi

was Yi

used in versification after vowels.

EXAMPLES :-

मुः सर्द्धाः अटार् ट्राय्याः मुर्स्याः चित्रः कुः यर्तु मा।

Lamas often drink tea.

If you had told me the truth I would have forgiven you.

रे'क्श'री'सु'मिर्यम्'यस' (or मिर्यम्' ये'विम'मीस') मियम्मिर्येट'मि'रेर् or मिरसेन'र्येट' or मिरसेन'ग्रेर्रिन

I cannot give him the work

She will not eat her food.

Then a serving layman will bring food. (Amundsen).

नुद्धान्यत् केष्ट्रियानुः स्ति स्य सामाकृषाः भारत्यान्य स्तिमानीः यपुना। नुद्धान्य स्ति स्व सामाकृषाः

BAINE.

Then the messenger pours out the wooing-beer for both the parents of the girl.

(Amundsen).

The two parents of the boy thus consulted (conversed).

(Amundsen).

2.—In connection with the Agentive Case it is convenient here to notice the affix 5/F6 K'AN, which in various ways is extensively used in Tibetan, much as K Kar, or Gar, is used in Persian to indicate a Doer. It may also be likeued to the English affix ER, in words such as Beholder, Murderer, etc. Later on it will be fully dealt with in connection with the Verb. Here it is only briefly alluded to 25 a sort of Active Participle annexed to Verbal Roots Ex.

दर्गे सम्ब

Do-K'an. The goer, He who goes.

लूट.भा ख.

Yong-K'an, The camer, He who comes.

वर्त्तु.भामन्.

DI-K'AN, The writer, He who writes.

It is found thus in the Literary Tibetan into which the New Testament has been translated :-

इटेंबार्या मुम्रका उद् मर्गेद् मान्द दे देगेद श्रञ्चा त्रमाशः श्रा

He who built all things is God (Heb. iii. 4).

शुरु-नृद-रद-यन्द-स्विद-मेन्य्या But he that seeketh the glory of him वर्तेत्रयादेकेमदेवायाधिकार्वे।

that sent him, the same is true (John vii. 18).

It is also used adjectively, thus:-

अनामास्यमी से।

The man who steals sheep.

The way in which it is used with the different tenses will be found explained in the paragraphs on THE PRONOUN (§ 31, IX, A), and THE VERB (§ 38, V., D.), and in the Appendix of Conjugations.

VII.—THE LOCATIVE CASE.

This case expresses relations of Space, but implies also the idea of Rest.

The common case-signs are the following primitive particles:-

Also বনু ্র্ম' Gyt'-nম: Through.

Sometimes the more Literary particles 5, Tu, 5, Du, 5 Ru, X' R., N' Sv, are also met with.

EXAMPLES: -

मिक्षासारतायार्थेर्गीतर्गा

He Woes in Lhassa proper.

= अः विनश्चान्दे चेन त्यसाता राष्ट्री नुदः। I suw the Sha-pe on the road.

ग्र-सर-जनाश्चर-र्मशनिश्चर.।

70

Please speak in Tibetin.

टशामित दे. श्रीय मी. दूर. (for द्व.र.)

I saw him sitting next his brother.

वर्षर.त.श्रुट्ट.वैट.।

सर्हेर् देश दे श्वमा है दे श्वी हो हो ति मी ति मी था। वाय देगा माना

Does the chhörten remain by the shepherd's tree?

म्र्ट्नीषट राज्यार ।

He will be at his own house.

टश.टे.जू.क्रीश.ज. (०१ व) वर्योचीश.च.लूरी

I have read it in a history-book.

मू है.का.भश्र.मू है.सूरे.दा.स्राच.मञ्जेल.

His mother kissed him on the forehead.

The following Colloquial examples illustrate the use of compound postpositions as expressive of the same Locative idea:—

or सैमी.लूट.टभ । मार्लुची.त्र्श.कु.जूचीश.ज.सैची.ची.इटे.राश.

Will the servant wait outside?

टपु.क्रूब.ज.भ.चबेचोश.रूचोश.चोबेट.।

Please do not stand in front of me.

वर्ताः अत्यान्य वर्षाः वर्षाः

Tibet is beyond Sikhim.

१5ुमा ~

मीवर यत्रम्।

Sikhim is between Nipāl and Butān.

मिट.त.क्षेत्र.वन्यमाथ.व.वर्नेन।

The house is near the river.

स्.श्र.कृष्ट्र, संट्यास्य (वर स्ट्रेट्ट, वर

It is snowing on the hill-tops.

रेटेज.मेज.तपु.बट.ज.परेचा

ब्रुट-गु-स्रनाष्ट्रिये-रगुक्तियः (or बटाबः) वर्गा The money is inside the leather bag.

The wolf is in the midst of the flock of sheep.

क्रमाश (or मान्धः) ८५मा। क्रमाश (or मान्धः) ८५मा।

The city stands beside a big river.

विस्तराम्यः ने शुक्रारः क्षेटः हे चे लिना नी प्रमा के चे त्याव दुना।

The court of justice is near a pretty garden.

मुनायः मुनागुः २५न। सुन् नुः देवे मिटास्ये दिनायानः सुनः दशः

The child creeps under the pony's legs.

It will be seen that the above Locative postpositions are used with the Genitive Case, that is, they are connected by means of the Genitive sign with the substantive or other part of speech to which they refer.

Notice, however, the following constructions :-

मिलेमार्ट्र जम्मुम्पर्येम। मिन्नेष्यः ये. श्रुप्तायः संस्रारः र मिन्यः दशः

The dog chases the hen round the house.

प्ततः (or देंचें) गानामक्रियाणी नरः

The load must pass through between the two posts.

चकु्स्रत्तपुः बटः जानकीचीसः श्रटः । इ.जा. डे.चंचा. इपुः देगीजा चक्री संबंधा जन्न

The train, passing through the midst of the rocky hill, inside the constructed path, ran = The train ran through the rock by the tunnel.

VIII .- THE PERIODAL OR DURATIONAL CASE.

This case expresses relations of *Time*. Its common signs are the same primitive particles as those which denote the Locative Case, namely:—

 $\left\{\begin{array}{c} \P \text{ NA} \\ \text{At, In, During, etc.} \end{array}\right\}$

There are also others, like 5 Ru, X RA, 5 Du, 5N Dü, etc.

Sometimes the sign is used alone, and sometimes it forms part of compound postpositions, or even of precedent adverbial expressions.

EXAMPLES :-

मिति विक्ति के कुरि नुसाय मु निराया मिति विक्ति के कुरि नुसाय मु निराया

लूट.। टश.ब्रिटे.ज.चेंच.चीशेश.ब्री.शट.ज.शेंट.

क्रि. एश. श्राचीश. क्री. क्रुश. सेचीश. पुश.

र्वेद्रायाटशाः निट. २५ रेडेरा स्नामदामी स्मर्थाः चदार्टेरा नेद्रा गीः स्मर

र्यामीर्यातामा हे हे ब्रीट र में शर्र में

तर्मा वेटाम् भेडाट. (or भेड्र.) रेश.र्ट्य.हिश.ज. (or मिंबेबोज.) टश.पर्ट.

He must go at three o'clock.

Hè came to India in his twentieth year.

I shall pay you within three months.

At (or during) the first salutation Tibetans present ceremonial scarfs to each other.

The devil disappeared at dusk.

I knew the doctrine of Buddha a long time ago.

I knew the Amban named Shangtāi a short time ago.

At the same time (or At a certain time) he was Chinese Ambassador in Darjeeling.

Since that time, so I have heard, he has died.

रुं र्हेन् भूने प्राप्त (or नरपुं) सं प्राप्त Please do not come till five o'clock.

रें-तुसादसामिन्निर्भाष्ट्रामान्निर्माणीक्। Then (or At that time) I will

Then (or At that time) I will receive you, i.e., grant admittance.

मिंद्रिःमालुमात्मःश्लेमसःयःदेद्।

At last you have arrived!

रिते हैं 'त' स' श्रेवस' (or श्रेवस' श्रेवस' श्रेवस' क्षेत्रस' श्रेवस' क्षेत्रस' श्रेवस' श्रेव

On the way up to (i.e. before reaching or getting to) the hill top, you will be tired.

ساق کال

In sentences like the following, where the durational signification is obvious, the case-sign (say- চুমামা Dü-La) is omitted:—

ই বিশ্বীমান্ত্ৰমান্ত্ৰীয়া ক্ৰমান্ত্ৰীয়া বিশ্বাসন্ত্ৰীয়া বিশ্ব

That is to say, it is unnecessary to say & \$\frac{3}{5}\Pi

IX.-THE MODAL CASE.

This Case is intended to include all that is connoted by the term Instrumental Case, and some other additional significations. The signs are:—

বৃষ্ণ Nম: By, Through, By way of, Via.

55. DANG: With, Against.

N' SA (silent): With; Because, Since, etc. Also the Participial idea.

形式 円刻 Kyèn-gyi

以工 Ch'ir (Literary)

By, Through, On account of, By reason of, etc.

以工 Ch'ir-ou(Literary)

74

EXAMPLES :-

वे.पडट.य.मेट.त.यंश.चडट.। १.ट्रे.श्रंच.धच.यंश.प्रदेश। मूर्ण.श्रुट.यंश.संट.चटेट. (or चह्र्ट्र)।

अ.चडिट.थ.श<u>म</u>्यिश.चडिट.।

स्याने द्वारा निया विष्या

ट.कू.पालभागालाहमातान्द्रमुना गुरा।

विवसंयन् केंश मुखार्थे न्दा सहया या ने न

यर्हेश्लूट.टभ। मैजात्र्राचयोठाष्ट्रिश्कूष्ट्राचन्नभातान्टर.

दः र्हे दि द्रमण् में र्हे शः द्रणः दृद्धः दः दे (for वः) देद्।

म्बेर (या) ब्रियशम्दूर।

कटामटामी मुन्यमुश्रामि श्रेर पार्शेट वारेर ।

स्याद्वारा । स्याद्वार्थाः हे. हे. श्वीट वर्षे दे. प्रकृतः स्याद्वार्थाः व्याप्ताः क्षेत्रः वर्षेत्वः वर्षेत्रः वर्वेतः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षे

Accost (or call to) him by name.

Seize the horse by the reins.

If you catch the fowl, catch it by the legs.

If you grasp the fish, grasp it by the head.

The lamas spoke through trumpets.

We met (or fell in) with robbers on the road.

The Shyab-pa's (Zhāpés) have had an interview with the Regent.

Will the Regent agree with the opinion of the Kā-lons?

Our soldiers have fought with the enemy, or against the enemy.

Strike the nail with the hammer.

He was ruined by, through, or on account of, the beer-house.

The Pān-chhen-rim-po-chhe, or Tsang-pān-chhen, called the Ṭashi Lama, came from Ṭashi-lhūmpo via Darjeeling.

The following is Literary from the New Testament :-

हिन के मार मो र्सेर व्याप है निमान हा हेर्न या

What question (dispute) ye with them?

Colloquially :-

यिन्द्रिंशमान्देवे केंन्यत्वर्ते केंन्द्र स्टिन् यानवानी व्यत्

Again :-

ट.गूर्य.चंडा.घ.पंह्नांडा.चुना।

It is I: be not afraid: Literally, It being I, etc.

Colloquially :-

ट स्ट्रिंड्ट (हिट) झ दिन हिना

The following also is Literary: -

हेदे छेर वि वर्ज्ञ वा श्रेट or सेन् या श्रेट | Through or by what was he ruined?

X .- THE ABLATIVE CASE.

Postpositions such as 55° DANG, 58° NX, and AN° DX, all signifying From, From amongst, From amidst, Out of, etc., are usually assigned to this case; but inasmuch as, when carrying those significations, they really express the idea of Direction from, they have been placed under the heading Terminative Case.

AN LX, however, possesses meanings other than Direction from.

Accordingly, QIN LA, and of NA, may be taken as the signs of the Ablative Case, as expressive of significations such as the following:—

অম' Lম : Than, Except, Save, But, But for, Besides, etc.

5 NA (with negative): Unless, If .. not.

EXAMPLES :-

र्केट्-शुःल्राटः। बिन्नशःसर्-टु-मी.चोर-ज.चि.च.च-चशःजशः The Shapé will not stay in India except for a few months, i.e. longer than a feu months.

दर्म।

There was nobody in the fortress except one soldier.

76

भटः वृंशाम् भुैरः त्रात्रुचा । वरः यव्यारसः चोंशः महिना यसः सेरः गुटः

वर्ने त्यहामाल्य होर्।

भश्रामा वससा स्ट्रासा र्द्धर व स्ता स्ट्रिंग ग्री सा

क्ट. कुंश च. चटेट. लूट. । पंचीय ता. क्षु. हचा. ता. ची. च. च. चिंटे. क्षु. वंशश. When the Oriental possesses nothing but one piece of cotton cloth he is often happy.

Besides this there is no other.

Unless all the work is done you will get no pay.

Unless travellers are not robbed, i.e. If travellers are robbed, you will all be punished.

Resort may also be had to the phrase নামট (or নামাইটি) তেওঁ বিশ্বাল (or বিশ্বাল) ... NA, with a negative, If .. not, or even the বিশ্বামান alone, as above, without the নামটি ... Thus:

माय दे हिंद के श्रेमश में मुर्दा

Unless ye repent, or If ye repent not (Literary. | Luke xiii. 3, 5).

Unless you repent.

Unless in dog is at the entrance door.

Unless the petition is presented.

Unless the agreement (bond) has been signed.

The following are Literary expressions used in the New Testament:

सन्द्रम् स्थरासाम्त्रीयासारारारारात्रीत्वासारा

Except the apostles they all, etc. (Acts viii. 1).

देशः ३५ दि५५६ हिंद् हैं। यर या मायद्य

Besides all this, between us and you is (being) a great gulf (Luke xvi. 26;

विश्वास्तर में किट स स्मानिया विश्वास

Whosoever shall put away his wife, except it be for fornication, i.e. fornication not having been committed. (Matt. v. 32).

These may be rendered Colloquially thus:-

भ्रे. इं. क्र. मार्ट्रेयाक्षा (or भ्रेक्टा) हे हैं: वस्रकारहर etc.

Except the apostles they all, etc.

चैश्वावश्चामःच्याक्। श्रुक्षःगुटःरटःनीःश्चेःद्रश्चरःश्चेनाम्प्रश्चाःस

Whosever shall put away his wife. except it be for fornication=17 anybody divorces his wife, fornication not having been committed.

रें क्षान्तर्भिषः (or रे क्षेत्रयः) टार्क्ट द्राः वित्रके वे वरावानस्यान्त्रवाकेत्र

Besides all this, between us and you is (being) a great gulf, etc.

The expressions Apart from, and Rather than, are rendered thus:

द्यः मुद्दिन्यः मानुसः स्ट्रेन्द्रः मानुन्त्रसः दयः मुद्दिन्यः मानुन्त्रसः

I have two rupees, but apart from that I will give you nothing.

चिर्न्यः प्रेरः चः यहा विष्या होरः रः विर्न्यः प्रदेशः चः यहा विष्या होरः रः

I would rather give you food than money.

Or पर्देर:र:भेव।

Would give.

XI .- THE TERMINATIVE OR TRANSITIVE CASE.

This case denotes the relations of a noun or pronoun with reference to its Direction in Time or Space, either towards or from something mentioned in the sentence, and it may imply the idea of motion as well as that of rest. Under it come, as already stated, many expressions signifying direction from, which in other books are assigned to the Ablative Case.

The signs of the case as thus defined are :--

78

Du: after final E, 5, 5, 5, 8, 5, 0

7 To: after final 河, 55河, 耳

5 Ru : after final vowels.

N Su: after final N

commonly used in the Colloquial I IA: after anything, and possessing the significations of all the above signs.

DIRECTION TOWARDS.

55° DANG

AN NI DIRECTION FROM.

UN IX

EXAMPLE :--

1.—DIRECTION TOWARDS.

ATT BAR-DU: Up to, Until, As far as, As long as .. not.

५ खूदे पर ५ दशकि अर्घर Up till now, I have not seen him.

5.75. Hitherto.

देवे पर 5 or दे पर 5 Until then, Up to that time.

মার্থিমার্থিমার্থিমার As long as it has not been obtained, i.e. Until it has been obtained.

মিন এবংবং বং বি long as he does not die, i.e. Until he dies.

विद्वास सामारे पर पुना How far is Lhasa from here?

55 8355 DANG NYAM-DU: Together with, Along with, In Company with.

मिने प्रत्यारी द्वाका द्वारा अवन्य प्रम्य पारे में He has been dwelling with wild beasts in the desert.

STATE KYI-DU: Amongst, Amidst, Into the midst of.

विभाउँ अद्यवि द्वेतु सुर्दे वि द्र्णिय र सर्दे स् गीव र्ष The cat springs in amongst the twittering sparrons (little gray birds.)

বৃদ্ধির Gan-bu: Towards.

क्षे हिन्दा दे में निर्मा निर्मा दे के निर्मा The crowd is going to-

955 NANG-bu: Into.

नि ने दिने कि प्राप्त कि प्राप्त कि कि प्राप्त कि कि wishes to jump into the water.

ইনাৰ্ট্ T'06-TU: In the direction of; Towards.
নিট্ ই ইনিই ইনাৰ্ট্ ইনিনিইনা The eagle soars towards the sun.

5° Ru To.

धुनानुं अर्के दुं (or बा. or अर्केर) प्रदार रेड् The boy has

নি অ'ব্যান্ত্র আহেম'ম'ই He has come from up there hitherward
নি ম'ব্যান্ত্র আহেম'ম'ই He has come from down there hitherward.
নি ম'ব্যান্ত্র আহেম'ম'ই He has come from over there, or yonder, hitherward.

मीना मान कि दिन निर्मित अर (or more Colloquially हैं) हिर्मित मीनिक The ants are swarming near my feet.

My MA-RU: Down to.

प्रमुख अ द प्रमु नि अद I am going down to the bazaar.

মান Man: Downwards, Down; W. Yan, Upwards, Up.

দেশবেল্লিসেন্দ্রিলিন্দ্রিক I shall travel up and down.

Su: To, Towards.

र्शिस्य (or वा) व्यवणी विद्या It is getting towards the time.

মুদারা Ch'o-la, or ইয়াঝা Ngö-la: Towards, On, etc.

अअगादि दुर ध्रेनाश आपट धर्क भेर अर अन्य द्वेनाश आद भेर On this side of the road there are houses, on that side meadows.

न्यमान्द्रादाने चेत्राधाया र्वा (or द्विमाशाया) श्रीयशानुदा The army marched towards Tibet.

58'A' DÖ-LA: To the time; at the time of.

รูมนาถามั่ะ It came down to the time, i.e. The time arrived รุมนาถาบั่ะ The time will come.

אָבָּק' Bar-Nang-Du ? or אָבּע Bar-La: Over, above.

युः साथेव दे दि अमें दे वर भा दि र मुः त्रुमः The butterfly flits over my head.

પ્રેંગ NGÖN-LA: Ahead, In front.

द्वे श्वें पार्मुण Go on ahead (or in front) of me.

2.—DIRECTION FROM.

55' DANG: From. This is Literary.

अर्के देश अर्क अर्थ दे दि प्रमा दे दि प्रमा दे प्रमा कि lake is far from the frontier.

पन्रायन्तित् नेन्द्राय्यायणेन The husk was separated from the grain.

AN' NA : From.

द्वार ने कि कि कि कि कि कि कि कि कि bushes.

बिर्शे देन मुद्भिन निर्देन दश्यान नुन निर्मानी वर्तना . The cat creeps from under the table.

मिं अन्य यह मुन्य हैं । He has gone from up there thitherward.

মিনাব্রাধান দ্বীব্দান্ত্র He has gone from down there thitherward.

न्वशः सुन्दर् दशः हिन्तायन गुःसन् Henceforth I shall not speak

ইব্ৰাম্মান্ত্ৰাম্ব্ৰাম্ব্ৰ After that, or thenceforth, I did not speak to him.

हिंदिन दिन हो हिन हो है ने कि You may walk from here to there, or to that.

র্না, মার্থার স্থান মার্থার From the beginning it was not so.
—(New Testament).

Colloquially :-

র্থির-১৮ বিজ্ঞানে দিব প্রার্থ (or বিশাল) লা বিশানি সামি মান্ত্র দিব কাল কি beginning it was not so.

দিন্দান্ত্ৰ বৃষ্ণানুদ He originated from the Lotus.—(S. C. Das.)

ने नुसान ने पार्क द्यां के सुनि सुनि में Meanwhile the younger ones must recite their books by (literally from) heart.—(Amundsen).

NN LX: Out of.

भ्रे. नर्जु ५ त्यसः नार्द्रेश नार्देन। र्घे द्वीत्रसः जुदः Out of eight men only two arrived.

मिस्रामि दे लु से दुः त्यसः दिवेद स्ट्रीटः He drew his cap out of the water.

§ 26.—Numerals.

I.—The Cardinal Numbers, according to সুমেণ্ট (or ইমণ্ট) রুম সুমেশ Dang-kyi (or Tsi-kyi) Nam-dang, Arithmetical Enumeration.

	Tibetan Figure.	Tibetan Name.	Romanized Equivalent.
1	2	मुठेमा	Chi'.
2	3	मार्केश.	Ňyī.
3	3	मार्थमः	Sum.
4	2	मिले.	Žhyi.
5	*	ट्	Nga.
6	S	कु मा	Du'.
7	v	नर्नु	Dün.
8	L	지 한 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기 기	Ğyä'.
. 9	е	59	Gu.
10	20	고용., or 고요.점ਖ਼.다.	Chu, or Chu t'ampa.
11	27	च रु.मार्डमा	Chug-chi'.
. 12	23	चर्छ मिट्टेश	chug-nyī.
13	13	चक्र.चाश्रभः	Chug-sum.
14		चश्च.चब्रे.	Chub-zhyi
11		महें कि	Cht-nga.
1		31	Chu-du'.
, 1	7 78	प्रकार्यें	Chub-dün.

English Figure.	Tibetan Figure.	Tibetan Name.	Romanized Equivalent.
18	· 7L	वर्रे वर्त्तुर	Chob-ğyä'.
19	. 20	चद्ध-द्रना	Chu-ğu.
20	२०	के.स. के.स.स.स.	Nyi-shu, or Nyi- shu t'am-pa.
		हिं भी हिंगी, or	Nyi-shu tsag-chi'.
21	37	रूपार्डमाः, or	Nyer-chi'.
		अ माठिमा	Tsag-chi'.
22	33	ो ३.से.इ.चा३ूश, or	(Nyi-shu tsag-nyī.
		(इ.मार्ड्स.	Tsag-nyī.
30	30	র্থনাত্ত, or প্রথাত্ত রধানা	Sum-chu, or Sum- chu t'am-pa.
31	32	्रिंश हैं श्रें माडेना, or	(Sum-chu sog-chi'.
	4	्रेश्-मिर्डम्-	Sog-chi'.
40	20	पर्वे.पश्च. or पर्वे.पश्च.संस्ताः	Žhyib-chu, or Žhib-chu t'am- pa.
41	52	पिले पढु ले मार्डमा, or	Žhib-chu zhye-chi.
		∫मिलें'मऊ'लें'मार्डमा', or लें'मार्डमा'	Źhye-chi.
50	40	원.업물., or 원.건물.업원.다.	Ngab-chu, or Ngab-chu t'am- pa.
51	rall	(थ्रःमञ्जादमाः, or दःमञ्जिमाः	Ngab-chu nga-chi'.
	,	दम्महम्म	Nga-chi'.
60	So	वैनाङ, or वैनाङ समाया	Dug-chu, or Dug- chu t'am-pa.
61	5)	र्नुमा रु:रे:माठमा, or	Dug-chu re-chi'.
	1	र माठमा	Rē-chi'.

English Figure.	Tibetan Figure.	Tibetan Name.	Romanized Equivalent.
70	No.	मरुक्'ख', or मरुक्'ख'रमःया	Dün-chu, or Dün- chu t'am-pa.
71	ขา	(यर्तुः हुँ दुनम्बिम्।, or	Ďön-chu dön-chi'.
80) Lo	पर्कुर्'छ', or पर्कुर्'छ'रामाय	Ğyä'-chu, or Ğyä'.
8	1 43	्रिन्कुर् हु मु महिना, or	Gyä'-chu gya-chi'.
9	0 6		Gub-chu, or Gub-
ģ	e l) में मिहिना र्जा महिना राज्य में मिहिना, or	chu t'am-pa. Gub-chu go-chi'.
10	00 29		Gya, or Gya-t'am-
	00 20	31.101	pa. Ğya Ğdang chi'.
	00 30	ال الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ا	Nyib-gya, or Nyīb- gya. Sum-gya.
	100	क्र में निम्	Žhyib-ğya
		हिंद विमाः हिंदि क	Ngab gya. Tong, or Tong-t'a'.
4	500 r3	.०० हिंद.सेच.जि.चची.	Tong-ţ'a' nga dang ngab-gya.
		००० तिनुसः, ०० तिनुसम्। ००० मि., ०० तिनुसम्।	Ţ'i, or Ţ'i-ţ'a'.
4,000	0,000	000 M.M.	Bum, or Bum-t'a'. Sa-ya.
10,00	0,000 20,000	,coo] B.D.	J'e-wa.

English.	Tibetan.	Romanized equivalent.
100 millions	र्रुट:सुर:	Ďung-ch'ur.
1000 millions	ह्य-तिविश्व.	T'er-bum.
10,000 millions	बेर.पंतिस.पृथं.म्.	T'er-bum ch'em-po.
100,000 millions.	सिना सिना.	T'ag-t'i'.
A billion	सिना सिना के अ द्या	T'ag-t'i' ch'em-po.
10 billions	₹ব.ঘশুম	Rab-tam.
100 billions	रवःवण्याः केत्रचे	Rab-tam ch'em-po.
1000 billions	मार्ग्यश	Tam.
10,000 billions	मानुस्रक्षः केषुः च	Ťam-ch'em-po.
100,000 billions	र्गोनाश	Tī'.
1,000,000 billions	न्त्रीनुश केन ये	Tī ch'em-po.

N.B.—To the above succeed progressive numbers increasing by multiples of ten up to sixty enumerations, counting 100 millions as the ninth. These sixty enumerations are used for astronomical and astrological purposes. Sanskrit equivalents exist only up to the fifty-first enumeration. See Rai Sarat Chandra Das Bahadur's Dictionary, article TEXT GRANGS (Dang).

II.—The Cardinal Numbers, according to 可用完美料用只好 KA-K'AI NAM-DANG, Alphabetical Enumeration.

The following system of Numerical Notation is employed by Tibetans in their Registers, Indices, and the like. It only goes up to 300, and consists of an adaptation of the Tar. It may be regarded as the equivalent of our own method of Notation by means of the Roman letters.

1	to	30	गों,	PT,	मा,	and	80	on	to	M.
31	"	60	गें,	南,	मीं,	33	"	,,	,,	র্জে
61	,,	90	Ŋ,	F.,	मां,	"	•,	"	29	প্র.
91	, ,,	120	गों,	मं, मं,	मों,	99	"	"	,,	छो.
121	,,	150	m,	Ã,	में,	59	"	"	"	द्धि.
151	,,	180	Д.	TT.	मां,	,,,	99	,,	,,	37.
		210	ल किं	中,	ए मिर	"	"	"	39	न शिम्स
211	"	240	E.C.	म्लाम्,	मं,	,,	"	"	55	म्या (म्य
241	,,	270	लें मिल	मिं,	त्रं मिं	"	>>	99	"	120
271	,,	300	0 Hind	त्रेषं त	ल में ल	"	"	"	"	ह्यू.

NOTES.

1.—PRONUNCIATION.

The Colloquial custom of pronouncing the prefix of a second syllable with, and as though it were part of, the preceding syllable, is really incorrect, and is not followed in Literary Tibetan. Thus, प्राप्तिमा Eleven, pronounced Chud-chi' in Colloquial, is pronounced Chud-chi' in Literary Tibetan. So प्राप्तिमा in Colloquial, is pronounced Chud-zhyi in Colloquial, is pronounced Chud-zhyi in Literary Tibetan.

2.—AFFIXES.

used with the full tens, up to and inclusive of a hundred; meaning thereby a collective body, or whole lot, of any of those numbers. It is, ho rever, similarly, but much less frequently, applied to numbers below ten.

After a hundred and with thousands. IT T'A' is used. Also after expressions denoting periods of time, such as IJAIT DUN-T'A', a week. III DA-T'A', a month.

With numbers above thousands & Ts'o; is used.

As regards all these affixes, however, their use or non-use is quite optional.

3.—CONJUNCTIONS.

Note that where units are connected with some multiple of ten, the conjunction used is different for each series. In the 20 series it is Tsa; in the 30 series, No; in the 40 series, No; in the 50 series, No; in the 60 series, No; in the 70 series, No; in the 80 series, No; in the 80 series, No; in the 90 series, No; in the 80 series, No; in the 90 series, No; in the 80 series, No; in the 90 series, No; in the 80 series, No; in the 90 series, No; in the 80 series, No; in the 90 series, No; in the 90 series, No; in the 40 series, No; in the 70 series, No; in the 90 series, No; in the 70 se

In the Colloquial the short forms স্থান্তন্ Tsac-chi', 21; স্থান্ত্র Tsac-kyi, 22; ইণ্নার্ডনা Soc-chi', 31; ইণ্মেন্ত্রি Sob-zhyi, 34: and the like, are very often heard instead of the longer forms, গুলুস্থান্ত্রনা Nyi-shu-tsac-chi', 21, etc.

When dates are being stated or enumerated, the F TsA, or 55° DANG in the 20 series is dropped, and the form with 35° NYER is used, e.g. 35°755° NYER-ÖYE'-PA, the 28th.

4.—THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE, see \$ 28.

5. -APPROXIMATE NUMBERS.

Expressions like two or three, nine or ten, are rendered by putting the numbers in immediate juxtaposition. Ex. TON THE NYI-SUM two-three: 57773. Gus-ohu, nine-ten. If the speaker likes, he may

add 34" CHI', a or an, to any of these expressions. Thus, 434 মুধ্য র্না Nyi sum chi', Two or three.

Another method is to employ the adverb 35 TSAM, About, Just about. As many as. Ex. शंनारेना रा Sod chi' TSAM, About 31, or As many as 31; or the adverbs স্থান HA-LAM, প্রের GA-CH'EN, সুহ TSAR, or ATSAR DAM-LA, signifying nearly, almost. In these cases the adverb follows the numeral it qualifies.

6.—ORDINAL NUMBERS.

The first is rendered 55 DANG-PO, and The very first E 55 T JE-DANG-PO. With these exceptions the ordinals are merely the cardinals plus the particle I PA. Ex. JANI NYI-PA, The second; ਸਤੌਤ Cho-nga-pa, The fifteenth; ਤੇਵ-ਸਤੂਲਾਹ Nyer-sum-pa, or 🤫 प्राप्त NYE-SHU SUM-PA, The twenty-third.

7.—DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

When simple numerals are repeated in juxtaposition, সাধুর স্থান Sum-sum, Three-three, the meaning may be either three each, or three at once, or three at a time, or in threes, according to the way the sentence is framed. For instance, phrases like Three at a time, or In threes, or One at a time, are rendered by help of the expression SNIST J'X-NX, or CHX NX, literally Having done or Having made. Thus :-

मिर्क श्रम श्रम नुस न्या में प्राप्त । They set out in threes, or three at मि क्ष्र-इ-इ-विश्वस्थान्येनसानुदः।

a time.

They arrived one by one, or one at a time.

Expressions like Three each, Two each, One each, are rendered by RE-BE and a repeated numeral, but without the JATAN J'X-NX.

Thus :-

भारे ने पार्ह्मर रा सुमासुम विचारीता | Each man got three ru pees. र्शायारे रे ता क्षेर के रे रे रे रे

Give each coolie one rupee.

In the case of composite numerals like ব্ৰ'নাইনা Dön-chi', Seventy-one, only the last number of the compound is repeated. Ex.:-दें महिमा महिमा Dön-chie-chi', Seventy-one each, seventy-one at a time, or In seventy-ones.

8.—AGGREGATES.

Expressions like The two together, or Both, or All three, or The whole ten, may be rendered with the aid of the particles T KA, or ਰ Cha, or ਹੈ Po, affixed to the cardinal. Ex. ਸਤੇਬਾਗ ŇΥΙ-ΚΑ, Both, or The two together; ANN SUM-PO, All three, or The three together; 54 3 Gu-CHA, The whole nine.

Po, thus affixed, may also signify the aforesaid, if the context so requires.

9. -FRACTIONS.

These are usually expressed by adding the word & CH'A, Parl, to the cardinal, which is sometimes put in the Cenitive Case. Thus :-

is rendered by ANN'& SUM-CH'A.

,, ,, Даъ Zhyi-ch'a. 1th

,, श्रामाञ्चराक Sod-Nyl CH'A, or 1 nd र्शामाद्धेश गुःकः Sod-मर्ग स्रा CH'A.

Thoth ,, ,, ,, निर्मुक Gya-ch'a or निर्मुद्रिक Gyal-ch'a.

កៅលth ,, ,, ,, ម្តីប.ส. Tong-ch'A, or ម្តីប.ម៉ាង Tong-GI-CH'A.

.. .. मासुम्राक्तमानुदा Sun-сн'л ичі. ard

্, , , নিউ'ক'শার্মা Zhyi-ch'a sum.

As regards 1, there is a special expression, namely, 35m CH'E-KA. 11. may be rendered two ways: either महिमाद्र यह मा CHI' DANG CH'E'-KA, OR 35'55'73' CH'E' DANG MYI, With a half, two. The latter is the commoner usage in the Colloquial.

3] is rendered নায়ুস, ৭০. নার্নিক Sum dang zhyl oh'a, or নার্নিক নায়ুস, ৭০. নার্নিক Zhyl-ch'a sum dang zhyl, With aths four.

अर्थे प्रशास्त्र मा निष्ठ प्रशास के प्रशास के

10.-ADVERBIAL CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Expressions like Once, Twice, Thrice. Four times, etc., are rendered by the word & Ts'ar, or PCN T'eng, Time, followed by the desired cardinal number. Ex.:— & TJST TS'AR-CHI', or PCN TST T'ENG-CHI', Once: & TJSN TS'AR-NYI, or PCN TST T'ENG-NYI'

Twice: & THIST TS'AR-SUM OF PCN TST T'ENG-SUM, Thrice: & TS'AR-ZHYI OF PCN TS'AR-ZHYI, Four times.

Another word with the same signification, as &T' T'SAR and T'ENG is CAS LAN, but it is not so much used in the Colloquial.

Other expressions that may here be mentioned are:—

ANG: Atonce. Forthwith, Straightway, Immediately.

5'उट'र्कर'म्डिम्' Da Rung Ts'ar-chi': Once more.

5-35-র্থ-পারীথ Úa-rung ts'ar-kyt Twice more.

ET TS'ER. A separate time or occasion, or instance.

ZT.ZT. TS'ER TS'ER, Muny times, On separate occasions, Repeatedly.

भुनार्केर Suud-ts er A separate time or occasion.

출자 제다다 Ts' AR MANG-PO: Many times.

表で、可に置えて Ts'AR MANG-PO RANG (with negative): Not many times.

Once upon a time, or Once, or One day, referring either to the past or the future, may be rendered रूसकर (or अद, or ब्रेट्स) महिना (लेम or जेम) Dü Ts'ar (or Län, or T'eng) chi' (zhyi', or shi'); or रूसरे लेम Dü-re-zhyig-gi Ts'e.

11.—ADVERBIAL ORDINAL NUMBERS.

These are formed by adding $\vec{\Sigma}$ RA, to the $\vec{\Sigma}$ Po, or $\vec{\Sigma}$ PA, of the ordinals. Ex.:—

55 Hang-por: Firstly.

মান্ত্রায়ে Nyi-Par: Secondly.

रुपारेन पर Tsac-chic-par: Twenty-one'thly (= Twenty-firstly.)

12.—DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

Among these may be classed the following:-

मार्देश'मा' Nyt-KA, Both, e.g., वर्द्रमाद्देश'मार्द्रमाद्द्रमामा Both this and that.

মু'আই মাইম'মাইমাশান্ত্রীন্ধানাইর Both the pretty girls have arrived.
মু'আম' Su-yang, Anybody; (with a negative) = None, Nobody.
নানাই ' Ġa-Ġäi, Anything; (with a negative) = None, Nothing.

The Literary forms of TTR GA-GAI, are TEWE GANG-YANG, and TWE CHI-YANG.

Another expression is ANT WE CHIG-YANG, Even one; (with a negative)—None, Nobody, Nothing.

EXAMPLES.

मिं केंद्रे विद्युष्य शुप्पदार्श्वेवश्व श्वानुदः। None of them arrived. दशक्ति केंद्रे विद्युष्य शुप्पदार्थे विश्वानुः। I know none of them. उत्पमा दे हैं दे दे दे दे दे दे हैं। अपना मित्र दे हैं। None of these things will suit me.

दर्निम्हिस्मिदि बद्दान्य मिश्राप्य None, or neither of these two will do.

Expressions like A whole (something). An entire (something), A complete (something), A full (something), are rendered by 되는데 Gang-Ga, 됐는데 Gang-K'A, or simply 되는 Gang, or 되는 Gang: and the word 되는데 Chi', one, or 문제 Chi', A, An, is not made use of at all in such cases. Ex.:—

र्ममाभिक्तिमा प्राप्त (or ब्राप्त) The soldiers are rousting a whole ox.

५५ मुटामामारे

This is not a complete story.

द्यामार्थियः हान्यान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्राः Please give me a full cup of tea.

Entirely is rendered by \$55. BX'-6E, used only with a negative.

Thus:

हैं अ दे के भिना भिना कर देता Those accounts are not altoyether (or entirely) accurate.

All, whole, entire, may also be rendered by THAT'ST T'AM-CHA', &C. H' TS'ANG-MA, and HCH' GANG-K'A, or TICH' GANG-GA. Ex:

व्यक्षा अप्रकार क्ष्या का अपर्या का Suddenly the whole crowd disappeared.

भुक्ष-द्रमन्द्रे : प्रमण उद्दे दिन केंद्र । All the women were frightened.

ই'বুমহান্তই' De T'am-cha' not ই'র্ক্সহান্তই' Den-tso t'am-cha':

MC GANG, or MC GANG, is also used in connection with weights and measures instead of नहिन, or देन CHI', One, A, An.

So also, in connection with weights and measures and the Tibetan monetary system, 克 Do, is used instead of 可多い Nyi, Two, and signifies A couple. Otherwise the word for a couple is & CH'A.

But a phrase like Two-legged, or Three-legged, is rendered with the particle ZI, thus :- - TINGENZI or TINGENZI Here ZI means

Other expressions are: नार्देश हारा Double, or Two-fold; नार्देश होता Twice-born: निर्माहर में Every second day.

13. - NOUN SUBSTANTIVES.

无 Ts'o, the Plural-sign used in the Colloquial, is never expressed, either in speech or in writing, after a numeral adjective, or numeral adjectives, the noun-substantive thereby qualified always remaining in the singular. Ex. :--

र्भमासुस (not सिर्क मासुस) हिन्द्र Three men will go with you. शक्रेश.रे.हुब.लूट.।

14.—NOTATION BY LETTERS.

The use of the MER 35 PICA KA-K'AI NAM DANG, or Alphabetical Enumeration, has already been explained (See § 26 II). In this connection, when references in Indices, or Registers, or to quotations from learned works are being cited, it is customary to qualify the numeral letter by affixes such as I PA, II PAR, and I'M PA-LA, of which the first denotes the Book, Register, Index,, or the like, to which reference is being made, and the last two denote that the particular quotation or citation is to be found in some particular Book, etc.

94

TIBETAN GRAMMAB.

Ex.:-

TWI T'o A-PA: Register No. 30.

TT TIS PO-TI'K'A-PAR: In Volume No. 2.

इन्याय To GA-PA-LA: In Index No. 3.

CHAPTER II.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 27.—THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. The Definite Article The (which is really only an abbreviation of That) is represented in Tibetan in various ways, the principal being the words 35 DI, and 5 DE, of which the former is usually said to mean This, and the latter That.

Properly, 25° or 5° when used at all, should always follow the noun or adjective which it distinguishes.

As a rule it is only used when the distinguishing or demonstrative idea is intended to be conveyed.

EXAMPLES :-

र्शेष्ट्रिन्द्रार्थे श्रीवश्चाद्धः। This man arrived first.

मिंद्राणीश्चाद्धः विदेशेष्ट्राद्धः । The good man whom you sent.

मु: संस्थित सिन्। That pretty girl.

As a matter of fact Tibetans altogether discard the article in conversation, unless they really desire to express the demonstrative or distinguishing idea.

EXAMPLES :--

श्रेश्वर मित्रण। The man is coming. श्रेनि Shut the door. श्रेमिट छैस। Open the window.

A distinction, however, in the use of 95° and 5° is made between the nearer and the remoter relation, in regard both to time and space.

96.

For instance, when the article is intended to distinguish some person or thing already referred to; but to whom or to which reference is again being made, then, on the occasion of the second or any subsequent reference, Tibetans use 5. DE; 95. DI having been used on the occasion of the first reference.

EXAMPLE :-

श्र-देश्चेवश्र-वेट.।

The man has arrived (referring to somebody already mentioned).

Notice also how 35 and 5 are used in a phrase like this :-

ন্দ্রাহা (or ব্রাহার) আহ্মান্তর This is the messenger who came yesterday.

(N.B.—ANN yesterday, is Colloquial, ANC is Literary).

So, if on the occasion of the first reference, the object distinguished was a distant object, then $\hat{\xi}$ would be used; $\hat{\xi}$ being employed to distinguish a near or present object. Ex.:—

মিই দিম'ম' (or দিমান) আমোনার That man (referring to somebody at a distance) is the messenger who came yesterday.

When, moreover the article distinguishes first one and then another of two objects, both of which are present, and which are being contrasted, or to which an alternative reference is being made, then, in the case of the one, 35 would be used, and, in the case of the other, 5 Ex.:—

अंदिर्द्भाष्ट्र स्पर्ट अंदिद्भाष्ट्र This man cannot go, but that man can go (will go).

Practically, therefore, in addition to representing the article THE, and 5 respectively also represent the distinguishing adjectives This and That. They also respectively represent This one and That one; HE, SHE, IT.

PLURAL.

The Colloquial plural of Q_{5}^{2} is Q_{5}^{2} (pronounced Din-Ts'o), The, These, They: and that of S_{5}^{2} is S_{5}^{2} (pronounced Den-Ts'o)

Both articles, however, are often used in the singular to distinguish collective nouns. In such cases they precede the word the distinguish. Ex.:—

८६-चायुझ।	These three
रेखा	Those five.
वर्रे श्रम्य स्टर् ।	All these.
3.8c.kl.	All those.

The following is Literary:—
লাম্নেন্শ্রমধ্যমান্ত্রন্ত্রন্দ্র All these sayings pleased greatly.
বিশান্ত্রন্

Where a plural noun is qualified by an adjective, and the whole is distinguished by the article, it is the article which takes the plural sign $\widetilde{\mathfrak{A}}$. Ts'o, and it is the $\widetilde{\mathfrak{A}}$ which takes whatever case-sign there may be.

Ex.:-

2. Another method by which the Definite Article is represented is by using the particle $\hat{\beta}$ NI; but this is rather Literary than Colloquial In a long and involved sentence it may be placed after the principal noun, or noun-phrase, so as to distinguish it prominently. It may also be used to emphasize a particular word or expression, and may even be employed in addition to $\hat{\beta}$ or $\hat{\beta}$.

98

र अम् पड मार्डशाही

The twelve ra-gos (or ra-heads).

शेर्वेश्वेश्वराज्यण्यम् प्रशास्त्र

Mankind are the noblest of all

(John i. 1.)

चलियाशास्ट्रा

3. The functions of the Definite Article are sometimes performed by the particles T PA and T ro, when affixed to numerals. § 26, Notes 6, 8, 14.)

4. The particles I' PO, I' PA, I K'A, etc., as performing the function of the Definite Article in connection also with nouns and djectives, are used when the idea of individuality, or definiteness, is Thus, ज्यारिक्या The great king. But they particularly desired. are also sometimes discarded. Thus, ਜ੍ਰਾਕ ਨੌਰ ਧਵੇ The four great kings. They are also discarded in enumerations like the following :-

3.42.1

Great and small.

म्ना का वर्ष

Birth, Old age, Sickness, Death.

The conjunction 55 DANG, And, is also discarded in such expressions.

The particles under notice and conjunctions are, also discarded in enumerations of nouns that are in apposition or contrast.

Hope and Fear.

र्नार्थमा। Vertue and Vice.

महिलाला Heaven and Earth.

in a sentence like TATA (otherwise TAATA) The pillar of hope, the particle is omitted from the first noun, 3.7 Re-wa, and annexed only to the second.

Sometimes however a phrase is contracted and the particle omitted Ex.: Z'm The pillar of hope. in both its members.

5. The student may also be reminded of the various affixes set out at the end of § 24, since they too occasionally perform the functions of the Definite Article

§ 28.—THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. उँपा A, An, Some, is a modification of माउँमा One, and is seen in the following forms, which may be used even in the Colloquial, if it is desired to be very correct, though as a matter of fact the form देना CHI' is the one most favoured :-

> उँण after final ण, 5, or प। विमा after all vowels, or after final L', द', ठा', र', or वा विन after final श।

2. Being an adjective when it qualifies a noun, and an adverb when it qualifies an adjective, its place in the sentence is immediately after the noun, or noun and adjective, that it qualifies. Ex :-

इंबिमां (or उम्।

A horse.

श्र.चंत्रट.त्र. हमा

A virtuous man.

इंडिम्'द्रः विदंद्विक्रः विदेशि हिम्। A horse and a carriage.

3. 34 and not the noun or adjective to which it is annnexed, takes the case-sign, but only in what we would call the Nominative. In the other cases 39 is usually dropped. Ex. :-

इं' हिन् अर्डर दें हिना मिरा पर के दे मात्र दां A strange horse has eaten our hay. 口ヨ科"に"え51

ट.मार्यट वे दे दन्स य मध्र मुर्चे भेरी

I live near a large river.

4. Annexed to approximate numerals, it signifies collectiveness.

Thus:—

भ्रमासुमः निल्मा।

100

A group of three or four men.

द्रमम्बर-बूट-स्नामहिमामहिश-विना।

A force of one or two thousand soldiers.

5. Used with the adverb র্বস TSAM, About, it signifies Some. Thus:—
প্রস্থানুব্র ব্যাহার রম ব্যাহার সমার্থ Some seventy or ninety sheep.

Another expression for Some is A.A. K'A-SHA, and another is 557.3 Too-tse.

The Literary form of AAN is AAA GAT GA-ZHYI'.

A few, Solely, Only, Alone, may be rendered in Colloquial by ট্রাই Tod-tse, বৃহ্ব Sha-řa', and বৃইব্র Chid-po; and in Literature by ব্যুক্ত Bā-źнүг'.

6. Affixed to Interrogative Pronouns, the Article signifies (in Literary Tibetan) Whoever, Whatever, Whichever, Anyone, Anything. Thus:—

देवे वट सम्माट हिमा (or के हिमा) क्षे रेवे वट सम्माट हिमा (or के हिमा) क्षे

Whoever with loving eyes should even regard, etc. (S.C.D.), i.e. anyone who, etc.

There is nothing (anything, with negative) in it.

The Article is also used thus in Literature :-

नाट हिमाम शक् मुंब नीश।

On account of some law-suit.

डें बिमार् रमें शा

What (is it) wanted for ?

हे लियान।

Once, on some occasion, some time.

र्हिमान्य।

After a little, some time afterwards.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

7. Affixed in any of its appropriate forms to a verbal root, it imports in Literature the Imperative Mood as addressed to servants and inferiors, and also the Hortative and Optative Moods. Thus:—

নুঁহা-নুনা Do; Let do.

নুঁহা-নুনা Let. do; may. do;

নুহা-নুনা May be done.

In the Colloquial also it is frequently used to express an emphatic order, and commonly takes the form $\Im \Pi$ Shi', though it would be more correct to say $\Im \Pi$ Shi', $\Im \Pi$ Zhyi', or $\Im \Pi$ Chi', accordin to rule. Ex.:—

अर्गुनिश चेर क्रुंगश भैगा Run quickly. श्रेन्गिश भैगा Shut the door. Be quiet.

8. Here may also be mentioned 키다면 ANY. Ex.:— 중국도취득·윤·미리자리'키디앤디앤드'드리 | Is there any fresh news to-day?

§ 29.—The Noun. A.—Structure.

- 1. The Tibetan Noun ends in either a consonant or a vowel, and is either:—
 - (a) A Monosyllable without any affixed particle, and either without or with any vowel-sign, head-letter, subjunct or prefix. Ex.:—
 - 3. Fish; 只 End; A Mountain pass; 只 Flesh; N Earth, soil, ground, place; 知 Man; 和 Fire; 長 Water; 与 Bird, fowl; 和刊 Head; 别 Door 只 Deer; 弘 Wound

ম Year; বুঁ Food, provisions; বুড় Head (Honorific); মু

Sometimes, however, the particle does not indicate gender. Ex.:— S.N. A mountain-shrub; 3.N. Day, sun; 5.N. Evening; S.N. Monk, priest; 5.N. Music; A. Lind of tree; B.N. Ba-wa, Goitre; N.S. Pledge; H.N. Envelope, wrapper.

Sometimes the particle serves merely to differentiate the meanings of roots otherwise similarly or somewhat similarly spelt. Ex.:—

भूत दा To show, to teach: but भूत मि Autumn; नाट Marrow, pith, descent, origin: but नाटिया Foot: पाइट Confidence; but माइटिशाना The expanded hood of a snake.

If the particle is either ∇ , ∇ , ∇ , or $\widetilde{\Sigma}$, it may be and often is dropped (especially when followed by an adjective), without affecting the meaning of the word. Ex:

नाट यें केंद्र यें। माट केंद्र नुवायें केंद्र यें निवा नुवाकेंद्र येंद्रे The four great kings.

Some of such particles perform the functions of DIMINUTIVES. Thur, in the case of 3, the inherent 3, or 3, of the final or the

only consonant of the noun, is turned into w, and is followed by the particle. Ex.:—

In other cases the final consonant, if a \P , is cut off the noun, and turned into a second syllable to which $\acute{Z}hyab\text{-}kyu$ is added. Ex.:

युना Hand : युना Little hand : युना Child ; युना Little child :

In other cases the Diminutive particle is simply added to the primitive noun as it stands. Ex.:— N. Man: R. Mannikin; 25. Sack: 25.3. Sacklet.

Another way or expressing the Diminutive is to qualify the noun by the adjective & Small. Ex.:-

Or lastly-

(c) A DISSYLLABLE, OR EVEN A POLYSYLLABLE, either without or with a particle. Those nouns, and especially the polysyllabic nouns, which are mostly proper names, and sometimes even amount to phrases, are often comparatively modern words which have either gradually developed or been deliberately compounded out of originally simple elements. Ex.:—

নুবালুনা Chair: জ্মি Cat: ইংশ্লু Layman: কর্মনা Contract;
নস্তুর্বের্মা Diligence, industry, zeal: ন্মিট্রের City: জুর্রির্মা or ব্রু ইন্মানুর Advocate or pleader: জুর্রি Petitioner: শ্লুর্জু NYE-źHYU,
Petition: গ্লুগ্র্মানা Gamester, juggler with words: হামান Tobacco:
দ্রীমান্দ্রীনা or দ্রীবের্রামা Cut'en-dem-ma. (Colloquial), or দ্রীমান্দ্রীমানা
(Literary), Butterfly. N.B.—Words with the definite particles \mathfrak{I}^* , \mathfrak{I}^* , etc. are generally used without the article \mathfrak{I}^* , or \mathfrak{I}^* , unless the latter is intended to express This or That.

2. Besides the particles above referred to, mention may be made of SIGS KIN, which, annexed to substantives or verbal roots, is extensively used in the Colloquial to signify a person who, in some capacity or character, is connected with some particular act, state, or thing. Ex.:—

अपन्तः Murderer: प्रमृद्धिन आपनः । Informant.

In book-language the following may be found :-

ন্ত্রান্ত Dancer: অসমেন্ত Guide: দ্রীত্রান্ত Flutist: মান্ত Violinist, harpist: প্রমান্ত Joiner, curpenter: লাণ্ড মান্ত Bow-maker; মান্ত Artisan, morker: হামান্ত Peasant, agriculturist, ratal

Such compounds in AAS (at least in the Literary language) may take the indicative particles A, A, or A, or A, as expressive not only of the definite or indefinite article but also of gender. Ex.:—

3. Instead of APS use is sometimes made of the verb 35 To do.

Ex. :--

Sometimes, even in the Colloquial, both 55° and 5155° are used together, either with or without the Indicative Particles 51°, 51°, 51°, though in the Colloquial these are commonly discarded. Ex.:—

Literary.

N.B.—When Q_{ij}^{-1} , or Q_{ij}^{-1} or the indefinite article Q_{ij}^{-1} is used with any of the above, the indicative particle is discarded, e.g.:—

COLLOQUIAL.

र्शे दब्बरा नेतृ व्यापन Agriculturist, Farmer.

106

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

प्रशासिना हो द स्थान स्

4. §5, however, is not the only auxiliary that takes the affix आविक् in this way. There are others; for instance, ज्ञाप Ex.:—

र्रेड्-यं कुपः अपिङ् Arguer, Reasoner.

दरः भूर्-कुपः अपिङ् Roarer.

रेणा वे कुपः अपिङ् Briber.

रेश-कुपः अपिङ् Calculator.

In fact, the functions of N[AJ], JJ, and JJ in this respect, are very similar to those of the Urdu word V, $w\bar{a}l\bar{a}$, or the Persian words $b\bar{a}n$, JJ gar, J

5. Another common affix of a similar nature annexed to nounsubstantives is THT, or THE Maker, Manufacturer, etc. Ex.:—

6. Abstract Nouns.

In the Colloquial these are seldom used, resort being generally had to an adjective phrase. Thus, instead of saying ज्यापारिकार करिया करें

হেন্ট্র-মাইন্ The goodness of the Dalai Lama is great, a Tibetan would probably say मुलान देन राजिन उत्तान प्राप्त कर The Dalai Lama is very good. When, however, an abstract noun is used, it can be formed in two ways. First, by placing in juxtaposition the roots of two adjectives with opposite meanings, e.g. 515.35 Quantity, from 515.57 Much, and 35.7 Little : 3.25 Distance, from 37 Near, and 35.7 Far; प्रभाष्ट्र Goodness, from प्रभाष्ट्र Good, and प्रभाष Bud: and so on. Secondly, by affixing AN' Lo, to the root of any adjective, e.g. সামামামা Brightness, Clearness, from সামামামা Bright, Clear; ত্র মার Badness, from ত্র ম Bad; অই মার Goodness, from অই মা Good.

In Literary Tibetan abstract nouns are formed by adding 35 NYI', to the adjective in its full form, that is, not the mere root, but the root plus one of the indicative particles.

Easy, but \$ 535 Easiness, facility. इताव Difficult, but इताव न के Difficulty. মৃত্য Free, but মৃত্যু Freedom. CA True, but CNIT'35 Truth. मार्बेद Young, but मार्बेद रा हेर Youth. ह्मा: Black, but हमादा है: Blackness. র্বি Mad, but ব্লিক মেন্ট্রিক Medness, Lunacy. No Tedious, but No. 135 Tedium.

B .- Inflexion.

The Tibetan Noun-Substantive is inflected in relation to: 1.—GENDER.

The names of all males, females and inanimate objects are naturally

masculine, feminine, and common respectively, e.g., 회 Man (m.);

Nouns ending in \square or \square or \square or \square or with \square or \square prefixed or affixed, are generally (in the last two cases always) masculine. Ex.:—

Pupil or novice in a monastery.

ন্ত্ৰী King, Regent, Temporal Ruler, Rajah.

इंचें or चेंद Horse.

धनार्थे or ये यना Hog.

र्शेन्त्रदः Bull.

108

र्धेन्यभन् Bull-yak.

र्यें 5 Stallion.

य यम Boar.

WY Father.

以近下 This old chap; I myself.

महिन्दे Official chief.

ਲੱਕੋ Grantson.

But sometimes nouns in I or I or I are common.

Ex.:-

স্কর্মান Beloved, Sweetheart,
Lover.

पर्याप.

ध्रान्तः Rasket

क्ष्य Patch.

त्नागय Traveller.

माशदान Secret.

माञ्जाना Servant.

A.A. Liquid.

П'A' Leather.

ST Bitter buck-wheat.

Nouns with A affixed, or with A affixed or prefixed are generally feminine. Ex.:—

Tow Mare.

। Mother.

A15% Maidservant.

ध्ना से Tigress.

J'A Daughter, girl

円あ (Bitch

が Niece.

But 저 and 쥐 do not always denote the feminine gender. Ex.:-

A. K. Leuf.

\$5.81. Louis.

प्राप्त Beam of wood.

পূর্ম Bean.

Tra! Brecches, pants.

Az. & Spoon.

REना अ' Shovel, spade.

र्ग्यान्त्र. Ant.

र्याटणुष्ठा Hawk, kite.

हैं 5 अं Sport, game, play.

म्। में Chumbi.

निम्धाः Friend.

写明に記 Evening.

र्ताः Music, cymbals.

पूर्-रा Fun.

हु-नु-मिट हा Grouse.

मार्ज्ञेगार्भेः Hedgehog.

gara Knee.

Masculine nouns may be turned into feminine nouns by substituting a feminine affix for a masculine one. Ex.:—

Z'N'I' A man of Lhasa.

मुन्तर्थः An Indian.

ATIDetan.

मृंदिपाय or मुंधि .1 Chinaman.

प्रभाग A Nepāli.

N'N' A woman of Lhasa.

मुन्तर से A woman of India.

AT'N A woman of Tibet.

मुंबिण में or मुंभें A woman of China.

AN Pali woman.

2.-NUMBER

(a) There are several signs in Tibetan denoting the plural number. e.g.—

T'so. This is the sign commonly used now in the Colloquial with any kind of noun or adjective.

(b) \$5.50 NAM. This is Literary, and is spldom if ever heard in the Colloquial. It is largely used, for instance, in the Tibetan translation of the New Testament. \$5.57 is used when

things or persons are referred to separately from others, e.g.

- (c) 57 DA'. This is an elegant substitute for 3581
- (d) 37 CHA'. Another book term. Used also in Sikhim and Būtān with personal pronouns, e.g. 537 We, etc.
- '(e) No plural sign at all need be used when, from the context, it is clear that the plural number is implied. In such cases the noun remains in the singular number. Ex.:—

क्रम्भायन्त्रमार्थिष्ठ्यारेष्ठ्। There are (I understand) many lamas in Lhasa. Or, Lhasa (I believe) has many lamas.

- (f) When, however, the plural sign is expressly used, it, and not the noun, nor the adjective, if any, takes the case-sign. Ex.:—
 মাম্মান্ত্রী ক্রিম্নিম্মান্ত্রী নুমান্ত্রী ক্রিম্নান্ত্রী ক্রেম্নান্ত্রী ক্রিম্নান্ত্রী ক্রেম্নান্ত্রী ক্রিম্নান্ত্রী ক্রিম্নান্ত্রী ক্রিম্নান্ত্রী ক্রেম্নান্ত্রী ক্রেম্নান্ত্
- (g) When expressly used, the plural sign comes after the noun if there is no adjective and no article, definite or indefinite. Ex.:—

नुस्कुन्भेर्क्स्भम्भिर महिट अपन्दरेन। Men were deceivers ever.

(A) When there is only an adjective after the noun, the plural sign is annexed to the adjective not to the noun. Ex.:—

भाराबदार्थे कें। Good men.

(i) If, however the adjective be used as an attribute predicated of the noun, then the plural sign is annexed to the noun, not to the adjective. Ex.:—

श्रेर्द्रियबद्धिरेत्। The men are good.

(k) If the noun be distinguished by an article, or distinguished by an article and also qualified by an adjective, the plural sign is annexed to the article.

Ex.: --

से दि हैं।

The or these men.

से दे हैं।

The or those men.

से वज्र हों दें।

The or those good men.

से वज्र हों दें।

The or those good men.

से दे हैं।

The or those good men.

से दे हैं।

Those men are good.

3. -CASE.

By way of supplementing what has already been said on this subject in § 25, examples are now given of the Declension of Nouns ending in (1) a vowel, (2) final consonants \P or Ξ ; Ξ , Π or Π ; and Π , Π , Π or Π .

The particular postpositions given are, of course, only examples out of many that might be used.

1 .- Noun ending in a Vowel.

(i) Singular.

ATO Month, or Moon.

Nom. Voc. Acc. Acc. Gqu. ¬됩'고착' or 다'씨와' Of month. Agent. ¬됩'고착' or 다'씨와' By month.

Dat. 결국의 To month, or moon.

Loc. 결직적 On moon.

Per. 결직적 In or during month.

Mod. 결직적 취직 및 On account of moon or month.

Abl. 결직적 교육 Than month or moon.

Term. 결직적 교육 Until month: 65 far as moon.

PLURAI.

ਕੁਸਲੇ Months, Moons.

Nom. Months, Moons. ह्म पर्केंद्रे or कें भें Of months, Of moons. Gen. র্মর্ম or রিন্ম্র By months, By moons. Agent. क्र्यार्ड थ To months, To moons. Dat. त्र्यार्स द On moons. Loc. ब्रियर्के थ In or during months. Per. Mod. ह्रायार्के दे मेन्द्राचीश On account of moons or months. श्चित्र के अध Than months or moons. Abl. व्यक्तियर द Until months: as far as moons. Term.

(ii) Similar with Definite Article.

SINGULAR.

3. N' Sun or Day.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	क्रैसंदर्ने -	The sun or the day
Gen.	कें स. ५६५	Of the sun or day.
Agent.	ु के सप्	By the sun or day.
Dat.	कें सद्दिय	To the sun or day.
Loc.	कें सादर्व	On the sun.
Per.	कें सप्तर्रे व	During the day.
Mod.	कुं सः पर्ने प्रः	With the sun or day.
Abl.	के.ध.पर्.जम.	Than the sun or day
Term.	के.स.उर्देश स्त्रेचाराता.	Towards the sun.

N.B.-In Colloquial the Definite Article is as a matter of face seldom used.

PLURAL.

3 NAS The suns or days.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	केंसप्तर्रे कें	The suns or days.
Gen.	केंसदर्दे	Of the suns or days.
Agent.	केसावरीकेंग	By the suns or days.
Dat.	के सत्दे के त	To the suns or days.
Loc.	केंस'वर्ड हैं ब	On the suns or days.
Per.	कें साद्दी हैं वा	In or during the days.
Mod.	केंसदरे हैं-इट	With the suns or days.
Abl.	के.स.यर्ट.क्.जंश	Than the suns or days.
Term.	के.म.पर्-क्र्यं	From the suns or days.

(iii)-Similar with Indefinite Article.

र्वोद्राय विषा A monastery.

Nom. Voc.	५ में इ.स.बिमा	
Acc.	ויףירווין	A monastery.
Gen.	र्मोद्गःसं लिमा मी.	Of a monastery.
Agen	र्नेव्यःतः ब्रेमा नीशः	By a monastery.
Dat.	न्नोंन सः विमा तः	To a monastery.
Loc.	रम्बिंदाः विमा थाः	In a monastery.
Per.	(Not used).	(Not used).
Mod.	र्जेरमित्यः	With a monastery.
Abl.	दंजींत. दा. हेमा थारा.	Than a monastery.
Term.	र्नोब राहेना रहा	From a monastery.

N.B.— In conversation उँमा, लेमा, and ीमा, in this sense is usually dropped in all cases except the Nominative, or Agentive.

(iv) - Similar with a higher Numeral.

Voo. Acc.	सं.अ.चर्ब.	Seven angels.
Gen.	इर् ३.वर् ४.कु.	Of seven angels.
Agent.	क्षेत्र, मर्ब मिल	By neven angels.
Dat.	स्य १ य दुर्थः	To seven angels.
	rte., of	ic.

(v)-The same with a Definite Particle.

Voc. Acc.	संकृत्वर्षः	The seven angels.
Gen.	र्थे ३ वर्ष र्ये दे	Of the seven angels.
Agent.	सं अन्तर्यस	By the seven angels.
Dat.	क्षेत्रचर्द्दाया	To the seven angels.
	etc., etc.	

(vi) The same in the Singular with Cardinai.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	स्थु-वर्षु-धः	The seventh angel.
Gen.	अं अ.चर्ष.चर्.	Of the seventh angel.
Agent.	र्थे ३ पर्व प्राप्त	By the seventh angel.
Dat.	सं ३ पर्वधाय	To the seventh angel
		etc.

(vii) Similar with Definite Article.

Nom. Voc. Acc.	य ३ प्राचित्रः	The first angel.
Gen.	इ. ४. ४ द्राचित्र	Of the first angul

Agent. A 3-55-17-25. By the first angel.

Dat. To the first angel.

etc., etc.

(viii) When, as is sometimes the case, the adjective precedes the noun, the former must be put in the genitive case, and the case-sign must be attached to the noun, or to the definite or indefinite article, if any, or to the plural sign, if any. Ex.:—

स्मार्थ दे ने दे हिंद हा देश Good behaviour.

समार्थ दे ने दे हा हा हा देश By this good behaviour.

समार्थ दे ते त्यामा देना मिश्र By a good deed.

समार्थ दे त्यामा हे वा To good deeds.

समार्थ दे त्यामा है वा To those good deeds.

II.--NOUN ENDING IN AT, or CI

	Auf Sheep	
Nom. Voc. Acc.	लेची.	Sheep.
Gen.	जेमी.मी.	Of the sheep.
Agent.	जैची.चूर्श.	By the sheep.
Dat.	अनाता.	To the sheep.
The same state	etc., et	0.
	ζς Tre	e.
Nom. Voc. Acc.	ąς.	Tree.
Gen.	नुष्टामी.	Of the tree.
Agent.	'प्रत्मेश.	By the tree.
Dat.	'वृद्यः भ	To the tree.
	etc., et	c.

III.—Noun Ending in 5, 7 or 81

विष् Tibet : क्रिंग Delegate ; क्रिंग Costume.

Declined like any other noun, save that the genitive sign is if and the agentive sign is MAI

IV.-Noun Ending in 5, 8, 5 or 31

कें ब्राम्ब Buyer : सूझ Boot ; मूर हिर City : इंडॉबर Coal.

Declined like any other noun, save that the genitive sign is It must be remembered, however. that in Colloquial it is allowable to pronounce all these signs and मास।

§ 30.—THE ADJECTIVE.

I .- Form and Place

(i) There is little or no structural difference between the noun and the adjective. In fact, the latter may, for the most part, be regarded merely as a noun performing qualifying functions with respect to some other noun or verbal substantive.

As a rule the adjective follows the noun, and then it is the adjective and not the noun which takes the case-sign. If the adjective is distinguished by a following article, definite or indefinite, or a demonstrative pronoun, it is the article or the pronoun and not the adjective which takes the case-sign. So, the adjective, and not the noun, takes the sign of the plural, if there is no article or demonstrative pronoun If there is, the article or pronoun takes the sign.

If, as is sometimes the case, the adjective precedes the noun, the adjective is put in the genitive case, and the case-sign is annexed to the noun, or to the article, if any, or to the plural sign, if any,

EXAMPLES :-

दे है ज्या देश हैं ज्यार दें (ब्या) That black cat saw a white mouse. शर्वेट २५न।

भे भे द्वाराक्षा है है के द्वार देता

The black cat has caught the mouse.

द्रा देर।

पश्चिमानगर स्था है त्र साने हैं के कि स्था से देश

माइन माइन सहिं के स्था स्था से स्था से स्था माइन माइन सहिं के स्था से स

White leopards are uncommon.

These white leo pards are ralnable.

These beautiful white beasts of prey kill other wild animals.

Those crimson clouds are very beautiful.

(ii) A very common practice in Colloquial is to turn what we would call a relative clause into an adjectival phrase. Ex.:—

यसर्भामक्रिक्ति। बुट्गा, यसर्भामक्रिक्ते, श्रीट्रा, व्या

The man who killed the wolf. Literally, the wolf-killing man.

भ्राम्बर्स्स्याम्बर्मीःश्रृद्धःगुःदेः वर श्राम्बर्

The wolf that killed the man.

(iii) The idiomatic use of this affix TRA is undoubtedly most difficult to understand, for Colloquially it may express the passive as well as the active voice. For instance, TRATARATA isignifies, not only The man who kills or killed, but also the man who was or has been killed. Probably the difficulty arose with the alleged Colloquial custom of using the perfect root of most verbs even in the present tense. If only that custom were not in vogue, it would be possible to use present roots in present tenses, and perfect roots in past tenses, and confine the use of TRAT to the active voice, and use the past participle of the verb for the passive voice alone. Ex.

मार्शेर् आमर् ने से दें, or के मार्शेर्

The man who kills.

माम्परी

यस्त्र साम्ब्र मा साम्ब्र में । साम्ब्र में ।

The man who killed.

The man who was killed ..

This can be done, of course, even as things are; nevertheless it remains a fact that, in Colloquial, प्रश्निक्षिति हैं, and अप्राप्त स्थित स्थित स्थित हैं। may also signify The man who is, or was, or has been, killed. Under these circumstances the context alone can decide what the intended meaning really is.

See § 31, 1X, A, on the use of the different roots of the auxiliary verb \$5.0° To do, for the purpose of distinguishing the Active from the Passive Voice.

(iv) The Relative Idea is also frequently expressed by turning a participial clause into an adjectival phrase. Ex.:—

केर क्षेत्र विश्व मुक्षमार पुर पुर अस्पेर A growing child (a child that is growing) will eat anything it gets.

प्रभाष (or Literary निष्ठाः) निर्दे The man whom you sent yesterday is dead. Literally, The yesterday-by-you-sent man is dead.

The participle, being here an adjective, may also follow the noun. Thus:

निकार हिंद की अपने निकार के ति कार कि man, etc.

Now , let another adjective be inserted, thus :-

मि: अद्दिन गुँअ: य5्द प्रदेश्व च च द्वा The go

The good man whom you sent yesterday is dead.

Or thus :--

קימינוֹקָּקְייָם איאיקקבים קבייבּי קימינוֹקָּקִיים איאיקקבים קבייבּי

The good man, etc.

The negative is inserted thus ;-

מיארימֹק־יװֶּאיִאי־מְּבְרִיבְּלְּיִאָּיִרְיִבְּבְּיִיּוּ בּיִבְּיִלְיִבְּיִנְּבְיִיוּ

The good man whom you did not send yesterday is deod.

(v) Use of the Particles I, I, N, N, T, T,

If we desired to be very correct as regards the particles annexed to adjectival roots, we would use $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$, or $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$, with a masculine noun, and $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$, with a feminine noun; $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$, being more properly employed with the Indefinite Article, and $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$, with the Definite Article, when masculine nouns are concerned; while $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$, may be used with either the Indefinite or the Definite Article when the noun is feminine. In common parlance $\overline{\mathcal{A}}$ is often pronounced pn.

Ex.:

निक्षण के A black dog निकाल के A or the black butch. इंचें The white horse केंद्र संद्रणर में A or the white mare.

But, as a matter of fact, these distinctions are not observed Colloquially, and a Tibetan would express himself thus:

इ.स्मा.स.धुमा	A black dog.
इ.स.च्यार.च्या	
क्षं र्ग्रार संदे।	The white horse.
हिः ये दमा य दिन।	A black bitch.
र्केर्'स'र्गर'या	
र्केन्स-न्गर-चन्	The white mare.

However, there are many adjectives which, even in Colloquial, are seen in A' and A' without reference to gender. Ex.:

श्चिर्य.	Mad, insanc	রূরণ:	Wct.
र्योधाः	Necessary, needful.	स-द्वा-धः	Wrong, incorrect.
वश्चर.त	New.	ፋር 'ኣ'	AII.
ぎこれ.	Old.	र्गुक्षारा	Ordinary, ralgar.
चार्बेद.दा.	Young.	ÉN.Ł.	Shum

120

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

শান্ধান Previous, former.

শার্কান Clean.

There are also one or two seen in $\widetilde{\mathbb{A}}$ without reference to gender.

सदर सें Sweet. न्राट सें Cold. chilly. र्नाद सें Joyoux.

In the Literary language the adjective, in its root form alone, is often seen immediately preceding the noun. Ex.:—

র্নাট্রি Black dog. ব্নাট্রিমা Black bitch.

So, when the adjective has a particle and precedes the noun, Literary Tibetan follows the same rule as obtains in the Colloquial, of putting the adjective in the genitive case. Ex.:

মৃশাহার দ্রী A black dog. বৃশাহার দ্রী The black dog. বৃশাহার দ্রী ফ্রান্ট

But even in the Colloquial it is allowable, for brevity's sake, to form adjectival expressions by placing before a noun an adjective minus its particle. Ex.:

द्वै शेष्ठस्य या म् अर्दे यहा सूह्य हायानाः मा रेर्।

To my mind the dry land is better than the ocean.

Instead of:

(or सुम्राधि देश) अनाना रेट्।

To my mind. etc.

So also :

र्ष्ट्रराया चेर् प्राया रे सूक्षा स्थार नेना चेर्।

Formedy Tibel was a secret (or hidden) country.

Instead of :

श्रेष.ण.चूर्.लीज.बु.जीट.च.स्रेश.च. (or स्रमाये तिराया) विवारिता

Formerly Tibet, etc.

(vi) Adjectives are also sometimes formed from nouns and postpositions, the latter being put in the genitive case, and the whole expression made to precede the noun that it qualifies. Ex.:--

बर से बीट में रसना से देना ने र स्था र्हेरणे जिर्धारेता

Some time ago a European soldier was living in Tibet.

२.२८.क्रुंब.मी.मेज.ियंश्व.कुब.त्.सट. द्य दे निर्मेषायश्चामान्यश्चर महिला ५५मा।

Some of the many great ancient empires are still remembered.

ले.श.पर्श रे.ची. (or र्हे पे.) के.हेंर. यस्याःयाः रेट्।

The cat has broken the stone jug.

द्रामद्रस्ति or आमीते सेद्रिवा नी live (or have a dwelling place) न्द्रिमारीमामी बद्या होत् भी व्या

in an upper room of that house.

The adjectives to which attention is drawn in the foregoing illustrations are, in the first युः ब्राट्स European: in the second, ध्रामी Ancient : in the third Fig. or Fa. Stone : and, in the fourth, ह्यूट रेड्डिया यी 11 pper.

(vii) Some adjectives consist merely of a primitive repeated. Ex. : -

TE'TE Straight.

mx.mx. Circular, round. TX'MX' Flat.

122

गुनागुँन')
Bent, curved.
गुनागुँन')
Bent, curved.
होट'होट' }
Flat.
गुनागुँस' Pliant, flexible.
नुभानुभः Quaking, trembling.

(viii) Others consist of two primitives, similar as regards their consonantal form, but with different rowels. Ex.:

श्रमःशुमः Soft, low.

प्रमाप्तिमः Promiscuous, disorderly.

पार्टाम्बिः Steep, rugged.

पुरःगुरः Weak, feeble.

पुनाःगुनः Curved, crooked.

(ix) Or of a repeated dissyllable with a difference in the vowels.

Ex.:-

(x) Or of two different dissyllables in juxtaposition. Ex.:—

(xi) Or of two different monosyllables in juxtaposition. Ex.:-

SHE Far, distant, remote.

Stin au Measurelese, immeasurable.

TITIUM. Immense.

(xii) As to the formation of Abstract Nouns from adjectives, see § 29, A. 6.

(xiii) English adjectives ending in able and ible are usually rendered in Colloquial Tibetan by 35, NYAN, or 557 CHO, or Ch'od ch'o', added to the root of the verb. Ex.:-

लसम्मान्द्रिः श्रदः द्वानाम्बासः er श्रदः द्वेताः Is this roud passable? मार्द्रराश्।

लचेश.जभारी.हे.सर.क्ष.सूचे. or रंद. क्रमारी वर्मा।

ब्रेमं.के.पर्ट. स्तर.क्र्मं माश्रा वम्यस्तिम् छ दे म्या हेम् सर्द ।

E'यर्'न्'उट'य्ब्ट'३ब'यर्ना राना सना दे अ अ र र प्राना

रायमायरे रें तर्हिट रें मारी यर्गा र्गोब मर्जेन दे अहंट स्वारा शे तर्मा ५ ग्रेंन राकेंगा वे गाव सामिव ध्येव।

जित्वी हेना हेना छेना छे ।

(xiv) The Literary equivalent of FT or 37, is 55.7 Rung-WA. or 55 Rung. Ex.:-

रूर्-श्रेंतर् तहेम्सर्य् उटाटें or उटा वारेद।

हार्ने प्रमुद्दार्न हो कुरानी अपेरेन। This tea is not drinkable, or fit to

अश्विर् अर शेरुटाँटा or रुटाना अरेर्। This food is not eatable, or fit to

No, the road is not passable.

Is this stream fordable?

No, the stream is not fordable.

He is really to go.

This tea is very drinkable,

That pastry is not eatable.

These goods are not saleable.

God is invisible.

God is knowable.

This spectacle is terrible, or calculated to terrify.

drink.

Sometimes, however, the supinal particle & 5, or 5, attached to the verbal root, is omitted, and the particle A' after 51 is also dropped. Ex. :-

124

पुर्में त्रिम्याउदारी This sight is terrible.

हर्ने त्र्रापुराउदामी अरेर or त्रुदामें That tea is undrinkable.

55'4'351

व्याप्तर्भ अप्तर्भ का अभिन्तः This food is uncatable.

(xv) Where a noun is qualified by two or more adjectives joined by the conjunction and, or or, the construction is as follows:—

(xvi) NEGATIVE ADJECTIVES corresponding to such as begin in English with Un, In. II, Im. Ir, or Dis, or end in less, are not very much used, Tibetans preferring to use an affirmative adjective and to put the verb in the negative. Ex.:—

Instead of saying :-

मिं के केंबा केंबा केंद्र अवदारेंद्र। He is an irreligious man.

A Tibetan would prefer to say :-

मिर्भे देश श्रीस्र उद्भारेत्। He is not a religions man.

However, when such negative adjectives are employed, they are formed with the aid of the Colloquial negative expressions &, &, and R, and the Literary expressions & R, & MEG, AMEG, AMEG, and WALL

श्राद्धाःयः	128
देश होर्	यह्नेष्ठ प्रामुद्दाः -
रोइ:अ:द्वाद:रोद: Cheerless.	ह्याद्याः Incorrect, wrong.
निः मुंद्धं सेर्	ম'মিম্'ম্' Having no leisure.
मार्भे मुं अर्	अचिषाया Unheard of.
ম্ব্র	মান্ত্রিবা Immature raw.
Nerciless.	Edikis Immodest.
देश्वास्त्र Hopeless.	चित्र'इत्'रोर्' Illiterate.
মন্ত্র'অম' Infinite.	र्ह्मेश स्था } Without faith.
र्यम् Ummeasurable.	
55.85. Headless,	명자되자 Incorporeal
মন্ত্রি	৭ইন্রম Passionless.
ब्रेंस्क्री	भूमा द्वा Sinless.
ब्रेंट्से खूब \ Without riches.	मुस्रक्षां Lawless, Illicit

for inanimate objects, and $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{2}}$ for animate objects, meaning which is, or are, who is, or are, are used adjectivally. Ex:—

तुः अरे ने ने उद्देश स्त्र किमा रेद। That lama is a wily one.
अभा २५ में सुमा २ई स स्प्रिंग सिना रेद। This country is a fersile one.

(xviii) In Literary Tibetan adjectives are frequently formed by adding to a-noun or to its root, or to a whole parase, one of the expressions 35 Chan, 25 Dan, 25 Dan-Chan, 53 Chan, 55 Chan, 5

126

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Ex .:-

शुंख Intelligent, Sagacious. केंद्र तव Punctilious, moderate. यव.क्व. Beneficial, useful. चार्चाश.वर् Renouned, famous द्व.क्व. Costly, expensive. वर्रेर खन Passionate, amorous. चेचा अंब. Rocky. दमाद स्व Blissful, joyous. ॲव'नव'सद्द Talented, literate, accomplished. र्देव:ऑर्: Intelligent. र्देर द्व उद Wealthy opulent. न्वेर व्या Full of moisture. निम्रान्त्र उद् Full of energy. Sinful. श्रेची.चश्र्स. अम्बर्धेर्यस्त्रं . A perfectly accomplished scholar. मिंद्र अर्केर धे उद मिर्म स्वादा उद

ক্রা is also said to be sometimes used thus:—
নুকাম ই মুন্নিম্মান্তর instead of নুমান্ত্রমান্ত্রমান্ত্রমান্তর The Lama's wayer-wheel: but নুমামান্ত্রমান্ত্রমান্তর would seem to be the more correct. See, however, § 31, V, (b).

Instead of constructing an adjective out of the root, the particle, and the affix 35, resort is often had to the root alone plus the affix 5 J'A, or CHA. Ex.:—

From 5773. may be formed 577.5. Cheerful.

From 38.4.53. may be formed 38.5. Mortal

From 38.4.53. may be formed 38.5. Very learned.

II.—Augmenting of adjectives.

This can be done in several ways :-

-1

(a) By simply repeating the adjective, either in the shape of the primitive root, or of the root with the particle. Ex.:—

णुना गुना Very crooked.

अन्य राष्ट्र Very silly.

अन्य राष्ट्र Very sour.

अन्य राष्ट्र Very sweet.

यर्जना या मर्जना या Very dirty.

मार्ज राष्ट्र राष्ट्र Very clean.

अन्य श्रे पे Very late.

(b) By repeating the adjective, in any of its forms, with WC YANG, inserted between them. In the Colloquial WC becomes QC'ANG, after consonants other than T, 5, T, and N Ex.:—

지토씨'따드'씨트씨 | Very beautiful. 질씨'따드'질째 | Very thick. - 때국:5목'모드'째국'54 | Very learned.

WC also becomes QC after vowels, both in the Literary language and in Colloquial. Ex.:—

ब्रेन्द्रप्ति। Very heavy (Lit.). अदः विदायाः Very light (Coll.).

TIRETAN GRAMMAB.

In the Literary language WC becomes JC KYANG, after final consonants J, 5, 5, and W Ex.:—

देशगुटादेश। Very true. श्रीनगुटाश्रीय। Very obscure श्रमगुटाश्रीय। Very neat.

यवासेर्णार्थ्यासेर्। Very narrow.

(c) By use of the affix 5 Ch'E signifying emphasis generally.

ध्याचिके Extremely sinful.

म्भेर धें के Exceedingly brilliant.

Lau. Very precious.

The above, however, is more Literary than Colloquial. In the Colloquial & T, added to the root, is more common, but it is often used merely to form the adjective, and not so much to augment its force. Ex.:—

इ.केन्ट्रें Precious. विद्:केन्ट्रें Brilliant. क्रिन्किन्ट्रें Intellectual भूमकिन्ट्रें Sinful.

(d) By inserting 5.35. Very, immediately before the adjective, or by adding 57.55. Very, to the adjectival root:

विरक्षर द अट द्वाद व्यक्ष विषय दे दे । Tibetan is very difficult.

५ निम्म के स्ना केंद्र रेंद्र। The weather just now is very hot.

Certain other adverbs may be inserted in the same way when the sentence is a negative one. Ex.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

128

वर्ने कर्ने ने विकारी सारेता

प्रि. ब्रह्म दिनीया (or देनीया मी.)

री.पर्चा

सर्करेकान्यार्ट्यान्यासरि

This is quite (or absolutely improper.

129

He is not right at all.

That statement is not at all true.

III .- THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

(a) To express this Tibetans make use of the postpositions and La, in the Colloquial, and AN or TN PA (NN wa, after vowels, or final C. S. or W. in Literature, signifying Than, or More than, but they so manipulate the sentence as to place first the object with which the subject is being compared, then the postposition, next the subject, then the adjective in its positive degree, and lastly the verb. Ex :-

मिट दा दे त्य श त दे स में दो दे दे ।

This house is higher than that one. Literally, Than that house this high is

ব্রহাইনে (pronounced Den-jong)

Tibet is colder than Sikhim.

तथ. (or लश.) चूर.लेंग्याट.श्र.लुरा वहना हेर्न यायश केंद्रा शेमश स्थ-द्रन्य .

D. Z. 4.1

A religious man is happier than a worldling.

अर्देश सामन हैं पर बद देन सन हैं द्वाद Philosophers are happier than मी रेर्।

ritualists.

समिन रा.कू.जन.हैं.स.कुन.टाकू.रेचेंट. त. 35ना।

Ascetics (meditators) are happier than professore

(b) When there is no expressed object with which to compare the subject, an object may be supplied by means of AF This or 5' THAT. Ex.:-

17.

तर्भाष्ट्र में त्रिन्द्र मंत्रिन्। A higher house than this.
दे त्यार सर्नेन्य स्विन्। A fleeter horse than that.
दे त्यार मूं स्वाप्त देन्। A counsel exceeding this.

(c) In the Colloquial the comparative degree of certain common adjectives has a special form. For instance, the comparative of WATT Good, is WATA Better; of ALT Much, it is ALT More; of ATT Thick, it is ANT Thick, it is ANT Thicker; of ATT Large, big, great, it is AT Larger, bigger, greater. Even with them the same construction in ANT is employed. Ex.:—

मिट-यादे प्यस्पद्भे के प्राप्त | This house is larger than that one.

मिद्र गुँ दिये क प्यस्पद्भे दिये क प्यम् | My book is better than yours.

मादेद।

(d) The particle belonging to an adjective is sometimes vulgarly conjugated, i.e transmuted into T, T, or T, according to the rule with reference to the last letter of the root. It is better, however, to avoid this. Ex.:—

भुद्रमद्भद्रदेद अर्देश राइंदर may This woman is indeed pretty.
be rendered अर्देश गुरिद्

क्राप्ति स्थान स्थान कर may be This wine is not good.

PCUने अपदिने केन दो देन may be This house is larger than that one.

But not where \(\subseteq \subseteq \subseteq \), etc., has the sense of To have. Ex.:-

131

श्र.ट्रे.णश्र.४ट्रे.ज.मूंच्या श्र.त्र. श्राम्य.त.

This man has wiser friends than that one.

IV .-- THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

(a) To express this a universal comparison is resorted to, the subject being placed, at option, either before or after the expression used for the universal comparison. This latter may take numerous forms such as:—

क्ट.श.जश. য্রমথ. ৫২. জথ. चाट.चा.जश् 램다.너.너쉬. শুৰ থেমা (Literary) क्ट.भर् .बट.बश. वश्रश्र. ६८. ग्री. बट. बश्र. माट.मार्ड.बट.बरा. 뭐다. [지수 ' 역도 ' 역회 . ग्रनीव्दाव्य (Literary) इट.भर्.र्ग्रेज.वश রমধ্য:ডব্-ট্র-বৃট্রিম-বৃধ্য: माट मादे द्रीय दश स= निर्दे न्तियावश गुन्ने न्त्रीय वस (Literary)

Than all.

From among all.

From among all.

Ex.:-

त्रुः अर्दे प्रमास स्थान स्थान स्थान है । That lama is the most learned (of शमस स्ट्रिंग स्थान स्थान

132

म्नद्रामः अक्षान् १५६ अर्गुनिका गुः देत्।

This is the swiftest horse.

म्नद्भान्त स्ट्रि

This stone is the most valuable of all well secured things.

देव संक्रिक्त का बु मदी मिश्रशास्त्र पायदे । द्रिक्त क्रामिश्रेस देश्च के व्याप्त (०) के मी । देर । Gold is the most precious of all metals (meltable things).

N.B.—Note that & T in its conjugated form becomes &

इत्दर्भनुन्यः वृद्धः देत्।

This horse is the fleetest.

देव चित्रेदे वट वस (or प्रणीय वस)

Gold is the dearest of metals.

मार्थर-देव-वट-के-मेंब-देर।

If the speaker likes he may insert 5 THE, after THE; thus;

१.उर्.अग्रेचित्रास्त्रान्। इ.र.

This horse is the fleetest.

इतिर्क्षके विशा (दे) देना

This stone is the most valuable.

N.E. 국축진 중국, like many other words in MS., is often abbrejated into 국통증기

वर्त्यः वर्षामा वृषः (दे) देरी रेशा ज्वेंद्र भेट्र सद् र्योकावशाविरः

. Lhasa is the most transcendent of cities.

N.B.— সম্পাত্র is often abbreviated into গ্রহ, and ব্যবস্থা into ব্যব্

(c) Yet another expression used to indicate the superlative idea is কার্ক্স Ch'o', signifying The best, The most, etc. It is a Literary word, and only rarely comes into the Colloquial. It may be either prefixed or affixed to the word that it qualifies, and when prefixed should be put in the genitive case. Ex.:—

ब्रक्तानी यन्त्रा	The chief noble or lord.	
सर्द्धेम् मित्र।	The chief mother: the goddess Ďõlma.	
शक्रुचा.ची.सुना.स।	The principal woman in a family.	
सर्द्रेमा में सर्देम।	The best of the best.	

In Literary Tibetan the substantive is put in the genitive case when অত্তৰ is affixed. Ex.:—

पन्तार्थित स्था The best among the good or no	
त्रायदे सर्वेन। The holiest.	
ন্দ্ৰ মেইন। The Chief of Rarities; the r Being or Object; the Sup Being.	
त्यन्यप्रिं सर्जेन। The sublimest, most excellent.	
মির মের্কিনা The best or greatest of men.	
साम्राचित्र सर्हेन् हैं। The wisest or most learned.	

In the Colloquial ATT, if used at all, is sometimes prefixed and sometimes affixed, but neither it nor the substantive is put in the genitive case. Ex.

श्रुचा.श्रूट.। The Chief Protector. र्गोर सर्हेग। Anything excellent of its kind : also an abbreviation of 5775 यदे सर्हेगा सर्देगार्यात्। The nighest joy, rapture, bliss. **८रामाश सर्**मा । The noblest, sublimest. रें सरेंग। The most excellent taste delicious. श्राम्बार्थाः अर्जेनाः है। The wisest, most learned. म्बद्धार्थेमार्डव्या The very utmost attention. सुन्यस्त्रा or सुन्यस्ता The Chief of Beings. Buddha. री सर्देना किर। Thou best of men!

ম্বা is also used thus in Literary Tibetan :

지축미독고경제 Nobles and commonalty.

지축미독고경제 The great and the valgar.

지축미독고경기 Great and small.

기작동자주기 The very excellent or superior.

V .- OTHER METHODS OF COMPARISON.

The Tibetan rendering of English phrases constructed with As..as.

वैना, or नार वे वेना, ज नार वेना का नार वे

Please give me as much (or many) of that as possible.

चिरः।

OF .-

ट्रिन् ग्रीकारायाने त्रकामा देना मुद्दा मुद्दा साने र

Please give. etc.

म्बद्धः स्वाकाः मावदः । दाःतः ने बकामावदः श्रुवः याने दः चाः सदः

or:-

Please give. etc.

हिंद-सनी। प्रदासी प्रमा (or श्रुमा or यर पुरा भेदानी। प्रदास or Literary भेदानमा

Will you come as far as to yonder house?

त्रात्रम् नी त्रित्या । त्रात्रम् नी त्राप्तान्यान्य क्षेत्रा

This road goes about as far as to that house.

यन्त्री भीट ह्येट सर्वे दे स्पर्य पार्यस्य न्या

As high as that tree-trunk is (may be) this one also is.

or तर् रों) भेन नरे रामान्त्र,

As far as I know, that is so: Literary, If it, he according to the knowledge I possess, it is just like that.

चक्येयःश्रुटः। श्राप्तरं or श्राप्तरं रें। टशःश्राभरेतः म्राज्यरश्रास्त्रच्याः (or श्रायनार्ः, or

As soon as he rose I fired.

हते. द्ये क. (रे.) हिंद की द्या क. दह.

My book is as good as yours: Literally, My book is equally good-bad with yours.

\$ 31.—THE PRONOUN.

I -- PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(a) I.

Commonest forms in Colloquial.

136

Expressive of humility. Chiefly used in Tsang. Like Persian vois Bandeh.

Emphatic forms.

This old fellow or chap. Used by the speaker M.E.L. in reference to himself. but only in a comic WAV.

The following are Book-terms :-

वर्वा. स्र्राह्म यहमार्थः यहमार्थः यहमार्थः यहमार्थः 下京 (maso.) This one. This person, This individual.
Used by the speaker with reference to himself or herself. E'A's I myself, I alone.

The following are Colloquially used by the Kyrong-pas, or Nipal Frontier Tibet ns .-

> E5.45. Pronounced almost like W. I myself. AZE. We ourselves

(b) THOU.

Corpmen Colloquial forms

ম্নান্ত Humble form of foregoing.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

The genitive of \$\tilde{\mathbb{H}}\bar{\mathbb{H}}\bar{\text{ is either }}\tilde{\mathbb{H}}\bar{\text{T}}\tilde{\mathbb{H}}\tilde{\mathb and the Agentive is either \$5.000 or \$5.50 By thee.

S5.35. Colloquial honorifies. 35. Used in official correspondence. केन्द्र (pl. केन्द्रन) met with in dialects. E5-35. Polite Literary forms, हिंद्र द्वा Literary honorific 〒5・多5 Other Literary forms.

(c) HE, or SHE.

Common Colloquial forms.

The genitive of 南 is either 南京, or 南京 His, and the agentive is either AN, or AIN

> Polite forms, Literary and Colloquial. Honorific form. Literary and Colloquial. 型. 4. D.M. Literary forms. 25.

138

TIBETAN GRAMMAR:

Other forms for SHE :-

The genitive of ই is either ইবি or ইইবি, and the Agentive is either ইমি, or ইইমা

(d) IT

There is no special term for this pronoun. It is often not rendered at all. Ex:

If used at all it is generally rendered by रें, or रेंदर Ex.:-हिर्देश मुन्देर or दर्देश दुना Here is your pen: its point is broken.

Usually Pronouns are not repeated in ordinary conversation after the first reference

(e) REFLEXIVES.

Colloquial and in Book-language. Other Book-terms with the same meaning are: - 959, 35, 5535, and 959351

11.—Declension of Personal Pronouns.

This follows the same rules as apply in the case of Substantives.

Singular. 139 Nom. Plural. Voc. We. Acc. ca. Of me. Gen. Of us. Agent. CN By me. By us. Dat. CA. To me. To us. Loc. C'a On me ETT On us Per. Mod. 2.22. Against me 口養气 Against us. Abl. こ、切刻. EZAN Than us. Than me. (दर्ने प्रमाश ता Towards me. एर्ड दे. स्नाहाता Towards us. From us. Nom. Voc. C'AC'F We. Acc. L. 大下山。 Of me. Gen. [] [] [] us. एर्ट्सिश By me. Agent. CACEN By us. C'XC'A' To me. Dat.

And so forth.

TACKA To us.

Nom. Voc. You. Acc. 155 TO Of thee. Thy Of you, yours. Gen. 产气·引料 By thee: Agent. By you. And so forth. Or :-मिंद देवे Of thee. Thy. Gen. \$5.59. Of you, yours. F5 XN' By thee. Agent PS &N By you. 55.35. Thou, is declined like 5.35. 1.

140

And so forth.

He, is declined like C'AC' I.

N. She, is declined like He.

শ্বৰ This humble one, has for genitive শ্ৰী, and for Agentive শ্ৰী All those ending in ম', ম', ঝ', ঝ', and ম' are declined like ম'.

Those ending in 5 are declined like 75 Thou, save as regards the forms in 31

N.B.—Plural Nouns do not take the plural sign & if from the context it is clear that plurality is intended [See § 29 B, 2 (e)], but plural Pronouns always take the sign, except when they are qualified by Numeral Adjectives.

EXAMPLE :--

E'AG' We four.

III. THE REPLEXIVE PRONOUS.

the following are examples of "LC" SELF, ONE'S SELF, used reflexively:

ट्य.रट.रेजी.शुंशश.कुरे.जूर.ट्र.चीश.य. रेजूर.सकुत्ती.ज.शुंट.ची.लुरी

दशर्गिर सर्हेन् त्यर्ने शेस्रशके द्यर स्थिर के रहेर्ट के स्थानी स्थित।

गुःभ्रास्टाट्टाक्याक्षा

श्चार्याम्बर्देशस्यायवाद्यस्त्र

ा भेर-देश। जा भेर-देश।

24.3.xc.4x1.2c.1

हुट.। हुन्न: २४. मूर्च. इट. मी. हुन्बेश ज.ज.ज हुन.

हेश.सर.ट्र. तेश.ग्रीय.प्रेय.स.) महिमार्ग्र.रट.

ता.क्ष्ट्र.यट.ज.म्रीम.म्री.पर्येता। मृ.मोधय.ता.क्ष्ट्रस्टा.क्ष्ट्रं मांत्रशाक्ष्या.मोधय.

८.वृ.४८.चर्वव.वश्रास.चैट.।

If I know myself spiritually I shall see God.

If I see God spiritually I shall know myself.

Man, know thyself.

The murderer has killed himself.

Did you keep the money for yourself?

The idea originated from myself.

The dog pulled the bone towards itself.

The soul alone really knows itself.

Other men are ourselves incarnate under other conditions.

He that speaketh of (from) himself, seeketh his own glory (John vii. 18).

I am not come of myself (John vii, 28).

142

Or better :-

मक्षेत्! मक्षेत्र I am not, etc.

दस्रदेश्टाविद्वस्रक्षिण्याः नेत्रसम्ब्रा

I can of mine own self do nothing (John v. 30).

Or better :-

भ्र.वेश्रा । रश्रद्धाः स्थानिक्षित्रं के क्ष्यदानेन्द्रान्तरः

I can, etc.

दशगुदः रदः नी मिस्रशक्षः निर्देर दें।

Or better :-

गुँ मेर्। कुँ केर् I judge not mine own self (1 Cor. iv. 3).

I judge not, etc.

मित्रदामीर्देषरुके के

Or better :-

हिर्दरमिक्कर व्यवमानु के व्यन्।

9रिक्टिर रम्मीयावर् १ वस।

Or better :-

मिंद्र गुरुष प्रदेश मिंद्र प्रदेश करेंद्र प्रकार के श

What sayest thou of thyself (John i. 22).

What sayest, etc.

Askest thou this of thyself? (John xviii. 34).

Askest thou this, etc.

Whosoever shall exalt himself shall be humbled; and whosoever shall humble himself shall be exalted (Matt. xxiii, 12).

IV .- COMPOUNDS IN SC' RANG.

(a) Kr. frequently forms the first part of a compound. Ex.:-

55351

Self; One's self.

रट.श्रमश

One's own soul.

रदःरो

Each; each respectively; Hon. for

रट.रुष्.श्रे.धच।

Each has hold of his own leadingstring (D).

אביצאיםפרין

Each at his own door.

रटारेवे से दुटावा

Spontaneous; of itself.

रट.चैचाश.ज।

Spontaneously.

रट.चैनश्र.ग्रेश।

Self-sprung.

۲۲.â۲.۱

By ignorance one's future was of its own self destroyed.

स्राचनाये द्वार मेश्रास्त्रमास्र द्वार वि

Love seeketh not its own (N.T.).
Bringeth not about its own ends.

नुससाय रट देव से नेदा

Love, esc.

Or better :-

I shall go to the house of my own

नुस्राधारपारपार्द्य नेर्नु की स्रोधित नुमा

Let us (the two of us) go hence

ट.रट.परीटामट.ज.र्ज्यू.माल्या

Let us (the two of us) go hence together.

रटमिक्रिस्क्रियाच्याचित्र

One's own perception, intelligence, and happiness, three things (D).

रट.र्मारट.चोशज.रट.चर्.चोशंश।

Vou will take your own life (D).

रट:र्रोम्।रट:मीशामुक्ट्'ग्री:रेर्।

(b) AC also often forms the second part of a compound. Ex.:-

वॅन्द्रा	An unmarried man.
र्से २८ ।	A spinster; a woman by herself.
देस्रा	The very same, exactly, quite so.
५ मार्रायकः) देश्यायकः	It is just so; it is precisely so.
ब्रुकें रहा	Quite early in the morning.
ले प्रस्तः ले प्रस्तः अट्यें स्टः	With negative—Not much, Not many.
क्षेत्रत्। टर्न्स्यूर्यस्यक्ष।	By the mere (just by) meeting with me. A man all by himself; just a man.

V .- Possessive Pronouns.

1.—ORDINARY PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(a) Possessive Pronouns are formed by putting the Personal Pronouns in the Genitive case. They may either precede or follow the noun or object in respect of which possession is predicated. Ex.:—

रेप्टरे'वर्जुनाञ्चर'रेर्। or:	That is my thunder.
विवासित्ते प्रति देन।	That thunder is mine.
वर् छिर रेवे केंग्रहें रंद। or:-	This is your dictionary!
क्रेनाक्षर्द्द्रपदिः हिंदुः देवै :देद्	This dictionary is yours.

(b) In some works it is stated that the Possessive case may also be formed by affixing 35 to the shorter forms of the Personal Pronouns.

Thus, 5.35 My, mine, of me F35 His, of him, and so forth. If

this be so, it must be a very obscure Literary usage. If an U-pa heard or saw the expression 5.35, it would probably raise in his mind the idea of egoism, selfishness, etc., and not that of the Possessive case as associated with the first person. Compare the phrase 5.57.35, I the chief, i.e., possessed of pride, i.e., proud.

So, also, the expression ANDRATE AND RELATED said to be the the equivalent of ANDRATE ANDRATE The Lama's prayer-wheel, probably means The Lama with, or possessed of, the prayer-wheel.

2.—REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are merely the Reflexive Pronouns put in the Genitive case. They then signify One's, One's own, My own, Thy own, Thine own, His own, Her own, Its own, Our own, Your own, Their own, according to the pronoun, either expressed or implied, to which, in the same sentence, they respectively refer back.

COLLOQUIAL EXAMPLES :—

टक्ष-रट कें दे नियमा वर्रे निर्माणी.

टक्ष-रट कें दे नियमा वर्रे निर्माणी.

मुँद्र-देश-दटमी मुर्भिना दा विद्विद् स्पेट मी। भेदावश or Literary भेदादश

मिं क्षां प्रत्येत् विकार्ण क्षां प्रत्येत् । मिं क्षां प्रत्येत् विकार्ण क्षां प्रत्येत् श्रीत् क्षां प्रत्येत् । स्वार्येत् विकार्ण क्षां प्रत्येत् विकार्ण क्षां विकार्ण क्षां विकार I shall ride my owr horse.

We shall have to cook our own food.

Will you bring your own servant?

You must all bring your own knives, forks and spoons.

Each of you must bring his own knife, fork and spoon.

He did not realize his own good luck.

They cannot tell their own names.

मेरेन्स (or मस्स्म) रत्नी छ इन्योक्र ज्यानम्बर्धिय भेर् हेसागुः पर्ना

Every man believes his own watch is the most accurate.

स्रेश्ट.। म् स्थारा स्ट. रट. कू छ, ज्रॉट. मीलया स्था

They have all cleared out of their own village.

प्टरम्भी स्टरम्भी मीट द्याद स्ट्री प्टरम्भी स्टरम्भी मीट द्याद स्ट्री प्रमान

Every house has its own park (compound).

My own mother educated me.

In honorific form :-

द्वरानश्चराम्मद्भारा । विकासम्बद्धाः

My own mother, etc.

मिर्मियर्थेर् पर्देषे वर्जे मान्यरे प्येष

He was the architect of his own good fortune.

माद्रशः स्ट्रें स्ट्रेशः स्ट्रिम् सुम् स्थान् क्रिंशः धेदः पंत्रसम्मी ५ तुम् ।

Every housewife thinks her own broom is the best.

वैट.।

He succeeded because of his own diligence.

He himself bearing our sins in his own body upon the tree (1 Peter ii. 24).

He who speaks of himself seeks his own glory (John vii. 18). मिट्रिं रट्मी मार्थापस्य स् रें रें दें गुट्। प्रिट.रट.मी. प्रतरश दुश मेंशाश. 四川大・天

He came to his own kingdom, but his own subjects received him not (John i. 11).

वुसस्य र देवि वेद के से दिन्ता रट स्मारट मीश माउँ र नी रेर रदायामुखेराव।

Love seeketh not her own (1 Cor.

You will take your own life (D).

If one have no son of his own (D).

VI.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These may also be called Distinguishing Adjectives. The commonest are 35 THIS, and 5 THAT, as to which see § 27.

The following are also common:-

95.42.

This very, This same.

That very, That same.

35'M'XL' This particular.

रेगार्ट.

That particular.

That very; that precisely; just so; like that, thus; so; just that.

र्मामा

Also the following:-

That over there, Yonder (far off).

That just there (nearer).

ल.मी

That up there.

ममो

That down there.

These latter may be used just as they stand, or they may be put in the genitive case. Whichever method is adopted, they precede the noun that they distinguish, and they may be used with or without

148

Also the following:-

955.
Such, such as.

EXAMPLES :-

५१:सुः भेव।

रेशुंधेव।

नर्टिश्चित (गुण) धेवा

रें दर्भे हुन यन्ना भेना

भुज्निरेर्ट्निशहिर्भ्रियःम्बर्धारेर्।

मन्द्रम्भामन्द्रभित्तरान्द्रन्मारतः

व्ययम्भात्रीयम्पारः यन्त्रामा रक्षालेना

वर्षायमानावर्षार्युग्यम्।

द्री जनस्याचेत्रः योजरः दिः ग्रीया ग्रीया दियाचा.

रेताना इ.क्स. (or भावेश.) शुलूट.।

रनार प्येव।

थमीर्देशियमारे बेर ने भेर।

Or :-

यमी (or यमिते) रे.देवे स्टायमा रे.बेर.मी.ग्रेर्। Who is this?

Who is that?

This is my brother, or sister.

That is my master.

That same gentleman will employ you.

Please give me what you can of that: literally, what you an from that, just that please give.

This road goes as far as to that house: literally, this road to that house, about just that, goes.

What is the road like to the pass!

Very sleep and crooked, just like that.

That won't do at all: literally, like that will not come at all.

That is so.

What is the name of that hill away yonder?

What is the name, etc.

मनीर्दे के वर्षे दे से दे के दे वर्षे के के दे के के दे के

The name of that big valley down there is Do-mo (Chumbi).

দ্র্ভিন্ত ক্রিন্ত্র প্রত্থিক বিষ্ট্রিন্ত্র | Have you ever heard such a name before?

The Literary equivalents for most of the above are :-

95	This.	पर्-द्रमः!·	These.	
5	That.	रे.क्षश्	Those.	
वर्नके ।		रेंबें		
वर्रेकेर		5.35		
92.5E.	This very This same.	रे.रू.	That very; That same.	
५५ मिन	, we storm.	रें मिंद	That same.	
२५ मिं क छेर		ने मिन्दे केन		
८५ैगा]		रेगा		
५ ई.मा	This particular.	र्-मा	That partic	ular.
न्दिगार ः		₹ ' '/'रदः		
ৰু শুকু		यम		Save रामी and
क् .चृ.		শ্ৰদী "	That there.	
श्रमी.	This here.	वेंचें		not used in (), or Tsang.
39		≽ .	That.	
वर्षका				
5.45.4.	Such, Such as			
पर्ने द्वर				
लुकान्यः				
9.0	So named, Nan	red.		

EXAMPLES :-

८.रट. श्रुट. (or शक्र) पर्. लेश.चे.व।

में दे ते सं शे सूर्य में य विना विट वस ल्राट्स.

सर्ज्ञालाम् स्वाचन । मन्द्रम् अनु नुस्य क्रिंग्ला दे भटा स्वाचन स्वाचन

ट.वर्.कर.ल्या

I and one so named; I and so and so.

They laid hold upon one Simon of Cyrene, coming from the country (Luke xxiii. 26).

And behold, a man named Joseph, who was a councillor, a good man and a righteous, of Arimathor acity of the Jews (Luke XXIII. 50).

Such as this am I (D).

VII. -THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN.

प्रिया नहिया | ONE ANOTHER; EACH OTHER.

EXAMPLES :-

म् क्रुम् नहिना नीसानिहना निसस स् निस

They loved each other.

इ.सेंस.में नार्त्यांश क्रू. त्रीत्र त

व्यक्तिं नाउनामी सामाउना धुन या रेत्।

मि हैं नहिमानीश महिमानी पुना विना लिया रहेरि मुश्राया रेरा

मु:मःर्क्तः महिमाः वश्यः महिमाः मीशः मः यहमाः

मि के मादिमा प्राप्त अक्षा पु मादिमा ध्रीका या

The ladies looked at one another mirthfully.

They have gone up to each other.

They have scrutinized each other's garments.

The Lamas received ceremonial scarfs from one another.

They have gone in company with one unother.

वि र्हे. महिमायः महिमापि यसः मन् निः ही.

They are conversing with each other.

151

निर्देश्यदःमहिनाःमीशःमहिनाःमीःम्दःयः विमुद्दर्गिशःगीःसेद्र।

Ye also ought to wash one another's feet (John xiii, 14).

चिंद्रमालमाहेचालमाह्यू । चिंद्रमालमाहेचालमाह्यू वि

Some of his disciples said one to another.

VIII. -INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

In the Colloquial these are :-

지, plural form 정정, Who ?
되고, ' 리고리다' MHICH ?
되고, ' 리고리다' MHICH ?
지고, ' 리고리다' MHICH ?

All the above are declinable like nouns.

The Literary equivalents are :-

These are also declinable like nouns.

What?

Which?

In simple questions the Interrogative Pronoun is usually placed immediately before the verb. Ex.:--

हिंद्र-श्राधीत। हिंद्र-श्राधीत

Who are you? (singular).

Who are you? (plural).

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Who is present?

Who are these Lamas ?

What Lamas were there?

What is your name?

What is that box made of (by)?

What are these loads?

What horses were there?

Who sent this book?

Which of these books do you want?

If, however, the interrogative is in the genitive case, it may come either before the verb or before its noun. Ex.:—

यमी मिट सम्बद्धि रेन or समी सुदे

Whose house is that?

When, too, the sentence is more complex, the pronoun though it precedes, need not immediately precede the verb. Ex....

हिन्द्वेने बट बस सुराट या सूर जा होर बन गुप्तन्ता

Which of you can give me a rupee?

र्भूनः यक्तामा स्थार्थनः वैत्रये माटार्दाः भूनः यक्तामा स्थार्थनः वैत्रये माटार्दाः

With what is the Kingdom of God to be-compared? (Mark iv. 30).

हेर्ड्यू हे.ब्रट्स्थःश्रेशःट.ज.ह्मेचारामारुचा

Who among you can charge me with any sin?

When the sentence contains an Interrogative Pronoun the Interrogative particle is not usually added to the verb. However, there is no

हिंद गुरुमारे प्रवेश गु र्थेद द्या

What are you hyilding?

पट.प.रे.श्रंश.पत्र्श.लंट. or लूट.ट. or ME.CAL or ME.CAL

Who is going to build that house?

यमी आम्बर्य दे अर्द्धदायमारे लुमी र्पेर्। What is that abbot's name?

Here may also be mentioned 75 WHAT MEASURE? It is often used as an adverb, signifying How much? but it may also be regarded as an Interrogative Pronoun signifying What? Ex.:-

क्र हैंदरण हैंदर देता

What o'clock is it? What is the time, or hour? Literally What water-measure is it.

Also TAST, or TEAST LIKE WHAT, WHAT SORT, WHAT KIND? . This is really the adverb how, but it is often used as an Interrogative Pronoun in the sense now given. Ex.:-

श्रमीर्टरकेर्ये दे तरायरे न्मारामा 92रावर्ग।

What sort of sport (wild animals, game) is there in that big valley down there?

झे.सर्थरा न्यां. पुरा झेंब. त्र. (or चींडु. ना है) वर वस गायरे विसामा वह स W5 1

What is the road like from Lhasa to Ta-shī-lhüm-po (Shi-gu-tse)?

The Literary equivalent of पायर्श is E'RT, or & RT or E'RT, or 3.5.d. or Ex.:--

र.श्र.कर.नेश.चलाया

What is best to be done now? How best to act now?

शरशाम्बराजेश.चे.च.कु.के.चे.लुबा

What sort of Being is the so-called Buddha?

N.B.-5' is more correct, but E' is also used interrogatively.

IX .-- RELATIVE AND CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A - Relative Pronouns.

In the Colloquial there is no pronoun corresponding to our Relative Pronoun Wno the force and effect of which are expressed by turning what we call the relative clause in the sentence into a kind of adjectival or noun phrase. This is done by adding to the root of the verb the affix মান্ত্ৰ, which, it will be remembered, may take the Article, Definite or Indefinite. Ex:—

I have seen the man who kills the sheep.

युना हैं नाशें र आस्य नी की रोमेंबा अर्थेंदर ५ तुना

He has seen the man who kills the sheep.

मानगरमाद्र दे व्यासिक सार

Or :-

He who killed the man (i.e., the man-killer, or murderer) has run away.

विट. । श्रीट. गी. चसरे. श्रीचरे. शु. रे. टस. सहेट. श्रीट. गी. चसरे. श्रीचरे. शु. रे. टस. सहेट. विट. ।

I have seen the man who killed the wolf, i.e., the wolf-killer, or wolf-killing man.

मेश गु र्ये । मेश गु र्ये ।

I know the brother of the man who killed the wolf.

स्मार्याः स्थान्यः से देशः सुंदः गुदेः सुंदः गुःचश्रदः साम्यः से देशः सुंदः गुदेः

The man who killed the wolf has given me its skin.

हेद:श्री: भिवरमी से दि: अक्र अर् दु: टा

I went with the man who killed the wolf.

म्यानसम्बद्धाः स्टर्स्यः स्टर्स्यः स्टर्स्यः स्टर्

All the villagers ran to the man who killed the wolf.

(य) देर। श्रीराज्यामिक्याक्रेसास्याः or क्रेसासः श्रीराज्यामिक्याक्रेसास्याः

विमामिट यायमी वार्क्र मुण्य स्थान मी से विमामिट यायमी वार्क्र मी विमामिक

शै. दे. विषया सर दि स्मेश्ना दे. लिट स्मित्र

तक्रित् स्थिमा हमाश क्वाच साम्य क्वा क्रिकेट सेट

लनसः यदः द्रास्त्रक्षः नुः ॲटः स्रायः नुः । द्रावेदः निर्ध्यनाः नीसः ग्रायः ग्रादः नुः । सम्बद्धः सर्वेदः स्टास्त्राः कृषः स्ट्राः ।

चर्रात्रःसर्कः विश्वायः स्त्रेरः वस्त्रः। हिन्दः रेशः सुः वनाः वशः स्त्राः स्त्राप्तः स्त्राः

द्र्याम् मृत्रेशः च्रियः युद्धाः । द्र्याम् स्थितः स्थितः स्यादायः The abbot gave the man who killed the wolf a rupee.

A man who came with the Sha-pé is staying in that house.

That man is the servant of an official who came with the Sha-pé.

What is the name of the man who signed the Treaty?

The attendants who came with the Sha-pé hought many quaint things in Calcutta.

Did you converse with the Amban who came from China?

I have got two two-edged bans (swords) from a man who used to live in Lhasa.

The above are all in the Active Voice, but a difficulty occurs when there is nothing in the context to show whether the Active or the Passive Voice is meant. In the following examples, for instance, either voice may be implied:—

टशःचशरं श्रोचरं मुं.शुं.रे.शुंटः चैटः । टशःचशरं श्रोचरं शुःरे.शुंटः चैटः । टशःचशरं शोचरं शुःरे.शुंटः चैटः । I have seen the man who killed, i.e., the murderer, or killingman; or

I have seen the man who was killed.

In such cases the general drift of the conversation is the sole guide to what the meaning really is. In fact, the last three examples are susceptible of a third rendering, namely, The man who was killed by me has been seen; and, if this is not the meaning intended by the speaker, the Personal Pronoun CN should be inserted immediately before the verb. Thus :-

I have seen the man who killed:
or
I have seen the man who was killed.

The difficulty as regards Voice is, however, removable by avoiding the construction in ARA for the Passive Voice, and using instead the simple Participle as an adjective either preceding or following its noun. Ex. :--

I have seen the man who was killed.

Or the construction in AAA may be retained and something introduced to indicate by whom or by what the man was killed. Ex.:-

रसम्बास्य यसर् साम्बर्शे हे विस सर्वेट 95मा

He has seen the man who was killed by the soldier.

द्रमा श्रेश श्रे पश्र शाम्य दे दशासां द 34.1 **५मण्** शेश वश्रद्भाय्य मुः शे दे दश

I have seen the man who was killed by the soldiers.

मक्ट.वटा

The best way of differentiating between the voices in cases of this sort is to make use of the different roots of the auxiliary verb 35% To do. Thus :-

दश्रीं प्रश्त (or निहाँर) नेर्प I have seen the man who killed श्रवट.वट.।

or kills.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

157

टश.भु.चशरे. (or चोश्रूरे.) वेश.स. I have seen the man who was श्रुट्ट.विट.। killed.

एशकी प्रश्नर (or महार्टे.) मे. य. अहेट. I have seen the man who is to be killed. 3c.1

The Relative Pronouns That and Which may refer either to Animates or to Inanimates. When Animates are concerned, the construction for the Active Voice should be in AA, as above exemplified. Ex.:-

नि मश्र सम्बर् ने प्रशास्त्र मुद्द नुद्द । वश्रद्राम्बन्तुः निःदेः दक्षाः सर्वेदः नुदः।

I have seen the dog that killed.

मि पश्च सामन देवे सम् पर्दा पारेंद्र। वसर् सामन् मी मि नेदे समें पर्वा पर्ने

The head of the dog that killed has been chopped off.

भै'नश्रद्रासम्बन्धि'हि'दे'बेब्सी'व्द भ्रामित्रम्भाष्यर्ने भ्रेष्ट्रम्।

The dog that killed the man has not been caught.

When Animates are concerned, the construction for the Passive Voice is also in AAA, when the Agent is indicated; and in a simple Participle used as an adjective, either preceding or following its noun. when the Agent is not indicated. Ex. :-

मुक्ष. वि. क्षे. यसर सिव्य दे. दश सर्वेट विट । मिसानसर्भामराविसी मेरिसासविदानुदा। मिस्रान्यस् साम्यामी ले से ने प्रशासिंद

I have seen the cat that was killed by the dog.

55.1

वसर वर् ले से रे दस सर्वेट वृत्। वि'शे'मश्रद्गाने'मश्रम्

I have seen the cat that was killed.

This construction may also be used when the agent is indicated.

Ex.:—

When Inanimates are concerned the Participial construction should be adopted. This construction, like the one in AFA, is also in itself incapable of differentiating between the Active and the Passive Voice. Thus:—

This is the iron that broke (something); or, This is the iron that was broken.

The following, however, illustrate the Active Voice, as an object is mentioned, and the sense is therefore clear. Ex.:—

र्दे वडना यदे अनास दे दि रे रे द

This is the iron that broke the stone, i.e., the stone-breaking iron.

्रम्यास्य त्रम्य ये दे दे दे त्र दे दे दे त्र क्ष्मा यद्य विष्ट स्था विष्ट स्य स्था विष्ट स्था विष्ट स्था विष्ट स्था विष्ट स्था विष्ट स्था विष

This is the stone that broke the iron.

Here is the arrow that struck the rock.

The following illustrate the Passive Voice:-

क्ष्मकाणुकार्दे वहमायारे प्रेरे रेता भूमकाणुकाय हमायारे रेति रेते क्षेत्र or इ.य. देश क्षेमकाय हमायारे रेति रेते क्षेत्र or

This is the iron that was broken by the stone.

This is the stone that was broken by the iron.

Here is the rock that was struck by the arrow.

I will give you the book that you read to me.

The Active Participles \$\widetilde{\pi}_1 \widetilde{\pi}_2 \widetilde{\pi}_3, for Animates, and \$\widetilde{\pi}_2 \widetilde{\pi}_3, for Inanimates, may also be used for the construction of Relative clauses, the former being put in the Genitive case, and the latter also, if it precedes its noun, but in the Nominative case if it follows its noun.

EXAMPLES :-

न्यः स्थायः स्थितः स्थायः की स्थितः ना स्ट्रा

A man who is now in Lhasa will come.

निर्देशकी तर्मा। वर्ष्ट्रियन्त्रियकी तर्मा स्वारी वर्ष्ट्रियन्त्रियकी तर्मा स्वारी विरायमा स्वारी स

The cave that is in the forest must be searched.

The cave that is in the forest must be searched.

In this last case the Pronoun निरं (or निरं), which, may be used thus:—

स्ट. द्रमास्त्रेट पट एटा । अ.श.ज. देवोश तम्येत तपु . पेष्ट त्यूचा दे ज.लूरे ता दे पष्ट्या देवोश की . पेट वेवोश त्या सेवो वो चे . (or चोट .) चेट वेवोश.

The cave that is in the forest must be searched.

हिर्देशसहार विद्राह्म।

Have you seen the Treaty that was signed at Lhasa?

पक्षितः सः दे क्रिन् र सः स्राह्म : वैदः दश । प्रष्टाः स्रापाः (मा.इ.) क्षे.सः सः स्वाधः

B .- Correlative Pronouns.

The English Personal Correlative Pronouns; the rendering of which into Tibetan has now to be considered, are :--

I or WE)	ANYBODY	1
Thou or You	WHO.	ANYONE	1
HE or THEY)	NOBODY	WHO.
Whoso.		No one	1
WHOEVER.			
WHOSOEVER.			

The Impersonal Correlative Pronouns may refer either to Animates or to Inanimates, and are:—

WHAT, OF THAT WHICH.

WHAT SO.

WHICHSOEVER.

WHATEVER.

WHICHEVER.

WHICHEVER.

NOTHING THAT.

1.—Personal Pronouns.

When the Pronoun is in the first or second person, singular or plural, one construction is to use the Pronoun itself, in its ordinary non-relative form (5, 55, F, 55, etc.), and to turn what we call the Relative part of the sentence into a sort of Noun-phrase, with the aid of the affix 515. Ex.:—

देश्चित्रणी, विचावविष्यविश्वास्त्र, विद्रान्त्र, विद्रान

I who am conversing with you (i.e.,
I the converser with you) am
your king.

We who salute you (i.e., we your saluters) are your subjects.

निर्मु मुञ्जाम्य दे त्यादा द्वेश सर्वा द्वार मुञ्जू द्वार मा

We submit to thee who hast subdued us, i.e., to thee our subduer.

Sometimes, however, the sentence has to be wholly recast and a participial construction adopted instead. Ex.:—

हिन के स्थार के निया के निया के मेन

Thou whose son is with us (i.e., thy son being with us, thou) must be our king.

When the Pronoun is in the third person, the construction may be either in WWC WHOEVER, ANYONE WHO, HE WHO, etc., or in ALTA.

थंडा, लट.श्रंट.केट.केट.इट. or श्रं.तुंश, (or तुंश,) हुबे.वे. (or हुबे.

He who (or whoever, or anyone who) runs away is (or will be) a coward.

खुःल्रिट्यं (or ल्रिट्यंबर) लट्यंबर लट्यंबर्याची की खट्टयं

Nobody (or no-one) who comes will ever return: or, he who (or wnoever, or anyone who) comes will never return.

क्षुट्टे क्रिचीतास्थलार (tor या) हरे। शेट्ट क्रिचीतास्ट्रिट ज़िश्च संभवात्म सम्मार्ट्ड

Whose-soever sins ye remit they are remitted.

श्री.संक्षा.संद्रायम्बन्तात्ता ।

He who (or whoever, or anyone who) runs away will be shot.

रे.य.की.स.५८। सर.की.लूट. (or बस्नास्तानीकेट. सर.की.स.५८।

Anybody who (or he who, or who ever) goes to sleep there will never wake up.

सुंस.ल्ट. । क्.पर्-शंश.पर्वेटश.य.लट.लट.सैर.वि.

Whoever (or anyone who, or he who) drinks this water will be thirsty again.

शुः स्टायरायशामा नुन्द्र मिश्र मी सेन्।

He who (or whoever, or anyone who) comes must work.

श्चर्त्यो स्ट्रा

Whoever (or he who, or whosoever or anyone who) works will be paid.

Whosoever hath, to him having been siven whe shall have abundance; but whoseever hath not,

जिट्छूर सर् तब्ब्विस्ट्रा or

from him even that which he hath shall be taken away.

मैनाशकीशः) चूरासीशक्ताः। मील्प्रेयं सेन्यामित्रं प्रमीशः (or रूटः भैन्यामित्रं प्रमीतः सेन्यामित्रं सेन्यामित्रं Anyone towards whom the bull rushes will naturally run away.

ख्रिक्ता स्ट मीस ख्रा दिए क्या न तहे. संस्था स्ट मीस ख्रा दिए क्या न तहे. संस्था स्ट

Anyone with whom that Lama over there quarrels will regret it.

Sometimes both WWK and SIFIG. are used together. Ex.:-

शुर्भेनो दरे दिहेर सम्बर्दे वा WEEN I will give a rupee to anyone who will carry this letter.

N.B.—It will be noticed that \(\mathbb{N}' \) is usually separated from \(\mathbb{N} \mathbb{C}' \)
Moreover, it is the \(\mathbb{N}' \) and not the \(\mathbb{N} \mathbb{C}' \) which takes whatever casesigns are necessary, and the \(\mathbb{N} \mathbb{C}' \) comes in at the end of the relative clause.

2.—Impersonal Pronouns.

In the case of What (in the sense of That which) which is really a Correlative Pronoun, the participial construction is adopted, and the Pronoun That (or That which may be used or not at pleasure. Ex.:—

क्रिरेशमारे (or माट) मिनायारिके रेव (नना) निर्मामारेन नमा क्रियायारिके

35नामांश

Do. you understand what you are reading?

दशक्तिरात्र (मारे or मादा) मन्द्राया You must do what I tell you.

ট্র্রি'ম' (मारे' or माट') द्रम्थादारे I will buy what you want.

रेत (मारे or माट) धेर्यरेटशङ्घ I do not know exactly what they cost.

मुँद:देश (मारे or माद) विदेद एउँद । will give him what you like.

The other Impersonal Correlative Pronouns, which are more forcible than TT and TT WHAT, THAT WHICH, namely, TTWE, THING THAT, and THE WHAT SO, WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER, ANYTHING THAT, and, with a negative, Nothing THAT, may be illustrated thus:—

र्शे देश मारे ने दुन्य प्रत्यमार्थे प्रतृम।

में रेश नारे नेदार पट अन्ये दुन।

ब्रॅंदेशमाट नेर्यं रेपट प्यन ये वर्षा

ब्रॅंडे मिट मेट हेर् य रे अट अमार्थे ९५मा

हुर्ने म्हार लटाकूश प्रचित्र मार लूर पार्टर

भूष अंदानी बटायानी र जूर मार्टिश लटा हिंदी श्रुंची क्ष्टा सार्टिश जूर मार्टिश लटा Or:- Whatever, or anything that, she does is good.

He can tell the price of anything that, or whatever, is in your house.

Whatsoever is in a man's heart will influence his whole life.

श्रेति क्षेटमी बट यामाट माट खेर या देश म् पु.श्रुंचा झट कि यश्रेण लूट ।

द्वै-द्वंद्वयम् न्दे स्पेद्यायद द्वा विद ता ह्रेर मा प्रवा

EA. FAE. A. AE. A. A. C. WE. EN. B. I will give you anything that, or पार्चेर लिए।

द्वे द्वर शम्द स्र दि पर दश हिंद्त केर.लूट.।

र्नाश नार नेर राजा हर स्वरा नेर ही WE: 1

-Or:-

र्मेश.चीट.चुर.स.र्शाह्ट.सेंचश.चुर.कु. यारेत्।

हिंद् रेशम् त्याप्य यादे यात्र त्रात्रीम् मी यारेड्र

दश्यम्नाश्यस्त्रिंद्धः (or अपुदः) I have not seen anything.

Whatsoever is in a man's heart will influence his whole life.

whatever, is in my power.

Nothing that the enemy does will save the fortress.

You are right in absolutely nothing that you have said.

दशःनादः नेश्वरादाना नी से । I recede from nothing that I have written.

3.—Literary Constructions.

(a) The following examples illustrate the Literary method of rendering relative clauses :-

कृट. कूट. ठवंश. वे. चबट. ग्र. थ्र. शुरे. च. व्रमशं करं. चकरं. वंशः भुः तः श्रीमाः तरः 35:31

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down and cast into the fire (Matt. vii. 19).

मिन् गुरा राज्या सुरा मी सेना पार्थिन स्ति । सुरासिन मान्यासिन स्वाप्ता स्

हैना ने रास्त्र हमा गुर्मा ने सुना निवासि र हैना ने स्टाइस गुर्मा ने सुना निवासि र

दे: नश्च त्र के नुष्य ये के प्येष या दे नुष्य ये व्य सुष्य। हे द्रोवि सर्केषा नी प्येष या दे द्रोवि सर्केषा नी प्येष या दे द्रोवि सर्केषा प्यास्त्र सर्केषा

लट, ध्रिट, ग्रीक्ष. ट.ज. मोर्थट, यपु स्मी है. यहूरे. इ.स. मोर्थट, यीक्ष. ट.ज. मोर्थट, यपु स्मी है. यहूरे.

दे, लय. ग्रैश. ट.ज. चेर्ट. चर्र अष्ट्रे. लेज. हे, बंश. टंश. संत्र. चेर्ट. चर्ट अष्ट्रे. लेज.

पश.रंभश.ग्रीश.ट.ज.रंगट.ग्रु.चेर.ट्री पश.रंभश.ग्रीश.ट.ज.रंगट.ग्रु.चेर.ट्री

श्र-मुभावर् व्यामक्ष्य भ्रमानि व्याक्रमाय विमा।

महिंदिःसरः चुःसदेन । or:— महिंदः चुदेःसः सुना।

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye? (Matt. vii. 3).

The stone that the builders rejected the same was made the head of the corner (Matt. xxi. 42).

Render therefore unto Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's and unto God the things that are God's (Matt. xxii. 21).

And the glory which thou hast given me I have given also unto them (John xvii. 22).

The cup which my father hath given me, shall I not drink it? (John xviii. 11).

The works that I do in my father's name, they testify of me (John x. 25).

A man sick of the palsy, lying on a bed (Luke v. 18).

The calf that is to be killed.

And Philip ran to him and said, understandest thou what thou readest? (Acts viii, 30).

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

The Literary Correlative Pronouns are :-

Ź.

श्.७मा

WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER, ANYONE wнo, etc.

네다.

אב.אב

or in certain cases 3

테다.

माट.(वेमा

मादः है

मार केर

माट-दमा-केट

שובישוב.

g.ME.

3.4L.

WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER, WHICHEVER, ANYTHING THAT, THAT WHICH, WHAT, etc.

The following examples will serve to illustrate the Literary rendering of the Correlative :-

शुक्ष ए उना ता द्वा ही नेद धादेश हेद मी. He that is not against us is for us सुनाम नेररे

(Mark ix. 40).

ट्यान्ति म्यान्य निर्दे म्यान्य दिश्व त्र रंग. व्यक्त. कर. बंदा. व्यव्हे. सेवा. हीर. र्वहमाक्षेत्र्रा

Not everyone that saith unto me Lord, Lord, shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven (Matt. vii 21).

विर्. कोर्-इसबायाः झेशायाः वसवा उर्-गौः बटः रेश. विश. चोजुल. श्रांचर. लू. टे. रेस.जश. केष्ट्रां हिनास पुरा। देव गुराबस

Among them that are born of women there hath not arisen a greater than John the Baptist; yet he that is but little in the

न्द्रम् स्था के प्राप्ते के ।

kingdom of heaven is greater than John (Matt. v. 11).

हिर्ने में स्थार दे दाय सामिय दिना

Resist not him that is evil (Matt. 'v. 38).

मार्ड्र-तर-तिचेर-हू। हे. चुंबर-टे. हुँट्र-इंश्वर-की. खत्र-कु.लट. मार्ड्र-तर-पंचेर-हू।

With what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged (Matt. vii. 2).

लना महीयाही हे दिन्द्रमा क्रिना में क्रिया है स्थान क्रिया है स्था है

And whosoever shall compel thee to go one mile, go with him twain (Matt. v. 41).

बुर्यक्षित्रचर तर्द्राचारी त्या क्षेत्र होगा हिंद नहा

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not thou away (Matt. v. 42).

यह.तर.पंगेर। पश्चा। श्री.ज.ह.र.पंज्या.च.र्येज.वंर.

And he that falleth on this stone shall be broken to pieces, but on whomsoever it shall fall it will scatter him as dust (Matt. xxi. 44).

म्रो.सून्।त्वर्मात्तर्थाःसूच्यत्तरत्वीरःस् रुश्चनत्रमात्तरत्वीर । श्रेश्चिरःस्ट श्रिशः ग्रेटः स्ट.म्रो.सून्यःसरः वर्ध्वरतः

Whosoever shall seek to gain his life shall lose it, but whosoever shall lose his life shall preserve it (Luke xvii. 33).

क.ट्रे.पमाय विट.व.वमालट.क्रु.सूमाई। चर.प्रीर। शैमायीट.टमाईर.पट्ट. श्रम. योट. क्.पट्ट. पमा प्रीट.व.लट.सूम.

Everyone that drinketh of this water shall thirst again, but whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst (John iv. 13). हेर्यंत्र महिमाने निर्माति । भूषे । मारास वस निरम्प के सावस स्वीत स्वास हेरावस निर्माणका स्वीत स्वास

नियानीया नारा अर्थेटा या न्यार्थेया याने त्या

र्गोर्भ में केंप्रियार में देश वा केंद्र में केंद्र मेंद्र में केंद्र मेंद्र में केंद्र मेंद्र में केंद्र मेंद्र में केंद्र मेंद्र मेंद्र में केंद्र मेंद्र म

कृट्-ब्रशःभ्रेशःयःब्रे-श्रेश्रशःकृट्-ज्येब-ब्र् । नाटः-व-ब्रशःभ्रेशःयःब्रे-श्रेशशःकृट्-ज्येब-ब्र् ।

खे. मुंबर दे. साम्बर्ध अ. में ना दे. क्षेत्र हो।

मी.क्रीची.ता.मुट्र, क्षका.ग्रीश.भाजाय.ट्र.ट्रची.

स्याद्ये स्तर् त्या महत्तः हुः हुना सः स्तर्

र्स्त्र गुटः टःवर्रेन्द्रश्चर्याः वाक्रे व्याप्तर्

सु क्षेत्र श्रेमस श्रेमस विवानु मार्येना सर सु क्षेत्र गुराने त्या कर स व्यवासीम्ब पिता क्षेत्र स्थान

He that cometh from above is above all: he that is of the earth is of the earth he speaketh (John iii. 31).

What he hath seen and heard, of that he beareth witness (John iii. 32).

God is spirit: and they that worship him must worship in spirit and in truth (John iv. 24).

That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of spirit is spirit (John iii. 6).

Jesus said unto her, I that speak unto thee am the Christ (John iv. 26).

Whosesoever's sins ye remit they are remitted (John xx. 23).

Unto everyone that hath shall be given, and he shall have abundance; but from him that hath not, even that which he hath shall be taken away (Matt. xxv. 29).

He that rejecteth me and receiveth not my sayings kath one that judgeth him (John xii, 48).

But he that troubleth you shall bear his judgment, whosoever he be (Gal. v. 10). स्यान्ते के मन्द्रेन या प्येक् के । वर्देन या ने के मन्द्रेन या प्येक् के मन्द्रा या

ट.चर्टामान् रेट्रे.चहन्य थने वे।

रहें सं द्वा सम्बन्धः स्त्र प्यापितः स्वाप्तकः स्व र्योवः स्रोताः सम्बन्धः स्व प्यापितः स्वाप्तकः स्व र्योवः

माद म्वास द्रास्य द्य द्रास्य द्रास्य द्रास्य द्रास्य द्रास्य द्रास्य द्रास्य द्रास्य

है: मर्नेत्रया है: मर्जुत्या है: म्रिसस-द्राः समुद्रया है: द्रमाया है: स्पेद: नुःद्राः ना है: क्रेंद्रया है: दम्याया है: स्ट्रेन: नुःद्राः ना स्ट्रिस्या है: प्रमाया है: स्ट्रेन: नुःद्राः ना स्ट्रिस्या है: प्रमाया है: स्ट्रेन: नुःद्राः ना But he hath seeketh the glory of him that sent him, the same is true (John vii. 18).

It is his teaching who sent me (John vii. 16).

He who built all things is God (Heb. iii. 4).

That which was from the beginning, that which we have heard, that which we have seen with our eyes, that which we beheld and our hands handled. declare we unto you (I John i. 1).

Whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honourable, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue and any praise, think on these things (Phil. iv. 8).

X.-Indefinite Pronouns or Pronominal Adjectives.

1. In the Colloquial the following are the most common:-

श्रुविना Some one; a certain (person).

प्राप्त Something; a certain (thing).

मारे धेवन

मारे प्रेंब द भट (or प्रेंब दश) Something.

मारे विमा

Nobody, None.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

```
TIEWE Any.
मारे.लट.
חבישבי
          Anything; or, with a negative, Nothing, None;
                 Whatever, Whichever.
חביחב.
ची.चोश.
माट.चा. or माट.
뭐다. or 뭐다.
                 All, Whole, Entire, Every, Complete, Full.
 चर्मा उर.
 AE'N'
 विमाद केंद्र Several.
 शदः वृद्यः Most.
 अब्यः }
  मविषे त. विमा
  अव्यानिषा | Another.
  5:55
  3.
              } Each, Every.
   मार्डेशमा Both.
   मार्डमा पार्डमा One another, Each other.
   A.AN. Some.
   র্নার A few, Few, A little, Little.
    महिमाद्भा Sole, Only, Mere.
```

Same ; but 5'55 That same. र्भे मार्डमा रा Various, Sundry, Divers.

Kr Self, One's self.

স্ট্রাত্মত Even one, Either. With a negative, None, Neither. 3535 Such.

EXAMPLES :-

र्शादिमा (or र्श्नारे दिमामी कें) यान Once upon a time a certain Lama श. लेमा झे. श.वंश. जुरश शूट. । came from Lhasa.

मुस्यादे राम्ब्रीट मार्थिय विमाला सुद्राह्म ।

That same Lama went to a certain village. दर्भ श्रेष्ठश्च ता मिं मा रे विमा ब्रेंच पर्य होर

देव:श्रदः।

I think he went to get something.

यःशट विभग्नामट त. श. लट विषयः श<u>्</u>टा

No one went to Court yesterday.

शु.ज.लट. ट्रेब.र्ज्रेद.श.ल्राट.

No favour will be accorded to anybody.

वसःग्वर्रसुःसटःवेर्षुवःणुःरेर्।

Anybody can do this work.

इ.प्रेश.चार.चेर.त.रे.चेश्र.ज.पंचीर. मुन्द्रमा

Anything that this man does turns into gold.

ह्र्य. वर्मे चर्यम् स. च. चे. वस. लट. क्र्य. मी. सं:रे5।

Nothing that he begins is ever finished.

रुममा र्सिट सिट मिट्र नट क्या के मिडिया Out of the whole army not one DE. 22. 21. 5/2.1

man (nobody) was saved.

भु द्रना २६ भ म्बिंग ह ल्या द्राप्त पाद This gentleman desires a cup of tea.

रेटे हिंस . वा मि. वसरा स्ट्रा सर्चीमाश चॅर Soon afterwards the entire herd of cattle vanished.

ने रेट मिंदि भार्क शुक्रा दा अना दी ना रे भिंद Have you any good oranges to-day?

व्यक्ष मा देश द त्याद केंद्र द्याँका मुं Several coolies will be needed for the work.

पुनारां मि प्रामुख यार्र या Some Tibetan officials are staying at Gum (Ghoom).

मानुन्य (or अन्य) प्रमानुन्य All the others have returned to Lhasa.

र्ते वट वहा मिल्य मि. निश्र हे हे म्रोट ता Some of the others are staying in Darjeeling.

द्यान्द्रहाहा (or न्यान्द्रा) न्यान्दा Kindly give me another cup of tea.

श्रादेशः न्याद्भाः अप्ताद्भाः विद्याः स्थाः Each man shot one stag.

Or :-

धुः शुः शुर्थः वि. भः पा. पि. प्यदेमीशः रु. रु. सीता

Each man presented a complimentary scarf to the lama.

इरेरेश्व के केरेरे रेखेर विमा

Give each horse a pail of water.

क्षेत्रश्राम् । क्षेत्रश्राम् । Each man carried three big boxes.

वर्तः सुन्तु नाक्षेश्रामावे स्थायाध्येत।

This is the father of both the boys.

दंश चंश प्रांत्र हुए ।

Both of us shot the bear.

वै.मू.शह्रश.तू.चिश्रश.चे.श्रीचश्चाश्चट.।

Both the pretty girls have come.

५५.५८.५.मार्ड्स.मार्ट्स.मी.५५।

Both this and that will be suitable.

द्भ। इस।

Do these two words mean the same?

लम्बा रे.मार्ड्स.माट्ट.र्ट्स.रेना.माङ्गात

Yes, both their meanings appear to be the same.

केंगा वरिते:र्ने नगान्दाने रेने नगान्दा मकिया सम्देन नमान्दाने रेने नगान्दा

Is the meaning of this word exactly the same as the meaning of that word?

लमारा दे.मार्ड्स गादे द्वरमा दर माङ्गा

No, both their meanings are not absolutely the same.

मुन्द्रव्युम्द्रमार्डिट-द्रम्थार्गुःस्द्र।

I want a few grapes.

TIBETAN GRAMMAN.

क्ष त्वुझ ने किने क्ष क्ष क्ष कि प्र । want a lew of those grapes. दर्गेश।

द्यद्वयद्याः ई क्यामी सर

A very little money will do for me,

क्षेम्बिस्य (or न्स्रक्षेम्य) जट क्रिं न दश्य में मिट वर्त मदश אַמיאַבינוֹ אַבים־בֿקן

At sundry (various, or divers) times many Buddhas have appeared in this world of ours.

दे दें दे द्रीया सुसदे महिम्दि से देर्।

The lama was the only man among them.

केंनायानारे देवाय बनीय द्वा। ब्रायाना Why be angry? She is a mere मार्गिय रेरि

child.?

पर महिशा निवट दशमहिमा मेश चिट में Either of these two will do. 351

वित्र मुक्त मुद्रिय अदावित अदावित अदावित Neither of these two will suit. ME. I

क्रेड्स् युना सद देवे बद बस महिना आदं Of the entire thousand men not even one escaped. AZ. ST. STE. I

Examples of SELF, ONE'S SELF, will be found at § 31, iii, IV.

Examples of नहिना नहिन ONE ANOTHER, EACH OTHER, will be found at § 31. vii.

अर्द्रम्य वस्तामा दावि विद्राहस्य अर्थेट. I have never seen such a difficult language. ਕਾਲਾ । (pron. hyung).

2. The following are the Literary equivalents of the above .-मार्था रमा Someone, Somebody, A certain (person)

र्ड विमा Something, A certain (thing.)

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

174

```
ना वश
  तमाद केंद्र
  तमाय लिया
                   Some, Several, A good many, A good deal.
  त्नाद आद
 त्राता.
 ताता. विमा
 श.७मा.
                  Anyone, Anybody, Whoever; or, with negative,
 माट.(ब्रेमा.
                    No one, Nobody.
 N.ME.
                 Everyone, Either, Each; or, with negative, No one,
 אבישבי
                    Neither.
 3.ME.
                 Anything, Whatever. Everything, Either, Each; or,
 उ.ल्मा.
                    with negative, Nothing, None, Neither.
 वस्था.कर्.
 नुन
                 All, The whole, Every, Entire, Complete, All.
 क्ट.का.
 प्यत् विया
                Mere, Sole, Only.
 माविष.
                 Other.
मान्द्रक्रमा
                 Another.
महिमा मिरिमा
                Each other, One another.
₹.
                Euch, Every.
₹.₹.
31.51.
श्राचीरमार्यः
                Various, Sundry, Divers.
श्र.पर्य.
```

भट्ट.	Moet.
मार्थिया	Both.
3c.2.	Few, Little:
अट. ह. लेग	
वनाद.	A few, A little.
वनाव.क्स.	
डेमा	2
व्यवा	
\$5	Self, One's self.
55	Self, One's sect.
C ' ·	
35)
चेड्ची.च.	Same.
予平 4	
रेगा	
5.25.	The very same.
المحد.	
वहःरः	
वर्षःवर्गः	Such.
रे.इ.व.	
राथ.क्षेत्र.	Either, Each of two. Ex. :

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

On each side of the two shorts, of (lake) Mapham (Jäschke).

ধর বুর নারম। Either, Both. Ex.:-

आट'मार्डट रें दे त्मामाध्य दुंब मानेश व। And on either side (i.e. both sides) of the river (Jaschke).

§ 32. ADVERBS.

These are both primitive and derivative. Of Derivatives, some are formed from Pronouns, others from Nouns, and others from Adjectives or Participles. There are also Adverbs of Time, Place, and Manner, Interrogative, Negative, and (added to verbal roots) Relative adverbs.

Those derived from adjectives are formed either by putting the adjective in the terminative case, or by adding to the adjective the expression 53743. It is a common habit, however, in the Colloquial to use an adjective adverbially without changing its form.

Adverbs are always placed somewhere before the verb. Interrogative adverbs come immediately before the verb. Others may be inserted at any convenient place in the sentence, so long as the rule is observed that they precede the verb.

The following are some of the commonest adverbs and adverbial phrases used in the Colloquial

ADVERBS OF TIME.

मार्रेश.	
ৰুমা	When?
페드.	(Added to verbal infinitive) When, At the time of ing.
मार्ड्सःअट	Whenever.
5 ^{≈1} .	(Added to verbal root) When, used relatively; While.
८. क.	Now (at this time); 53.55 Just now. At present.
5:24.2.	Hitherto, Up to now.
₹.23	Then (at that time).

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

रेवश Then (after that). र'दश'छेगाकर Hereafter, Henceforth. del ME. Ever, Always. With negative, Never. Ever, Always, Constantly, Incessantly, etc. दमायर पहिंद When, Just when, About, At the time. व्.व. 1.2 C.MC. **735** Moreover, Furthermore. (Added to root of verb) Ever, with negative Never. 3.2 C. NE. ZE. NE. अक्शश्राशक्राश Now and then, Often, Sometimes, Occasionally, with negative, Seldom. MC.청소. Again, Afresh, Anew. कर पठिया Once. इंट्राम्बर्गः At once, Immediately, Hurriedly, Hastily, Di-**ピガ.灯**に rectly: Once more. र्र्राट्रकर्मार्डेन 2.321 (With negative) Not at all, Never, In no case. श.थश.

```
A snort time ago
                             Formerly, Previously,
원투 A long time ago
भग्रेमिश.तूर. or श्रेनेमिश.त्.
                                 Quickly, Soon, Presently, Directly,
रे.ज्र. or रे.ज्
                                   In a little while, In a few
र्ज:5मा
                                   minutes.
क्वार्यमारेण
            After, Subsequently, Afterwards, Next, Last, In future.
               At last, At length.
र्पोद्ध Already.
2.2c.
5'35' (Vulg.)
ANG Lately, Recently.
ATT Late
NITIAN Early.
त्वार यात्र चेद्राचर Without delay.
मायो Slowly, Gradually, Gently, Softly.
अर्द्भार्निद्धा Last night, Lust evening.
শ্বমান Eventually, Later on, Indfrecily.
```

180.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

(Added to verbal root) Just, Just about, On the point of, Going to.

5'3' Some time ago.

नृत्य, or विन्त्य, or विन्तृ This year.

A Year before last.

र्महाँहा Next year.

প্রকৃতি ব্রাকৃতি মূল্ম

ARRY Yearly, Annually.

के महमायारे प्रतिक Daily.

NE'34 To-morrow.

रेंदेट To-day.

FINE Yesterday.

विनासंदे दे Every day.

कु: इन Some day.

ADVERBS OF PLACE.

पाउँ | Where? Whither? (Also relatively.)

मादा Wherever, Anywhere.

Both 355 and 55 are incorrect. For the former the student should always use 355, or 355, when writing; and, if he chooses to affect the Lhassa pronunciation when speaking, he should say 355, not 355. For 55 he should always write 55, or 55,

यने Over there, Yonder.

Up there.

अ'ने Down there.

WY' Upwards.

ठाइ' Downwards.

A. Downhill. भर्मे सहमार्थमाय सर्वो नातुना त्रांचा U pside down. মের্মা 35'4N' Hence. 5'38' Thence. अन्द्राय Before. Ahead, In front, Onwards, Forwards. विमार्दार्चे Ajar. P. An (Opposite, Over against. र्द्धनायाः Instead of. 3 Just by Close by. क्षा ० त. मृतः स्वासाय Backwards. यु-यान्यायः Outside, Without. ALA Within, Inside, At home. \$5.48! From within, From home. धुः त्रेना दुष: From without. मार्सिताया To the left.

```
নামমামা To the right.
```

মনুমানুর Together, Jointly.

मा समाय Everywhere.

ন্মিন্ম)
ব্ৰক্তিৰ্মে Around, Round about, All round.

দাপুর'ড় Elsewhere.

355 Aside.

NINE Asunder, Apart.

Adverbs of Manner.

or Q5 (The first added to root and the second to infinitive of auxiliary verb) Probably, Likely, Perhaps.

피(고도함·) How?

35.95. (pronounced DIN-DA)

पर्ने वट चित्र

ड्रिश.

ब्रेश.

Thus, So.

'वेश.

र्माः बेरः

2.41.4

र्नादेर Quite so, Just so, Precisely, Exactly.

ইমান্ত্র By degrees. Oradually.

555 (Used with negative.) Quite, Completely, Absolutely, Thoroughly.

देवे नेत्र पुरायस Consequently

महिमाद्या Simply, Merely, Only, Solely.

KE Simply, Merely, Just, Only.

रे स्थापुराव्या Alternatery.

পুথাৰ Almost, Nearly.

अभूमाद्योभः } Together, Jointly, Unitedly.

ATTSNAN Separately, Individually.

NN GNGN Severally.

देंदे नुसंद्र Singly.

सम्बार्भियान्द्रायान्त्र Formally.

Merely, Only, Solely, Entirely.

सर्वहा.

3.735.48 (Used with negative.) At all, On any account.

भनार्थर or भनार्थे Well, with negative, Ill, Bully.

अनाना Better.

WIT AN Best.

WE' Even, Likewise.

उट्यानुसर्क Fairly, Honestly.

उपा प्रश्वा Carefully.

देव देव प्रस्कार Definitely, Punctually, Steadily

निस्राद्राम् वेद Justly, Legally.

रेन्ट्रिंग } Certainly.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

PAN Orally.

KE: Personally, Precisely, Exactly.

न्यर प्राप्त वश Privately.

ट्रेश.रार.

ন্ত্রা ন্র্যাব্রা ব্রা

टट.त्.वेश.वंश.

अर्गुन्नशर्ये पुराद्या Promptly.

अ. द्वनारा नुशः दशः Punctually.

55.43.5 Especially, Particularly.

Ordinarily, Usually, Generally, Universally, Chiefly, Principally.

প্রনাঠ্ড Decidedly, Exceedingly.

닭'독막'다 Clearly, Distinctly, Lucidly, Intelligibly.

বুম'লুব' As a rule, Usually.

यद्रादः Indirectly.

म्पार्मिश्राताः Abuck.

NESN'SN'SN' Diligently, Zealously, Earnestly, Heartily, Genuinely.

पर्नित्रामा Herewith.

교환경'교 Ensily.

ना भे ना भे Gradually, Gently, Slowly, Softly.

5 (Between a duplicated adjective or adverb, with 3 at end of sentence) Of course.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Adverbs of Quantity and Comparison.

पहेंद How much? How many?

यवार्केषः Chiefly, Generally.

WE Even, Likewise.

155 (Used with negative.) Quite, Completely, Absolutely, For the most part, Mostly.

সমস্থ্য Almost, Nearly. With negative, Scarcely.

ਰੱਲ, or in Coll. ਰੰ About, Approximately

झ्नारां } More.

NE. ASI. Most.

Er. Azi. rousi

5.35. Too; or add AT to any root; or add 57.4 as a verb to any root.

र्गोद् चेर Scarcely.

 G_{a} बी.त. Enough

পৃষ্ণ Only. Entirely, All.

र्नेन र Partly.

सदःच

A Silver Much. With EC added, and followed by a negative,

मिन्न्द्रास्ट्रां Many.

म्प्रिस्रुषु राष्ट्राचाः देदः Very many.

186

```
SIC XIT Too much, Too many
$5.35 Few.
 35° Little.
 र्नित A little, A few. Some.
ME.
₹.£.
                  Resides, More yet.
₹.₹८.₩E.
35 NE Too little.
                    Interrogative Adverbs.
मारेर्देशय
मानी देव दमा
חביט.
                    Why?
र्वेश्वादाल
₹.M.
मा.पर्श.
                    How?
इ.जंर. or श्रुक्रर.
חבישב.
미'도치'
                   When?
व्या.
괴.지.
मारु
                   Where? Whither?
यान
ची.प्रां.
                  Whence?
चाट.प्टा.
```

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

How many? How much?

Adverbs of Affirmation, Doubt and Negation.

गनाश.

मायम्बरा

यमास्रास्

MINE.

Yes.

MAE.

यम्बरादेर

प्रमाश र्भेर

जनमार्थः श्रदः व्यम्बाह्य हो द

No.

जश रेवारे.

Rather (i.e. Than) pleases.

मारेमा पुरा

धेर्यद्

Perhaps, Probably.

धेर वर्गे.

म्नाट.भूथ.ग्रोट. मारे भेरड्

At all events, In any case.

वे के मामेर पर

Without doubt, Unhesitatingly.

2.01% न्यमः

Rather, For the most part, Somewhat, Almost, Nearly, with negative, Scarcely.

8.4N.

श.र्थ.

At all, Ever. (With negative) Not at all, Never.

```
E 31.012.
                   Surely, Certainly, By all means.
381mc
                   By no means, Never,
                   Indeed
ट र्ज्ञेमा
           (Added to root of verb), Ever. With negative, Never
21.
 Er.
 सेर्'य
                  Not possessed of, Devoid of.
 N5"
                    Abbreviation of NWT Is not, Are not;
 श्रव.
                     Abbreviation of $1.W5 Is not, Are not.
 र्भेड
```

As regards the Adverbs and Adverbial phrases used in the Literary language, it is 'ardly worth while giving a list of them, as the student can easily find them for himself in Jäschke's or Rai Sarat Chandra Das's Dictionary, or in Csoma de Körös's Grammar, where he will see how and to what extent they differ from the Colloquial expressions.

Examples of the use of Adverbs and Adverbial expressions in the Colloquial:—

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

190

अमादा) विदश (or वेद)।

मिनम्बार्भ्र मुज्जिर। मुयम्य दम् म् वर्म। मिनाक्स भेट मी ५५म। मिरि गुः खुम कुः भूः मा व्याप्यामा यह सः भिर्।

इन्देश रेब मार्केन रेन्।

र व के कर ने कर देर

म्र्रिक्श मिट या समी यज्ञेश दश देव ।मा 小文:文1

हिर्देश्यम्देर्भयम् मिट प्रचे र्स द्वीय सेट । श्रूर रक्ष विमिने श्रूर।

पिट. दाज. हुंद. द्श. व. प्रिश. द्मीट. श्रू दे. पि. जन्मीय अश्रह्मा

अभी स्पर शिष्टि विमेश श्रीटा । म्नियवेनाश्वराष्ट्राष्ट्रीताः देशूरा मिर के शज तुर सूट ट्या

85. (pron. nyúng.) मिंद्र देर क्यायट धेरा वेट त्या। Where are you living

Whiner is the monk going?

Whence comes he?

How is your mother's health?

What is the price of that horse?

What o'clock is it now?

What have you built you er house

Why have you come here?

While the house was being built, it collapsed.

He died about dusk.

When he went home he ate his dinner.

When he was eating, he fell.

How long (how many hours), is it since he died? i.e. was alive.

Have you ever been to Lhasa?

Will you ever go there?

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

अमारा (देशायाः) येदास No, I have never been to Lhasa.

है स उना ८ द्वा स य दर्ने मि से द द द Some day I may go to Lhasa.

ट'र्में अं' त्य' Wट' देवे अ'र्सेटः । (pron.

I have never even been to Chambi.

मुक्सार्थर। भुष्यराह्यान्द्राष्ट्राचा (or आवसा)

Many people have never been to the hills at all.

इ.श्रूचनार्द्रट्यनाक्र्ये, वर्चेना

The hills are very far away.

झ्रसंन्, उट. ब्रम् दि: संस्थः (or ब्रम् देटः

Lhasa is too far away.

<u>र्द्धाःश्रन्रंद्राच</u>्दायम्द्रिर्द्रन्

Moreover, Lhasa is too cold.

रे वसस स्ट्रास्त्र । ५ उट स्ट्रास्ट्र स्ट्रास्ट्र । ५ उट स्ट्रास्ट्र स्ट्रास्ट्र स्ट्रास्ट्र स्ट्रास्ट्र स्ट्रास्ट्र ।

That is not all. There is much more yet. Furthermore, there would not be

भ्र सं ता त्रें ने ने ता त्रसः हें हे ब्रोटाया हें निय

much to do in Lhasa.

I would rather stay in Darjeeling than go to Lhasa.

र्यस्यार्थनः त्र दे न्यमान्युट र्हे क्षासायः

Our troops once went to Lhasa.

५:इंट. (or Vulgar'Co)।. ५:५५.) हर मुहेमादेर ५ में इमें मी भेर धर्दा

They may have to go there again; or, Perhaps they will have, etc.

र्ग्रट.। ट.इ.म्रीट.मी.लीजाजा.दीबेबेबेश.जू.चर्थ.माॐश.

Twelve years ago I went to Europe.

किट स्व में किंग केंद्र सेद। मिंद्र किंग केंद्र स्वेदा How old is that tree?

How old are you?

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

र्वेकर्रेट्सर्भून्य (or न्यून्य) द्या I read that book some time ago.

24. (MC. E.) MC. 4241

र्वेदायार्वेदायहणात्यः यहेर् याचेर्।

रेटस्टिंरणेस्टिन्ग

Anciently (of yore) the five prefixes were pronounced.

Now-a-days they are not pronounced.

I cannot find the book anywhere.

95्गा

192

नाट थिन गुट दश दे द स् रार्वेट मी की

दसन्ये करे नाय भर हेर मुन गुक्

At all events \I do not see it now.

9र्गा

. ९६ इ.स्ना

२र्ने उस प्रा

由台C上東東、南大、高見到C.1

जश्रश्रद्ध यूर्मी।

Come here.

Do not come here.

They went away yesterday.

Go away immediately.

दि ह्या द्वाद मुक्ष द उद महावादी महाद My teacher speaks very distinctly. मेवर्मा

रुषः मून मिश न उटः अर्गेनिश राजेर मी. He always speaks very fast.

. 95मा मिश्राचान पाने प्रशास श्राप्त निर्मिन में I do not understand him easily. 95गा

वरम् वर्षावर्षा

Do not make so much noise.

Dr. 241.47. 24. 21. 45. 42. 40. 40. Why are you talking so loudly? द्वाचारे रेद।

व. भ. वर् हिर् ज. सर् क. यट हा. च. बंब.	This lama	is	only	telling	you	the
নপ্র-জূম্বুশ্।	or wore.					

रिन्द्रान्त्रेयस्प्रिस्प्रान्द्रात् विस्रान्द्रात् क्षान्त्रात् क्षान्त्र क्षान्ति क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र क्षान्त्र कष

মত প্রিন্টির খ্রিনির বিশ্ব পর বিশ্ব or ব্রিব্ধ Probably he will be late to-morrow. অতেনেম।

र्भः रट्ण वाण र्वा केर् स्र्वा र्दर्य र्द्धः Just now it is terribly hot in Calcutta.

हिंद रद में अ दुवा दिसस विद्याद हिर Take the money to court personally.

यु.मी. कट. पट्ट. प्रवेश मायदेश. How old is this little child?

दर्द्रिन्न्स्स्न्याय। What pleasant weather!

प्रेन्द्रिन् भूना शायामा शियाया What a cutting breeze!

प्रेन्द्रिं यम् माप्पापापा What an excellent road!

९२ ९५६ के जाया What an enormous dog!

प्रेन्द्रिने :Wa ना श्रेंन या What a thick branch!

प्रीय क beautiful girl!

हिंदि मुक्त मिट या बदि वर्षे वर्षे देश द्यामा Why are you building this dions

म्मिन्दिः सम्बद्धाः स्प्रः मिन्दुन। मुम्मिन्दिः सम्बद्धाः स्प्रः मिन्दिः तः सुकः स्टिः दक्षः (or Coll. दक्षः)। Why is the child crying like that?

Have all the servants your on ahead?

राचक्रमाठ्ठेश. द. पर्मी. ट्रेस्स. मेर्ट्स. द्वेचाश्राज्य द्वेचेश द्वेचाश्र. व्यंत्र. चेट्र्स. रेट्स. चेत्रश. द्वेचाश. ज. ट्रे. क्य. चेट्र्स.

First you must turn to the right, then to the left, and then go straight on for a distance of about twelve paces.

म्नेर्नेट्र.। मेर्ट्रेन्यश्चार्यः शक्तः तस्ट्रिट्रायः

When you reach the roan end. shout to me.

मद्यद्रिय है है माश्माय सेर्।

There are rate everywhere in this house.

म्यान्द्रहे हे मिटलसम्हे ए मुटन

How far is it from Calcusta to Darjeeling?

नगर हिंग हिंगूट दशका का के से रे

Is Kalimpong close to or far away from Darjeeling?

न्याया व पद्या द अमार्थे द अवार्थे To pray is of course very excellent

§ 33. Postpositions.

What we call PREPOSITIONS, such as Of, To, In, On, By, With, From, Abort, Concerning, etc., and certain Prepositional phrases like By reason of, For the sake of, With respect to, According to, Instead of, etc., are rendered in Tibetan by Postpositions, some of which are simple, and others compound.

The SIMPLE POSTPOSITIONS consist of the primitive particles which are used in the formation of the Cases. (See § 25.)

As regards the Nominative Case, no such particles are used.

As regards the Vocative Case. (See § 25, 11.)

As regards the Accusative Case, no particle is necessary, but if desired the Postposition Q may be inserted. Ex.:—

व्यामु सं मुस्या में में प्रमान

Or:-

He loves the girl.

विश्व वु से ता वुस्य में हो दे की वर्षा

With this case the postpositions [37], As far as, Up to, To. Till, are used.

N.B.—The following verbs may be used either with the bare accusative or with that and the postposition $|\mathbf{Q}|$

ब्रेर.प, निर्दात, त्रुवाप, ब्रून्प, To give, to deliver.

बूब्दा, बूदादा, To teach.

ABST. A.95T, To tell, To explain.

बूंदाप, सुदाद्विवश्वाम, सुदावद्रावाम, To show.

g'5, To petition, To beg, To offer.

35'L', To fear, To be afraid of.

त्र्मादाः To strike against.

देनाश ने द्वार To help, To aic

ABTWE'D' To bring.

As regards the Genilive Case, the particles are \$\empty\$, \$\extstyre{\empty}\$, \$\empty\$, \$\empty\$, \$\empty\$, \$\empty\$, \$\empty\$, \$\empty\$.

भुनामा अमा। The sheep's head, or the head of the sheep.

मूद्र निर्दे। The bull's horn, or the horn of the bull.

यतः भूर गुःभूर त्यम् संत्म। A dialect of the Colloquial.

वनायेव ने निरं | Price of bread.

१ अश्र में ने कि The foolishness of pride.

PE'U'Aदेवे মহ বৃষ্ণ The height of this house.

मेशरमर्गिकेटा में द्वारात्री अव। पर मी आपराय or रेगाय। अमाश र्शिय मी मिन्रश। मद्भारिय देवे अर्थे देशका येष्ठे दे सम्बद्धारा बर्द्र-भागा मध्येत सर्गा

196

The woman's name. The danger of uncertainty. The wisdom of the East. The law of custom.

The height of that house. The end of a chapter.

The handle of un acc.

The colour of a turquoise.

As regards the Dative Case, the particle used is A (see § 25, V). As regards the Agentive Case, the particles used are N, AN, MN, गुंस, देस, and धंस (see § 25, VI). Ex.:--

मिंश वु में वुस्रश ये वेद के वद्या

मिश्रःश्वां रूरे वश्रद् श्रेटः।

व्युमानीस ज्ञान जंनी वर्मा। ८.४८.चीश्चरत्रःक.रे.श्चेनश्चर्भर

हिंद्गीश्वरम् द्वानायम् वर्षेत्रस्य द्वा

विवे आयस (or यस) विविध्युच His father taught him. XE: 1

पूर्वे ज्ञाना जुराजा मा निमासूर। स = मुन्याया देना शुक्र मा वर्गा भूना यस नेश री प्रस्थारु वज्ञें भूर नेतृ Discipline impror all men. में दरमा

He loves the girl.

The hawk killed the pigeon.

The dragon is eating the moon.

I have read that book.

Have you hurt your finger?

His companion did the work.

Weeds are choking the corn.

द्वाद र्स्ट्र मीश सर्वस्य सर्वस्य व्य हैं।

Joy will sometimes kill people.

र्ट्यानीसार्विसेर्यान्वेसात्र्ना।

'oney ruined him.

इ.पर्शाम्यार्थ्यास्त्रीसार्श्वरा।

This man helped him.

र्द्राय भेशादि क्ष्मश्र शिंद or र्ट्डिं The heat killed my horse.

As regards the Locative Case the particles used are :-

$$\left\{\begin{array}{c} \Omega^{*} \\ \end{array}\right\} In, On, At, By, etc.$$

वर्क् द्रश Through.

5

5 | In. On, At, By, etc

۲.

1.

(See § 25, vii.)

As regards the Periodal or Durational Case, the particles used are and At. In. During, etc.

(See § 25, viii.)

As regards the Modal Case, the particles used are :-

AN By, Through, By way of, Via.

55° Against, With, e.g., with verbs of meeting, fighting, preving respect to, visiting, etc.

N' (Silent) With, Because, Since, etc.

Fr. (Rather literary) By, Through, On account of, For, By reason of stc.

198

(See § 25 ix.)

As regards the Ablative Case, in the limited sense in which it is used in this Manual, the particles used are:—

CAN Than, Except, Save, But, But for, Besides, etc.

(See § 25, x.)

As regards the Terminative Case, which in this Manual includes certain aspects of what is usually called the Ablative Case, the particles used are:—

5, 5, 5, 5, and A, signifying Direction towards, and 5, and and, signifying Direction from. (See § 25, xi.)

Of the COMPOUND POSTPOSITIONS, most are used with the Genitive Case. The following are a few of them:—

र्देशयाः स्रोदायाः	About, Concerning. Regarding, With respect to.
र्नेन व	On vehats of, For the sake of, With the object of, For the purpose of, In order to.
क्रिक्टीशः	On account of, By reason of, In consequence of, Through, By. Because of.
원C.ơ. }	Above (on top ot), Upon.
W'A' or W '3"}	Above (Higher up).
बेट.कंट.	According to, As, Like.
र्गीयय	Amidst, Among, In the middle of.

```
म्याय.
手紅」と
                   Behind, Back, Afterwards, Next.
चिंची.ज.
                   Before (place), In front of.
                   Into the presence of.
                   Instead of, In place of.
बट.ब्रह्म.
                   From within.
שבישי
                   Inside, Within, In.
 ¥.17.
                   Joset by, At the side of.
3
                                         Close to.
 विषात्रेंचें (used with वृक्षा)
 TNA During.
 द्रमुख्यः } On the edge of.
 32.ch.
 यह । In reply or answer to, In return for
              Below, Under, Beneath, After.
  The following are used with the Accusative.
  46.213212.
  55 34 With, i.e., Along with, Together with, In company with.
   25.0981.01
```

200

55.35.37 or 55.35.5. Equal to. 553 Ti Near to.

55 35 Far from.

at Until, For (time), As far as, For (space).

अन्तिन्थः } Save, Except.

EXAMPLES.

दसदेव दें प्याक्ट सं नेस गुर्भे

I know all about that.

मिथामिदे रेंद् स्था वा येव रादे वमानी सूर क्रम थ. बर. र् श. दर.।

Ask him all about his journey to Tibet.

९५ दें द्रम्मे वर महेब्से ५५मा

श्रे तुः यो वे : नेव : ग्रेश : वे : श्रेट ।

मिन्नोरायदे बटायलेश प्रशास देता।

द्रमन संक्रें अम वद निहेश व द्र्ली मी

वर्गे में नुश्य र रेड़।

रूपे. स. मी सिट. था मीटश. ७८. हा. रट. थ्री 95ना

दर्भार्यामार्थे।

मि के मिल न रेब राकेदे रूट र र सिर्धाय 351

भामादेदे या राया ने सामक्ष्मा अ। हिंदानी निर्मा ते देश धार्ते दृष्टा सत्रमादः 起不在时时三天

This is not according to reason.

The people died in consequence of the famine.

He behaved like a fool.

The soldiers used to march after the Amban.

There is not much snow on tha. hill.

Do not walk before me.

They came into the presence of the Dalui Lama.

Let me write in reply to that letter.

Your servant may go with the coolies.

यानी मिदाया श्रुमा (or नरापुः) एप्टर Come with me as far as that house.

§ 34. Conjunctions.

1. In Tibetan the use, as in English, of Conjunctions like And and But is generally avoided, and the sentence is reconstructed, so as to begin with a subordinate participial clause, of which clauses there is often a long string before the principal verb is reached.

EXAMPLE:-

Here the sentence is turned into: That house not being mine, I cannot give it to you.

Not being, the negative form of the participle present of the verb To be, is rendered ইার্ম্ম The affirmative form Being, would be অব্যাস, or মার্ম্ম

2. But where the Disjunctive idea is sought to be expressed the form 5'WI is used thus:—

Here the sentence is turned into: Though that house is mine, (yel) I cannot give it to you.

3. It would be quite allowable, however, to avoid using the Conjunctions altogether, and simply say:—

4. Instead of JUC, as above, UC alone, or JC according to the final of the preceding word, or the gerundial particles $\hat{\zeta}$ (after final ζ), $\hat{\zeta}$ and $\hat{\zeta}$) or $\hat{\zeta}$ (after final ζ), $\hat{\zeta}$, $\hat{\zeta}$, $\hat{\zeta}$, and $\hat{\zeta}$) and $\hat{\zeta}$ (after final ζ), $\hat{\zeta}$, $\hat{\zeta}$, $\hat{\zeta}$, and $\hat{\zeta}$ and all vowels) may be used. Thus:—

मिट या या मी दिते : भेद प्या (or प्रिन्दे) Though that house is mine, I cannot give it to you.

- 6. As illustrative of similar formations in connection with verbs other than অব্যা and অব্যা, note the following:—

माहरा सहारो जनरा राजहार हैं है जेहि के Though it was snowing hard I solow for Darjeeling.

व्याम्भव। मारमा भराज्ञा ववमा गुरा राहे हे म्रीराया

Ditto.

कर्षास्त्र विश्व (or विवश्वरित) As, since, or because it was not raining I set out for Darjeeling.

कर.त.भ.वनश.वंश.वंर.श्रट.।

As it was not raining he set out.

हरामित्ववार्दाः (or द्ववादायः) As it is not raining I shall set out.

कर धारी प्रवास प्राप्त प्राप्त प्रमुश्नी श्री It is not raining, but I shull not set out.

7. The expression Either ...or, is rendered by ঋচিব, or by এমা বুঝা, etc. or by ঋচিবিব Thus:--

लट.व.कर.त.मटश.मीच.ठ में.रूरे।

Or :-

कराध्यामाद्राप्तवनात्र्रोरेर।

Either it is about to rain or about to snow.

Or :--

करःयाधार्यन्त्रमाद्रसात्वयात्वे देत्।

क्षात्वर्धः जूटः । लटः शुबे थे ट्रिटे स्त्रै ज्ञास्त्रचा च चर्चश्वरः जी. चार्बु, च्. लटः शुबे थे. ट्रिटे प्रची. ची.च्टे

Either, lord, you will go or you will hang.

८ अदा ध्येदा

Or :-

Either I am right or wrong.

ट.र्चा.च.लूब.बस.सूब.बस।

इन्द्रः व्यत् न्यामास्य स्त्रम्।

Is the horse in the stable or not!

s. If is rendered by the expression স্থান্ত or স্থান্ত্ৰ or, as is more usual by বু alone. Thus,:—

मात्रा स्त्र प्रमादा स्त्र (or र्त्ना क) If I am fight, or if were right.

Or simply:—

ट:दमायर्भेर्ज (or प्रमान)।

Ditto.

The second and third persons also take this 🗓 or 🤫 or 🏋 Thus:

· हिन्द्रमायाध्यद्भाव (or प्रदुष्णव)।

If thou art, or wert, right.

्रिन्माराख्यर्थर (or पर्नुमार्थ)।

If he is, or were, right.

So with the verb To have :-

দ্মে নহাঁর মই অই অই (or বহু প্র)। If I have, or had good fortune.

And similarly for the other two persons.

204

With verbs other than W5 and A5A (To be, or To have), the conditional sign 5 is simply added to the verbal root, Present, or Perfect, for all persons. Thus:—

ਰੋ'ਝੇ ''ਤ But if, is confined to Literary Tibetan.

v. Expressions like Ago, and Since, in the sense of From the time that, are rendered thus:--

दशःचे.पत्रशःष्रःगुःचाश्रेष्रःश्रूटः।

Or .-

दश्यत्यः च त्रश्यः वस्याव्यः मासुसः सदः ।

Three years ago I ate meat; or, It is three years since I ate meat; or, I have not eaten meat for three years.

10. Our common conjunction And is expressed by 55° meaning with, used as an enclitic, but only the first two nouns in a series are connected by it, however numerous the series may be. Thus:

र् अः र्केर् र्रः र् अ व्यास राष्ट्र के यस सु Time and tipe and death tarry for nobody.

Between two Imperatives, especially in Literary Tibetan, And rendered by W. Thus

्रीमा व्यान्धाः भीमा। Come and see.

In Literary Tibetan, moreover, in addition to 55° and A', And and But are rendered by WE and ME, and by the gerundial particles

35, 95, or 85, and 5, 5 or 85, especially in sentences in which And occurs frequently, and it is desired to vary the particle. Thus:—

कुष्ट-जुन्नश्चरा । व.ज. इ. ब्रुट-सिमीज्य परीट-य।

ट्रिन्-र्नाक्षके निट सर्वे पः स्व ।

नायने द्रासद्भिः वेशः न्दास्य विद्रः नायदः व वस्रयः उदः वेशः ने हेन्यायः यः गुनः न्दरः देः श्चिं यः वसः नुः न्दरः यः वस्रयः उदः व्यदः गुदः। नुस्रयः योदः व। दः वेष्णदः संप्येदः विद

Eating flesh and drinking blood (Das).

Tall and well made. (D.)

Heat is hurtful (but) cold is beneficial. (D.)

As you are of high and noble birth. (D.)

If I have prophecy and know all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have all faith, so as to remove mountains, but have not love, I am nothing. (1 Corinthians xiii. 2.)

Come ye out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord. And touch no unclean thing; and I will receive you, and will be to you a Father, and ye shall be to me sons and daughters, saith the Almighty. (2 Corinthians vi. 17, 18.)

EXAMPLES :-

अट.कुरा.प्रता।

206

And behold.

वेमग्रयम्भरभर्भेरपमरेर।

There is no sugar either.

वे मायामेरा

Nor milk.

वे केंद्रणद्र स्ट्रा

Nor milk-jug.

र्भरणदार्देरायद्वेशव।

However, if you want them.

देन्या विस्त्रान्य प्रमास प्रदेश प्राप्त मासूद Then the judge said to the prisoner. 7.551

59 मुझ पुरा देश दर्श मुन्द वा पहुट निवा In that case I shall acquit you.

माण्या

व वर्गेद्रायम्म मर्द्रमा

Well, don't be angry.

The Literary equivalent of WATTE But, However, is QATTE!

12. Whether is expressed by using the interrogative duplicative suffix. Thus :-

टर्नि व लूर दशकेर दशका नेश्नी 9591

Whether I um right or not, who

देविग्रिम्प्ये क्यं सेक्क्स ट्रस मेश गु ग्रेंद्र।

Whether it is correct or not, I do not know.

कर.व.चव.लूट.ट्स.स.लूट.शंश.ड्रर.वंच. गुःरेर्।

Whether it will rain or not, who can say?

ल वेर सूट त्याम सूट सूट रट नेश चेश Whether he set out or not, you know. गुप्तन्गा

13. On may be expressed either as explained in clause 7 of this & or thus :-

मि ज्ञासनीयर्मामक्रमानीयर्मा Is he hungry or thirsty?

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

14. As to the use of Conjunctions with Numerals, see § 26. II.

§ 35. THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB W5T To be.

The primary meaning of this verb is To exist, To be present, but it is often used attributively, i.e., as a mere copula to connect subject and attribute and also as an auxiliary to other verbs.

As a substantive verb and when used attributively it may be conjugated thus:—.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Affirmative.

८ वर्रेडच्रेर्।	I am here.	टर्के वर्ते उ [.] स्त्रे ।	We are here.
हिंदिई उपेंद or	Thou art here.	<u> </u>	
२५ुना मिन्देने इंग्लॅन, or		or पर्ना।	You are here.
वर्मा, or ॲर्प्स्रेर्	He is here.	मिर्के विशेष्ठ स्थेर , or विशेष	They are
(pronounced yo'-a-re')	.)	3341, or what 351	пете.

There being no difference between the singular and plural constructions, only the singular will henceforth be given.

w5 and Q57, connected as above with the third person, may also be used for phrases like There is, There was, There are, There were, etc. Thus:—

मूट निर्देश प्रदेश क्रिट सुमाहा सुमाहा There are thirty huts in this village

W5'5'5' also may apparently be so used when an emphatic or positive statement is intended. Thus:—

देवे य ने श्रेट अमादश रेंड प्रदेश Is there snow on that hill or not?

व्यम्य। व्यन्धः विम्याः व्यन्धः

No, there is not.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

According, however, to Mr. C. A. Bell, W5 T35 implies uncertainty

future root WE for all persons, is sometimes used for the present tense, when vagueness or indefiniteness is implied. Thus :-र्ट्सिनित उट्यारीमशास्त्र रे निम्हार के There are wild animals down in that valley.

ME.1

An Intensive form of W5'4' is \$15'4' similarly conjugated, but not now in use.

An elegant I iterary form, not much used however, is:-

মহুধা

I am.

न्द्रि.

Thou art.

सकेश, or गुरुत, or सकेशपार्थेव। He is.

And the Respectful form is :-

चिवाश.

I am.

צובע.

Thou art.

प्रबुपास, or सद्दः, or.

He is.

Negative of W5.21

E'5'5'851

I am not there.

मिं5'वर्र'दे'ते, or अवित्या। Thou art not here.

मिंदि रें उमेर, or रिदर्म, or मेर He is not here.

Interrogative Form.

ঘমণ, or অন্দা, or অন্। \
Am I here?

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

हिंदिरे दे दे दे प्राप्त (or मा), or किंदिर दे दे दे प्राप्त (or मा), or किंदिर दे दे दे प्राप्त (or मा), or किंदिर दे दे दे प्राप्त (or मा), or किंदिर दे दे प्राप्त (or मा), or किंदिर दे प्राप्त (or मा), or किंदिर दे प्राप्त (or मा), or किंदिर केंदिर मा) किंदिर केंदिर माना (or मार्था), or किंदिर मार्था (or मार्था), or किंदिर मार्था (or मार्था), or किंदिर मार्थ (or मार्था), or किंदिर मार्थ (or मार्था), or किंदिर मार्थ (or मार्थ), or किंदर मार्थ (or मार्थ (or मार्थ), o

Attributive.

「四門道「诞子」 I am good. 一覧子、四門道「诞子', or 马子門 Thou art good. 「西山田」道「诞子', or 马子門', or 诞子' He is good. ロマストー

Colloquially, W^{-1} is sometimes pronounced Ya'-pu, instead of Ya'-po.

In some phrases, like the following, 357 and not 35 is used with the first person; probably because there is really no nominative "I," but the construction is "There is to me."

Moreover, the phrase is conjugated with में, etc. Thus:—

द.मूटमी दर्मा I am cold.

द.द.मी दर्मा I am ill.

ट देन्सणी वर्ग टाम्ब्रेंग्से भे ५५ग।

210

I am hungry.

I am thirsty.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

This may be formed just like the Present Indicative, the context generally sufficing to show what the tense is. Thus:-

Affirmative.

M. ME. E. 32. 3. 012 1

I was here yesterday.

मिश्रद हिंदि दे उपेद, or पद्मा Thou wast here yesterday.

मिसट मिर्दे डि.सेर, or दर्मा or

He was here yesterday.

ळॅर्यरेर्

र्षेत्याः सुना या व्यत्

I was rich once.

ब्रॅब भ मिन धुन रिंग्सेन, or बहुन। Thou wast rich once.

र्हेड योहि युनारियिं, or वित्ना, or He was rich once.

व्यद्भार दारे

Apart from contextual indications as above, this tense may also be formed with the aid of the auxiliary verbs भेदरा and इट्या Thus :-

Affirmative.

८ वरे उ स्पर म स्वा

I was here.

sionally W5'4'351

मित्रैं रूप्पेर यदेतुं, or occasionally He was here.

ल्ट्रच प्रम्

Negative.

८ वहें दुः धाँद धा होत्रः (vulgarly हात्)। I was not here.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

हिंदिर्दे उ.स्ट्रियास हेत्। सिंदिर स्ट्रिस्ट्रियास हेत्।

Thou wast not here.

He was not here.

Attributive.

दःषुनार्थे ॲर्स्स प्रेम्। हिंद्र सुनार्थे ॲर्स संस्त्र। विस्तृतार्थे ऑर्स संस्त्र।

I was rich.

Thou wast rich.

He was rich.

Interrogative.

or धेर्य।

ট্রি: বের্ন স্থানির বৃদ্ধা (or হাষা Wast thou here?

or হা"), or অবি: মান্দ্রবৃদ্ধা (or

হাষা: or মা)।

मि प्री द्वारी प्राप्त मार्थ (or प्राप्त , Was he here?

And so forth.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Same as the Imperfect Indicative. Thus:-

ર્ફેનુ ભારાવર્ડ રાખેડ | I have, or had, been here before.

And so forth, throughout all constructions.

FUTURE.

The Future Simple is expressed Colloquially by WK for all persons.

Thus :-

Affirmative.

Ľ.

I shall be here.

195.

95'5 WE

Thou wilt be here.

M.

He will be here.

212

Attributive.

CWITTING or, in Literature, I shall be good. चडर.सूर.पंचीर.रू।

निर्भारियाः or, in Literature, Thou will be good. वबर.तूर.प्रीर.रू।

শিখ্দারিউন, or, in Literature, He will be good. वजट.तूर.प्वीर.स्

N.B. -5 or 53 in Literary Tibetan should not be used as a mere copula to connect subject and attribute, nor should it be used substantively, but only as an auxiliary to verbs.

Negative (Col.).

दम्दें उसे खेटा । म्प्रमार्थिक स्प्रमा

I shall not be here.

I shall not be good.

And so throughout, inserting & before WE'

Interrogative (Col.).

593 WE LA ट.लम.त्र.लट.टम. द'वर द'शे ऑद दश ट.लच.त्र.श्र.ल्ट.ट्य

Shall I be here?

or ALTA | Shall I be good?

Shall I not be here?

Shall I not be good?

And so throughout. Also with W, or W. Thus:-दलपार्च खलूदा। Shall I be good?

The other tenses (which really represent the Conditional) are as follows :--

Literary.

「名字子でする」 I shall be here.

And so for all persons.

८१९५७५ पर मुर राधेब वे। I would be here.

हिं तर्रे द स्पर्म मुर ध त्र्म में, Thou wouldst be here.

or 3551

मिट १९ उ.मर चुर परेर रें, He would be here.

ा तरुमान्त्री। ट'दर्रे'रु'र्थर्सुर'यर्थ्यर्'रेर्रे

हिर्दर् के लिंद्र सर मुर सप्तर्तुना में ।

विंद्र प्रदेश के प्रत्य प्रतास के प

I would have been here.

Thou wouldst have been here.

He would have been here.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Phrases like If I am, If I be, Should I be ...then...I will or would be; or, If I were...then...I would be, or would have been, are formed, for the present tense, by using the expression \(\Pi\)\(\Tilde{\Pi}\)\(\Tild

Attributive Present.

माभार माभार

For the past tense the construction is similar, save that \(\overline{\pi} \) \(\text{CPUS,} \) etc., for Would be, and \(\overline{\pi} \), or \(\overline{\pi} \), or \(\overline{\pi} \), or \(\overline{\pi} \) for Would have been, are u-ed instead of \(\overline{\pi} \); though for Would be \(\overline{\pi} \) may also be used.

राष्ट्रनाराष्ट्रन, or हिन्दार्भ, or हिन्दार्भ, or comfortable.

वर्तुमा, or चुरा।

मिं धुनार्शिष्ठित (or ८५नान) ही If he, etc., he would be, or would have been, comfortable.

Substantively (Col.).

The construction is just the same as when used attributively.

Negative.

Same construction, but with মৃদ্ধ instead of আঁহ'ৰ', or এন্দাৰ Thus :-

रायुना सामित्र मेर्ने रासि से सिरा

If I am not, etc., I will not be comfortable.

The Literary attributive construction is :-

ट.सेचारा लूरे थे परे पर उपीर है।

If I am rich I shall be happy.

ट युमे र्स अर् न वर पर मु र स्पेन ने । If I were rich I would be happy.

दःश्रुमार्थे प्रिं-४ वर्षे वरः सुर्यः प्रिंन है।

Had I been rich I would have been happy.

POTENTIAL.

Phrases expressive of ability to be present, or ability to be anything (e.g. good), are rendered with the aid of \$7.4 To be able, or by that and other auxiliaries, added to the root of WTT.

Present.

द्भित्र प्रिंत् मृत or मृत प्रदा or मृत I can be here. गु र्भव।

ट'अन' रा अन or बन अट or बन I can be good. में प्रवा

मिंदिन्दिर्देश्चित्रं विवा or व्याधिदः, Thou canst be here. or मून गुःरेड्।

मि.लामी.चा.लार.स्यां or समालाटा He can be good. ा व्यानि हरी

Past.

I could be here.

E'Wनार्थे ऑर् मुर्य या जैर

क्विं प्रति रें कुर्य या जैर

मिला could be good.

He could be good.

PROBABILITY.

Phrases expressive of likelihood or probability of being present, or of being anything (e.g., good), are rendered by means of Thus, colloquially:—

N.B.— অব্স্লু, আেন্লু, and similar expressions are sometimes written অব্স্লু, আেন্লু, etc. The correct form is probably লু, but this is not quite clear.

Past.

महिमा नेद्र'द्र'द्र'द्र' प्रदेश प्रदेश or प्रदुमा। I might be here.

मिंद्र'द्र' प्रदेश (or प्रदुमाय) भेद Thou mightest be here

य'प्रदेश or भेद्र'म्।

मिंद्रेड भेद्र'य (or प्रदुमाय) भेद He might be here.

यप्रदेश or भेद्र'म्।

Similarly with WATT Good, instead of R5.3. Here.

Negative.

As regards the phrases in which ঊর্যন্ত্র and ঊর্ল্ occur, the negative construction is to change these into ইার্যন্ত্র or ইার্ল্, or হার্ল্ Ex.:—

८.पर्ने इ.स्. प्राची होत्याप्त | Perhaps I shall not be here.

Literary.

This construction is in \$550 To be possible, combined, sometimes with the Verbal Root, but usually with the Infinitive in the Terminative case. Thus:—

धेव वे।

দেই ক্রম্বির্থন (or আই) খ্রীর্থন I might not be there.

다음·동·땐숙·디자· (or 땐숙·) 횟숙·디땐숙·즉 | I might have been there.

There is also another construction in TATTO calculate, reckon, used thus:—

रे.डेर.लुक्चमाः.।

218

It may be so; I reckon, or guess it is so.

HORTATIVE.

Phrases like Must, Ought, Should (in these senses), Need, Want, etc., to be, are rendered by means of $5\overline{\eta}$ N'U', or perhaps more Colloquially $5\overline{\eta}$ 'A', or by that and other auxiliaries, added to the root of \overline{W} 5'U'. Thus:—.

Present. .

Past.

নির্দ্র নির্দ্ধান্ত কর্ম । should have been here. To me it was necessary to be here.

আই ।

আই বেই ই অই ইন্মির হাইই , or ইন্মা Thou shouldst have been here.

আই বি ই অই ইন্মির নির্দ্ধান্ত কর্মা He should have been here.

আই ।

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Or (instead of 35) WT, or 359 for all persons.

N.B.—If there is an adverb to show the tense, the Past may be constructed like the Present.

PURPOSIVE.

Phrases like That...may or might be; In order that...may or might be; So that...may or might be; In order to be, etc., are expressed by means of the Infinitive put in the Genitive Case and followed by 5372 or, in Literary Tibetan, 555, or 535

= वर् ड सर्मा

That I may (or might) be here.

मिंग्डंब रें भेंद्र राते देव या

So that he may (or might) be saje.

The Literary construction is to put \widetilde{W}_{7}^{*} in the Terminative Case followed by \mathfrak{Z}^{*} or \mathfrak{Z}^{*} in the Genitive Case, and winding up with \mathfrak{Z}^{*} . Thus:—

にW子にもg (or gr) 名音 | That I may or might crist.

Or the construction may be in Anti- put in the Genitive Case and followed by 35. Thus:--

र्रे. र्ना. श्राह्म. स्र. न्हिना र् त्र्नुर. द्वे. That they may all be one (John xvii. 21):

IMPERATIVE

মিন্ন does not seem to possess any Imperative Root of its own.
Regarded as a substantive verb, its Imperative would perhaps best be expressed, as in Literary Tibetan, by মেন্দ্রম্বা, or, more emphatically, মিন্দ্রম্বান্তিনা, literally Become being, or Begin to exist. Thus:—

कृष्-तृमुद्रात्याद्र रिज्ञा Be here at midday.

Such an expression, however, would probably never be used in fact. A Tibetan would ordinarily say:—

क्रीरमुद्रायाद्गरी . Come here at midday.

If the idea of origination, or becoming be implied, the proper Imperative would probably be at Negative & A a complete.

Colloquially the Imperative of 35 4, or, more elegantly, 4954 or respectfully AE54 To make, To do, To act, might be brought into requisition. Thus:—

हैन'र्मुट'य'त्रे'र्''दें पुर्श'(or better Be here at midday; i.e., Make to be here, etc.

(N.B.—회자 is vulgar Colloquial. 회 is sometimes used instead of 되자, but 되자 seems more correct.)

Negative :-

Note that in prohibitions the Imperative takes the Present Root of the verb.

When used attributively the Imperative of \widetilde{W}_{5} 'U is, in the Colloquial, formed with the auxiliary verbs \widetilde{J}_{5} 'U', \widetilde{J}_{5} 'U' and \widetilde{W}_{5} 'U' just mentioned. Thus:—

सर्नेनिस पानेर, or नुस, or मीस, or सिर् | Be quick.

Negatively :-

Another way, which, however, is rather Hortative than Imperative, to use the auxiliary verb 5 (1) In this case, there being no real

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Imperative root, and what is said being only a statement of fact and not a command, the negative 취, instead of 취, is used. Thus:-

विदः सं दर्गेश।

Do not be afnaid. Literally, Fearing, or fear, is not necessary.

This also, however, may be expressed in the usual way. Thus:-हिन्यासानुन् (or सामनुन् or सामहिन्) Do not fear; ie., Do not make or स'लेड य'नेड ।

The enclitic particles 37 (after final 7, 5 or 7 and after anything in the Colloquial), ব্লা (after all vowels, or after final দ, ব, ਲ', ਨ', or ਘ'), and ਕੈਸਾਂ (after final ਕਾਂ), are only used for peremptory orders and stern commands. Ordinarily they are omitted then the order is softened in various ways, e.g. by using the polite expression रेम्डा नेर, or the still politer one रेम्डा महर Please. Thus :--

चद्व.चद्व.चंवट.र्माश.चवट.।

Please be careful..

र्श्वटाहे सेदायास नेदार मास नेदा

Please do not be cruel.

When addressing equals or inferiors familiarly, the following constructions may be adopted :-

अर्गेन्स रें ने देंदर or निर्म निर्म दर। Now then, be quick; or Do be देव देव ने ने प्रा

Do be punctual.

A more Literary form would be :-

श्रिम्मार्ग्याच्यान्य नियः स्वाप्यादः।

Now, do be comforted.

PRECATIVE.

This is formed with the aid of Literary 表可 or Colloquial 习る可 (the Perfect Root), Imperatives of the verb 3574 To allow, added in Colloquial to the Root, or, in Literature, to the Terminative case of the Infinitive.

222

Thus :-

८.२८.ग्र.च्यूर.चढ्या ८८८ राज्य प्रतास्त्रमार्स्य। ट.रट. त्.लर्. चक्रमा (क्रमा) र्माशामायट or रेन्स नेर । ८.२८.स.ल्र.चळ्या (क्या) २८.। ८ दर रे जिंद चढुमा छ। मिंदर गें लेंद्र महमा दश मिंद दर ये व्याप्त महमारी व्याप विशादनदार्थे अद्यावस्यानी देदायशः or पर्वेगालट. दश

Let him be first.

I shall not let thee be first.

Will he let me be first?

Literary.

ट.रट.चूर्यर.केब.क्या।

Let me be first.

Or :- The root of the verb W5'U' may be put in the terminative case, and the auxiliary verb ANA'A' used. Thus :-

८.र्ट.स. अर्.र.मास्यार्थ।

Pray let me be first; I beg you to let me be first.

PERMISSIVE.

This is formed with the aid of 574 To be allowed.

द्विर उ. सर् क्या or क्या मा सर्। मुद्दिन्दिन् जं केन् निम्ति प्रमा Thou art allowed to be here. मित्रै उर्भेर हेन or हेन नित्रना ८.५१. इ.स.र. क्याराधेद or क्या सिंट । I was allowed to be here.

I may be here. I am allowed to be here.

He is allowed to be here.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

223

Interrogatively :-

८. ५५. २. जूरे. क्र्मा. मध्या

May I be here? Am I allowed to be here?

८.५५.२.जू. कुन.ची. माम। ८.५५.२.जू. कुन.ची. भूर.५मा

Am I not allowed to be here?

ट्येर्डिंड ऑर्क्निया धोने नहार or देनि Was I not allowed to be here?

OPTATIVE.

This is formed with the aid of An, the Imperative of WEN.
To come. Thus:—

「(A') 子子で、(ロ') 項目! Oh, or Would, that I were there.

The construction is the same for all persons.

In Literary Tibetan :-

다. (이) 국·중·전국·디즈·미즈 | Would I were there.

And so for all persons.

INFINITIVE.

(e.g., good). To be present, To exist. Or, attributively, To be anything

ऑर्प्स्प्रिय। To have been, etc.

ऑट मूं (or ऑट मुं) धीदा। To be about to be.

In Literary Tibetan the Infinitive is also $\widetilde{\mathbb{W}}_{7}^{-}\mathbb{W}_{7}^{-}$, but it is often seen in the terminative case, as $\widetilde{\mathbb{W}}_{7}^{-}\mathbb{W}_{7}^{-}$. Thus:—

हिर्ने ... ह्रॅन्य:ब्रेन :स्र्रा विवास्त्र ।

We know that thou art a teacher.

That is, We know thee TO BE a teacher.

Again:-

हेर्-गुंब-रट-बु-लॅर्-पर- (or लेब-पर-)

Whom makest thou thyself?
Literally, Who thinkest thou that
thou art? That is, Who thinkest
thou thyself TO BE?

Colloquially these would be:-

हिंद हिंद दिन विन विद्या (or बेद दा') We know thee To BE a teacher.

ट.कूश.चेश.की.लूर।

ট্রি-দূরিমান্ত্র প্রতিষ্ঠিত (or অব্যা) Who thinkest thou thyself to be?

Sometimes the plain root is found in Literary Tibetan used in an Infinitive sense. Thus:--

रे न्म मिस मिंद प्रस में माना स के दि न्द न They supposing him to be (have been, or that he was) in the company (Luke ii. 44).

Where mandatory Imperative verbs like Tell. or Order, govern (in English) an Infinitive, the proper way of rendering the phrase in Tibetan is to turn the Infinitive into an Imperative. Thus:—

क्रिंथ कुँ दें स वुद्या

Tell him not to be late

र्हें हैं वा क्या प्रायम या पर दें दें पीना हैना Order them to be here at dawn.

471

PARTICIPLES.

মৃত্য having only one root, the Present and Past Participles are the same and exactly like the Infinitive. Thus:-

ब्यूड्र Being; ब्यूड्य Been.

The Compound Perfect Participle is W5 21 Wary Having been.

In Colloquial the Future Participle is Africa or WITH About to be.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

PERIPHRASTIC PARTICIPLE:

in the Colloquial this is \widetilde{W}_{5} \widetilde{W}_{5} \widetilde{W}_{5} for animates, and \widetilde{W}_{5} \widetilde{W}_{5} for inanimates, the former meaning who is, or was, or which is or was, and the latter which is, or was. It is really used as a kind of adjective.

EXAMPLES :-

L' (A' माओमा र्रो द्रार्ट से प्येद का मिन होमा । want a servant who is honest

५ ५ १ हैं त्या क्षेत्र साम स्थिमा से १। वित्र मी मी हैं के से से स्थान स्थान से १।

This horse is a fleet one (one that is fleet).

Your knife is a blunt one.

The Past is similarly constructed. Thus :-

C'A'म्बिज् । want the servant who was forest.

The Future may be constructed like the Present. Thus:—
েমে নামনা হাঁ হুল নামন ৰ servant who will be honest.

Or thus :--

८.ज. मार्ल्या.त्. रॅट.त्.वेर. भ्राप्त्र. धुना.

Ditto.

नम्श ।

Or :-

دره، کادری بیرد بیگور (or بیرد بیگور)

Ditto.

माञ्चा रा लेमा नम्बारा।

In Literary Tibetan the Present Participle is also W577 or othe variant of the verb To be.

EXAMPLES :-

हिंद निट कीमा पर्दे बट बर्पिट दा इससाय I speak to you who are in the

रे. प्रश्न क्षेत्री यह लूट. य ट्रे. दर. य. प्रश्न

And whatsoever is (that which is) more than this is of the evil one (Matt v. 37).

न्यः स्त्रां न्यः स्त्रां न्यः स्तरः स्त्रः स्त्रः

Holy, holy, holy, Lord God, Almighty, which was and which is (Rev. iv. 8).

यर्टा र केल्र्र्सर्टा

र्ने ...र्ने अकुशत्राचार्टा हर अकुश्राचा

I am....which is, and which was, and which is to come.

As the above examples show, the Past construction is similar, the context giving the tense.

The Literary Future for the Periphrastic Participle follows the

lines of the Colloquial.

OTHER LITERARY PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

WT'T' Being; as, since, when, after, while...is, are.

พีรุ ผลิ ซึ่ง At the time of being: when, while ... is, are.

ঊ5'द' . In or by being ; if, when . . is, are.

W5'a Being.

অঁহ'ল্টিম' Though, since, because : . is, are.

ब्यून प्रते छेर न जिन्द For being.

Past.

ম্বির্ব্ধ Having been; as, since, when, after...was, were.

অন্ত্রামান After, since, because, when ... was, were; Having been অন্ত্রামান After, since, because, when ... was, were.

45.5 In or by having been; if, when ... was, were.

W5.7.5. Having been; as, since, when, after...was, were.

OTHER COLLOQUIAD PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

অব্'র'ে As, since, because, etc.,...is, are.

র্মির-বৃষ্ণ বিশ্ব বিশ্র বিশ্ব বিশ্র

पॅर्न In or by being; if, when ... is, are.

Wर्'य' Being.

 \widetilde{W}_{5} \widetilde{Y}_{5} \widetilde{Y}_{5}

Past.

অব্যাহ্য Because, since, when, after, as ...was, were.

ल्ट्रायसा

SUPINE.

This is formed in Literature by putting the Infinitive in the Terminative case. Thus, $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{1}}$ To be. Or it may be formed by putting the Root in the same case. Thus $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{1}}$ To be.

In Colloquial the supines are W5-4, and W5-4,

Verbal Noun.

In Literary Tibetan $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{1}}$, To be, is often seen turned into a Gerund, or Verbal Noun, by the addition of the Definite Article $\widetilde{\gamma}$, or $\widetilde{\gamma}$, or sometimes both. Thus $\widetilde{W}_{\overline{1}}$, $\widetilde{W}_{$

228

EXAMPLE :-

দার্ভ র । েত্রদার্থ উপ্রেশ্বর অপার্থ Master, it is good for us to be here.
Literally, The being here is good
(Matt. xvii. 4).

The Colloquial Verbal Noun is simply the Infinitive with or without 5

EXAMPLE:-

न्येंद्र्य। इ.क. तर्रेन्ड स्पर्य (रे) समा Lord, the being here is good for us.

§ 36. THE VERB 'TO HAVE.'

Like the Latin MIHI EST, or the Russian U MENYA YEST, There is to me, this verb in Tibetan is merely an adaptation of the Substantive Verb $\sqrt[3]{5}$ To be, with the subject put in the dative. But whereas, in Latin and Russian, this construction is only an alternative one, in Tibetar it is the only idiom used.

EXAMPLES :-

द्रायां संस्थित्।

द्रायाषाया सेर्।

क्रियाराया से स्ट्रा वित्र

श्रदःशदेशमुत्राचिक्रास्ति।

That country will not have a king.

And so throughout the conjugation.

PERIPHRASTIC PARTICIPLE.

EXAMPLES :-

हिंद्र व्यार्थेद्र व्यापेद्र व्यादेश हिंद्र व्यार्थेद्र व्यार्थेद्र व्यादेश हिंद्र व्यार्थेद्र क्रुवेद्र द्रायादेश

मामार्भेर यह

श्रुव्यः श्रेष्ट्रायः दे।

\$ WT. T. J. MT. 1

The faith which thou hast.

I have a mother.

I have not a father.

Once I had a gun.

The faith which thou hadst.

The faith which thou wilt have.

He that hath. (Matt. xxv.

He that hath not. 29.)

Even that which he hath (ib.).

\$ 37. येद' TO BE.

Like 45'4' this verb is used to express direct affirmation, or, with a negative particle, direct negation, and also to connect any subject with its attribute. It cannot, however, like W5', be used to express presence, or existence, or the idea of possession. In other words, though ম্ব্ৰ may be employed in every in which এইবা is used, yet অর্থা never takes the place of অচ্মা

It may be conjugated thus:-

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Affirmative.

ट.लचा.ज्ञ.लुब।

I am good.

मुँद अमार्च त्रुमा, or occasionally रेंद । Thou art good. Very rarely धेव

মিঅনার্থিইবৃ Or occasionally:-मिं अन्य प्रमा or very rerely भेता

Literary Tibetan.

て、口当て、江、心な、え」

I am good.

हिर्न्चः सं दर्मान्।

Or occasionally :-

Thou art good.

पिर प्रश्र में प्रमुख्य

近こつヨこ、引、かえ、ダー

He is good.

The plural being the same as the singular, it is omitted. Honorific construction in Literary Tibetan :-

(Not used).

I am good.

मिर्प्राचार हो मार्दे ।

Thou art good.

बिट्- वबट्डिं यम् राज्यः, or महिदें,

He is good.

or प्रमाशायान्त्रेत्।

230

Colloquial Negative.

ट.लचा.चा.श्रुव. (or vulgarly श्रुव.)

I am not good.

मिंद्र अन्याया के वदना, or अदेद।

Thou art not good.

मिलमार्थासारेर।

He is not good.

Or occasionally :— }

মাব is Literary, and both মাব and মাব Colloquial Whether Literary or Colloquial it is best to use हीत्।

Interrogative.

द'अमा'र्गे भेद'दम', or भेद्रप्रस'

Am I good?

or पेद्य।

हिंदाभन रात्र्नान्म, or पद्नानाश | Art thou good?

मिंभमार्चे देर्द्स, or देर्पश,

or 35.41

Is he good?

Or occasionally :--मिं अना र्रो तर्ना नाम , or तर्ना नाम।

Literary.

ट.च बट. ग्र. र्रा र्रा ४ थ्या

Am I good?

हिन्दा दि प्याप्त देश, or विनामान Art thou good?

मिट पर्वट ये प्रिक्ति

Is he good?

N.B.—If and when, in the Colloquial, War is used with the 2nd person, it is generally when a question is being asked. It is hardly ever used in the Colloquial with the 3rd person, though it is not absolutely wrong so to use it.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Same as Present Indicative, the context generally showing what that tense is. Thus :-

In Literary Tibetan the construction is similar, but of course the Literary forms of the verb must be used.

Another method is similarly to rely on the context for the tense, and to use \(\tilde{\mathbb{U}}_{7}\) for all persons, or to vary the last syllable according to the rule of the Present Indicative. Thus:—

The Literary form of this construction would be \(\vec{\text{V}}\sqrt{\vec{V}}\vec{\vec{V}}\) for all persons, preceded by \(\vec{\text{V}}\vec{\vec{V}}\), or other indication of tense; and \(\vec{V}\vec{\vec{V}}\) would replace \(\vec{V}\vec{\vec{V}}\vec{\vec{V}}\).

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Same as Imperrect. Thus:-

ह्रेंद्र या दा अन्य I have, or had, been good.

And so forth, throughout all constructions.

FUTURE.

Same as in \(\tilde{\mathbb{N}}\sigma^*\), i.e. expressed by \(\tilde{\mathbb{N}}\sigma^*\) for all persons.

The Literary construction is:—

८.इ.च्र.प्रमुर.र्रे।	I shall be a shepherd.
हिन्दे वेंस्त्युर से।	Thou wilt be a shepherd.
क्रिं-हे-च्रू-प्रगुर-र्रे।	He will be a shepherd.
टः स्य मुर य भेव वे ।	I shall have been
ष्टिरः यरमुरयात्रुमार्गे।	Thou will have been
म्रिट पर मुर पं प्रेश के वे ।	He will have been

When War is used as an auxiliary to other verbs, we shall find that in the Colloquial there is another Future construction, namely, "पी Wa for the 1st person, and "मी देर for the 2nd and 3rd persons.

SUBJUNCTIVE OR CONDITIONAL.

Same as in W5'U', substituting W5' for W5' or 354 wherever they occur, and, in the negative forms, \$15" or \$15" for \$15" in the first part of the sentence, but keeping the second part as it stands there. Thus :-

Present.

ट.सेम.त्.लय.य.सेट.त्.लट.।

232

If I be rich, I shall be happy.

Past.

ट युना रा जेब ब क्षेत्र रा जेंद्र।

If I were rich, or had been rich, I would be or would have been · happy.

The Literary construction is:---

ःसुमार्थे प्रदेशयरे यर विमुरे दे टार्युमार्या प्रेदायर पर मुरायापेद। If I were rich I would be happy.

If I am rich I shall be happy.

र्युन राष्ट्रेन पर नुराया विश्व Had I been rich I would have been happy.

POTENTIAL

Same as n W5'U', substituting W5 for the W5' to which 30' is annexed. This :-

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Present.

ा मुनः भी स्था । जा मुनः स्था । जा मुनः भी स्था ।

Dean be good.

Past.

ट.लच.त्र.लूब.बैच.प.लूब।

I could be good.

Perfect.

ट.लची.च्.लूब.बैच.च.लूटी

I could have been good.

233

Or :--

অদা মান প্রবাসিম। (for all persons).

LIKELIHOOD.

The construction is the same as in W54 Thus :-

HORTATIVE.

Same construction as in W5 T, changing W5 into W5 Thus :-

Present.

ट.लचे.च्.लुब.रेग्रहा।

I must be good.

Past.

ट.लचा.त्र.लूब.२ब्रूब.चैट.।

I ought to have been good.

Purposive.

Same as in W5'4', changing W5' into W7' Thus:

ट. मर्ब हो जिब मादे हिराया।

In order that I may be, or might be, safe.

The Literary construction is in AJA'A' or WA'A' put in the genitive case and followed by ZA

EXAMPLE :-

नै: निम: व्रम्भ: उन् : मिर्डम: निक्षः निक्ष

IMPERATIVE.

Literary.

श्र.लुर.तर.चैर. (धुन)। वडट.तूर.चैर. (धुन)।

Be good.

Be a man.

Colloquially.

As stated under 45-41.

PRECATIVE.

Same construction as in W5'U', changing W5' into W5'. Thus:-

ट.स. भ.लुब.तर.क्वा.कुवा। इ.स.लुब.चक्देवा.

Let me be a lama

PERMISSIVE

Same as in অব্না, changing অব্ into অব্ Thus:—
েন্দ্র মাজব রূলা, or রূলালা অব্ I am allowed to be a lama.
েন্দ্র মাজব রূলা মাজব, or রূলা ম্বি I was allowed to be a lama.

OPTATIVE.

Same as in W5'4, changing W5' into W5' Thus:—

C'EC' gq Ti'W5' (1') Tq | Would I were rich.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

234

235

Literary.

ट.रीया.च्य.लुब.तर.चीर।

Would I were rich.

INFINITIVE.

ખેતું To be. In Literary Tibetan it is the same.

ळ्ट्रन्थ्येब्स्।

To have been.

लट.मूं. (or लट.मैं.) लुब.च।

To be about to be (Coll.).

भूब.तर.पंचीर.घ।

ल्ला (or ल्लाम्) लुब्सा

To be about to be (Lit.).

EXAMPLES :-

र भे तरे मात्रस के न ये जिन य हैं ।

Now, consider (see) how great this man was (to be).

In Literary Tibetan: -

५. श्र. ५६. इस. क्रेब. त्र. लेंब.

Ditto.

निमा

भ्रे.पद्र.जिंद्र.क्षंत्र.क्षंत्र.क्षं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र.चेत्र.कष्टं.चेत्र

This man, if he were a prophet, would have perceived who and what manner of woman this is which toucheth him, that she is (to be) a sinner. (Luke vii. 39.)

मिट मी मार्ट चर् चगार हे हैं हैं अधर छेर.

I know that his commandment is (to be) life eternal.

त.लुब.त.चुश.श्र्र।

ब्रिट. ग्रीश.रट. श्री. लुच. च. चश्रभा

Or, in Literary Tibetan :-

हिर.ग्रीशन्दर.श्रीलुबे.तर.चश्रभ।

Who thinkest thou that thou art, or thyself to be?

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT:

Being

PAST:

236

लेब्दा

लेब्य

Been.

COMPOUND PERFECT:

ब्रिंद्य Having been { (both in Coll. and

Lit.).

FUTURE:

About to be

PERIPHRASTIC.

Both in Colloquial and Literary Tibetan, Present and Past Tenses, this is :-

धेर्यः, or धेर्यः दे।

Who or which am, is or was.

EXAMPLES .-

स्नेगासप्रेष्यारे प्ररायर त्यार।

A remnant (that which is a remnant) shall be saved. (Rom. ix. 27.)

मिर्द्रामाणिकायादे विवसाविमा

Take that which is thine own. (Matt. xxv. 25.)

く. C. cic. G. G. . まかが. D. まて. 吹く. rig. 5सासु-5मत् न प्येत-वा-5C-1 C-होर-यरे.रेश.से.डिर.ग्री.सेजाश.सं.सेंचशतः उबाधिबारान्द्रमानामा

Now, I, Paul, myself, who in your presence am lowly among you, but being absent am of good courage toward you. (2 Cor. x. 1.)

मिर्धियाधिकाया इससाया मारमा नेरा ने

I speak to you that are genties (Rom. xi. 13.)

בק ים שבמי אישא ביניל מיבל ים שבמי इट मारेश यात्र र द या दे या मारेश या 男子、ロエ・ロコエ |

I will call them my people which were not my people; and her my beloved which was not beloved. (Rom. ix. 25.)

The Future Periphrastic Participle both in Colloquial and Literary Tibetan, follows the lines of W5'Z1

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

LITERARY.	n and a second	
ध्युन्ते.	Present.	
र्थर-विदः	Being; as, since, when, after, while am, is, are.	
2)4.21g . 其.a.		
र्भव पर्द रहराया	At the time of being; when, while am . is, are.	
र्श्ययः	In or by being; If, when am, is, are.	
ર્યાત્ર.	Being.	
র্মানু শূর্যা	Though, since, because am, is, are.	
. र्युष्याप्ये.	Of or for being.	
Past.		
र्भ प्रेन ने		
र्णेव दशः	Having been: As, since, when, after was, were.	
र्जुब.राक्ष.	Because, since, when was, were; Having been.	
ભૂથ.તા. ત્ર ક્ષ.		
र्यं दार्दरः	As, when was, were.	
र्श्व-ब-	In or by being; II, when was, were.	
Colloquial;		
থ্যবুদ্ধা	Present.	
พิง.สว.2ช.พ.	At the time of being; When, while am, is, are.	
र्टर, or ध्रेष.ब्र.	Being; because, since, as, when am. is, hec.	
र्श्व-व	In or by being: If, when am, is, are.	
र्श्व यर्थ.	Of or for being.	
র্মধ্যম.	Being.	

Past.

অব্বাহা Because, since, when, after, as . . . was, were :
having been.

Having been; as, since, when, after . . . was, were.

धेद्रपदि Of or for having been.

Was प्राचित्र As, since, when, after . . . was, were.

4s, when ... was, were.

In or by having been; If, when ... was, were.

Supine.

Literary: अद्भार, and अद्

Colloquial: অঁর্বা, and অর্ দ্রা To be.

Verbal Noun.

Either WAT Being, To be, or the Infinitive of the verb, which in itself includes the idea of To be. It may either be used alone, or, in the Colloquial, with $\frac{1}{5}$, or in Literary Tibetan $\frac{1}{5}$, or $\frac{1}{5}$, or $\frac{1}{5}$

EXAMPLES :-

मुवार्च निष्णियरप (रें) सर्वस्य Sometimes it is not very pleasant to be a king.

इ. प्रज्ञ त (हैं) दें के प्रोदेश It is shameful to be drunk.

है महर्स र दिन हिंद र दि निर्मिन दि It suffices for the disciple that he be as (to be as) his master, and the servant as his lord.

N.B.—It must always be remembered that ATA is never used substantively, but always in connection with some noun, adjective, or verb, into which its forms have to be moulded.

\$ 38. THE VERB

-PRELIMINARY. The Tibetan Verb denotes only a sort of indennite happening or state, and this not of itself, but racner by means of certain auxiliaries, including the verb To be, which alone really constitutes the verb in a Tibetan sentence Thus:-

स्र्यं मितः भीतरं ग्रेशः स्र्यं मित. ग्रे वर्ता। ()r बिट यस (or सेंद न्न निम्न निम्न निम्न)

The sower is sowing the seed.

Literally, this is: By the sower as regards the seed, a sowing is.

In fact the so-called Verb is rather a kind of Noun, modified in its significations by the verb To be, according to the mood or tense of the latter. It possesses in itself no means whereby to distinguish between the active and passive voices; the singular and plural numbers are alike in construction; and, except as regards the auxiliary To be, all its forms can be used with any of the persons indiscriminately

The changes or inflections undergone by the Tibetan Verb are effected in three ways :-

- 1. By structural alterations in the Root;
- By making use of Auxiliary Verbs;
- By resorting to divers monosyllabic Particles for the formation of Infinitives, Participles, Supines, etc.

II Roors.

These in laterary Tibetan are four:-1. Present: 2. Perfeet; 3. Future: and 4. Imperative.

Thus :--

75'1' To do, To make, To act.

Present Root: 35 Do, Does, Doing

Perfect Root: 5N Have or has done.

Future Root: 5 Will do.

Imperative Root : 35 Do.

However, every Tibetan Verb does not possess all four roots.

Some only possess three. Thus:—

त्रमादा To drop, drip, trickle, leak.

Present Root: প্র্বি Drop, Drops, Dropping.

Perfect Root: नाजनाहा, or जनाहा Have or has dropped.

Future Root: प्राचित Will drop.

Some possess only two roots. Thus:-

त्र्ने प To go, To walk.

Present and Future Root: AT Goes, Will go.

Perfect and Imperative Root: NT Have or has gone, Go.

A Colloquic Imperative is ज्या Go.

Many possess only one root for all tenses. Thus:-

संबद्धाः To see.

प्रश्चितः To remember.

मुन्दा To be able.

র্বাম To receive, get, obtain.

विष्या To suit, to agree, to be satisfied.

Where, in Literary Tibetan, a verb possesses a special root for each or any of the different tenses, and for the Imperative Mood, that special root must be used for those tenses and that mood, save that when the Future construction is in 25.7 or 5.7 or 5.7, the Present Root is retained instead of the Future Root. Where there is no special Future root or imperative root, the Present root is used for the Future and Imperative. It is impossible, of course, to learn the root-forms of all the verbs, but there is no reason why those of the commoner verbs should not be memorized to some extent.

As regards the Colloquial, though it is quite allowable to use the

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

240

roots that are assigned to particular moods and tenses for those moods and tenses, yet it is said that as a matter of fact, at least in vulgar Colloquial, this is seldom or never done, and the root generally used is the Perfect root. When, however, the Present root of a verb ends in an inherent W (for instance, To look), or in an inherent R (e.g., To bear, or bring forth), or in (e.g., To request, ask), or in (e.g., To live, feed, nourisk), it is said that that Present root is generally used for the Present Indicative, the Future Indicative in TWT, or TTT, the Present Participle, Active Present Participle, Present Infinitive, Supine and Verbal Noun. If, in these verbs, the Future is formed with WT instead of TWT etc., the Perfect root (or perhaps more correctly the Future Root) must be used. Thus:—

The above idea that the Perfect Root should be used in the Colloquial probably arises from the fact that it sometimes has the same sound as the Future root. For instance, in the verb 955 To send, the Perfect Root 955 and the Future Root 955 sound nearly alike.

Of course it must be remembered that the Colloquial, as such, pays no regard to spelling, but only to its own phonelics. Hence, if one

writes Tibetan, one should spell properly. Therefore, also, if one attempts to write Colloquial, as such, it must always look wrong, as regards spelling.

EXAMPLE:-

(pronounced प्रिट: देर्) | Thou providest for me.

With all other verbs the vulgar Colloquial, it is said, usually adopts the Perfect root, if any, or at least the sound of it, as above explained, for all moods and tenses. Thus, for \$\sqrt{15-0}\$ To send, let go, dismiss, the roots are:—

Present Root: Send, Sends, Sending.

Perfect Root: 355 Have or has sent.

Future Root: 455. Will send.

Imperative Root : Ar . Send.

In Literary Tibetan the Present Indicative is :-

But in the vulgar Colloquial it is: — EN-355, or A55 1 send, and EN-355 (or A55) A-35, I am sending.

In Literary Tibetan the Future Indicative is expressible in several ways with different roots. Thus:

There seems also to be an emphatic form in which W' is affixed to the Future root, and is followed by $\frac{2}{5}$; for all persons. Thus:—

I shall send; I am to send, i.e., by me a sending is to be.

III .- AUXILIARY VERBS.

These are WTT, WTT, RTTT, TT and other forms of the verb To be, which it is not necessary to specify here: 3T, RTTTT,

and QACA To become, To happen, To take place, To occur; QACA To be finished, completed, terminated; QAAT To be made ready, finished, accomplished; ATT To be ended, concluded, exhausted; AAT and AAT To be able; QATA To go, but used idiomatically; AATA and GA To be necessary, or expedient or expressive of the idea of obligation or duty; QEAT To allow, suffer, permit; AATA To be allowed or permitted; AATA To make, do. act, perform; AATA and NECA elegant and respectful forms of AATA; WATA, WATA, To be possible, probable, likely, otc., etc.

IV .- AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

(1)—Î, Î, Î, Î, Î, Î, Î annexed to the Verbal Root according to rule, with reference to the final letter of the root (see § 25, iv). Used to connect the root with W5, N4, A5T or R5 they form a periphrastical Present Tense. For example, in the Colloquial, which loosely uses the sound of the Perfect Root.—

CN-055. | 1 send.

But :-

दश वर्ट ने भेर्। I am sending, or I send.

Sometimes, in the vulgar Colloquial, they are annexed to the roots of adjectives, taking the place of the adjectival particle \widetilde{A}' , A', or A'. Thus:—

व्यक्षणा हुन गुरेन् instead of व्यक्षणा हुन स्ट्रिंग The road is rough. सुना अनाना रेन् instead of सुना अना स्ट्रिंग The child is good.

It is better, however, to use the adjective in full, and not to employ the construction in my, by etc.

These Particles are sometimes used at the end of a sentence in the sense of a finite verb; and more particularly in the 1st Person Future.

EXAMPLES:-

दश्यतुम्नी । shall put in.

दश्रास्त्राश नेर् गृ , or 5 भी I shall help.

(2) নাম', নাম', নাম', তাম', অম' These are annexed to the root as Gerunds, and signify By (doing something), or Because, Since, etc., but more usually antitheticall, as But, Though.

EXAMPLES:-

মেন্দ্র মান্দ্র বিদ্যালয় ক্রিয়া বিদ্যালয় ব

दार्ह्या पर्हेर में प्राप्त । प्राप्त का प्राप्त का प्राप्त के प्राप्त का प्

It may even be annexed to the root of the verb To be. Thus:—
মি ক্রামামান্ম্রামা
Though it is a good story, or It is a good story but . . .

When used antithetically a pleonastic ATTE sometimes follows -:

मिंद्र नीश द्राय प्रश्न हों श द्राय प्राय प्रति Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.

When annexed to the root of an adjective it includes the verb $T\sigma$ bc. Thus:—

মি দাৰুনাম নর নীম = মানাৰুদাম Since, Because, or Though (she unas, or is) of fine stature

(3) - बोद, बोद किर, and अद। Annexed to the root. These are Literary forms, and denote the Participle Present.

246

EXAMPLES:-

मिं हुँ ब त्यस परेवश गुँव धुँव ध रेर् He went on his way praying.

Used to connect the root with यें, यें, त्र्म or देर they form a periphrastical Present Tense, just as T, J etc., do in the Colloquial.

EXAMPLES:-

मे केंद्र केंद्र मेंब र्पेर।

क्टिम् वित्विक्ष

Lo, I come (am coming). (Heb.

He is singing.

When connecting the root with 55 Together with, they are often used gerundially.

EXAMPLES :-

मार्टेट मेश्र-दटा

म्रायेनमीन रा

नेरागिवं रहा।

व्याधिकदरः।

In, when, or while sending.

In, etc., singing.

In, etc., doing.

in, etc., going.

Thus :-

मु पोर् मुर्दि पार्क्ष द्वा र्ह्म दा दे अमा In, or when, singing it is best to stand up. विशरेरा

In the Colloquial this may be rendered :-

श्चात्येद दशः (or येद प्यते दश्याः, or लेब्स्यान्तः) व्यद्शाब्द्रशः स्ट्रिन्याने व्यवा र्वेश रेडा

(4).-5 after final 5

'S' after final 3' 5' A' N

पू after final न, ए, म, म and all vowels.

These are a sort of Continuative Particles or Suspensives, and may be annexed to all Present and Perfect roots, but according to rule, with reference to the final letter of the root. Annexed to Present roots they form a Present Participle, or Gerund, and, annexed to Perfect roots, a Past Participle, or Gerund. Thus, they may be rendered...ing, or...ing been, or...ing...ed, or As, when, after, etc. They are Literary rather than Colloquial, though not altogether absent from the latter, and are largely met with in those subordinate clauses a longer or shorter string of which generally goes to the construction of a Tibetan sentence.

EXAMPLES :-

ये त्यार्टे दर हे रे हे स्टरमिडेन दरमिडेन दर्भ त्र स्थार स्थारित हो।

Pilate and Heroa were formerly (formerly having been) at enmity with each other. (Luke (xxiii, 12.)

रे. बेश . जिंदा . चीश . श . ह्यूंचेश . ईशश .

And seeing the multitudes he, etc. (Matt. v. 1.)

रे. बंश. ट्व्रेंट्स. स्ट्रेंट्स. श्रु. के. मारस.

And when even was come his disciples went (having gone) down to the sea, etc. (John vi. 16.)

(5) 용도 after final 되는 두, 되는 or the vowel 됐는 유도 after final 도, 독, 된, 돈, 의, and all vowels except 됐다.

This Suspensive, which is Literary rather than Colloquial, is annexed to the Root, and expresses in one or other of its forms the Present Participle, but sometimes also the Past Participle. It is also sometimes used instead of the conjunction And. Lastly, it often expresses a causal relationship. It is generally met with at the end of minor interpolations within subordinate clauses

EXAMPLES :-

सर्ग्नेम्श्रं प्रम् द्रम् द्राटश्चेषश (By) Marching quickly the army arrived.

ह्मा क्षेट्र हो । होत्र का क्षेत्र क्

वहेनासः विदः वर्वेदः दे। वेदः सेदः वेदः कुदः सेद।

अभाविदःमार्वेदःदुःदर्मे न।

नेट.। नेट.। क्रा.भाष्ट्र.त्रेश. (perfect of देवेर्.त.)

And Jesus went (having gone) about all the cities and villages. (Matt. ix. 35.)

Being atraid and calling out.

Light not being, air is not; or Light is not and air is not; or Light and air not being; or Without light or air. (Das.)

Lying down, to go to sleep; or To lie down and go to sleep.

The heavens having parted, or rent asunder. (Mark i. 10.)

(6)-- UN' and IN!

These are merely the particles \mathcal{A}' and \mathcal{A}' of the Infinitive, or simple Participle, put in the Instrumental or Modal case. Practically they are equivalent to \mathcal{F}' , \mathcal{F}' , and \mathcal{F}' and the next noted Suspensive \mathcal{F}' . They are often used as a variant of these, when the latter have already occurred in the same sentence. This is merely a matter of taste, to avoid repetition. Primarily they mean Because, Since, Seeing that, etc., but they also carry the sense of When, and of the Participle, both Present and Past. Both Literary and Colloquial Tibetan make use of them:—

EXAMPLES :-

ट.रट.चीश.चर्रश.तश।

निय-र्-नात्र-च-र्श्वर-राम।

ट.लुबे.तज्ञ.भ.पह्चिशःश्चीमा

देश हैं। सेंबर ही। श्रुमा सेंग संदर राद्ये स्वर ही श्रुप्य स्वर राद्ये स्वर ही। श्रुमा सेंबर राद्ये स्वर ही श्रुप्य स्वर राद्ये स्वर ही श्रुप्य स्वर राद्ये स्वर ही श्रुप्य स्वर राद्ये स्वर राद्ये स्वर ही श्रुप्य स्वर राद्ये स्वर राद्

When I looked; i.e., I having looked.

As, since, because it is very difficult; or It being very difficult.

Since it is I, or It being I, or It is I, be not afraid. (Matt. xiv. 27.)

Then Simon's mother-in-law having been seized by a fever-illness and having lain down. (Mark i. 30.) ্র ট্রিন ট্রাম্ন ক্রিম নাইন ক্রিম चेन Now, since (or because) ye suy, we see. (John ix. 41).

is annexed to the Perfect root, and expresses a Past signification. Otherwise it has practically the same functions as $\widehat{5}$, $\widehat{5}$,

EXAMPLES :-

हिंद्र-ग्री-तक्षात्रा कर क्या हिंद्र-मिटः यः तः श्रु-प्रेवा विद्यामश्रद्यावया प्रेन्द्रिक्तात्रा दवे स्था हिंद्र-मिटः यः तः प्रेन्द्रिक्तात्रा दवे स्था हिंद्र-मिटः यः तः

मुर्टे. हुनाश मोट्टे. पर प्रमा च बश दश द होत्।

स्व यादा है हे म्रीट या अर वसा

He to them, my mother and my brother who is? Thus having said. (Matt. xii. 48, and elsewhere).

When your work is finished you may go home.

After eating (having caten) chhoti hāzirī you must set out.

I have been (having been) young.

I was formerly (having formerly been) in Darjezling.

Annexed thus to the Verbal Root, and followed by \$\times_5\$ or \$\frac{5}{9}\$, it indicates either the Pluperfect (active), or the Perfect (passive). Thus:—

ट्राप्टरयात्रास्त्रेद्धस्य प्राप्टर्गा युष्याय वश्चर्यस्य प्रित्, वर्ष्यप्रित्रः वर्ष्या धृषाचिक्षः युष्याय वर्षा प्रित्।

こ. (切.) ジャ.dが.<u>が</u>之!

र्ज्ना है भारता वराय है र वेश वराय देन।

The liger had eaten the deer.

The deer has been enten.

I had gone home.

I had been asked.

In the roll-book it is (has been) written of me. (Heb. x. 7).

(8)—AN. This particle has (perhaps) sometimes a Present but more often a Past signification, and is always found attached to the simple Participle in A. or A. It means From or When ... cd;

or Being...el; or Having been. or As or While, followed by a Past tense; or As or While, followed by a Present Participle (in which case the root of the verb is often repeated, the particle 5! or 5' roming next, and then the AN'); or When on the point of: When about to: When going to: Bring about to, or on the point of, when used with ATT or PANCI

EXAMPLES: -

र्-देन्याचीस्राम्ट्रः वालट्यस्य लट्टे वगीदः

रे.ब्राह्मः रार येव्यायायय।

देवियायाम्। इदियायाम्।

मिट-मीश.र.१८८ प्रमाय मिर्शिशासामा

रेरमार्शेट च लहा।

हे.चोबस.स्मस.मिट.ह्यूट.च.जस।

देवे के रामिक्षा ब्रिट या व्याप्त पायस

लहा। लहारी, स्वा.चाहारी, त्रवहरू, देव. ज. पर्टे. स्व

उर्जे चत्रम। चार्कुमः प्रमः दें . बैतामः दमः तीयः वैता . दें दुर्जः हमः मी. वे. चारमः दमसः ग्री. वटः दमः

When they continued asking, i.e., again and again asked, him. (John viii, 7).

Thereupon as he passed by. (John ix. 1).

And he, having gone, and having associated with a konscholder of that country, after having settled. (Luke xv. 15).

Then Jesus, having begun again to teach by the seaside. (Mark iv. 1).

And while he yet spake. (Matt. xxvi. 47).

When they were going (As they went). (Matt. xxviii, 11).

And the disciples as they went. (Mark ii. 23).

There shall two men be in the field, i.e. while being. (Matt. xxiv. 40).

And they stoned Stephen; or As or while they stoned, or were stoning Stephen. (Acts vii. 59).

After that, two of his disciples, having set out on a journey, as they were going to a country. (Mark xvi. 12).

अट.टे.ट्वा.जश.ज.श्रट.श्रट.च.जश।

लामहिनामीसार्चे मार्सा चेत्रहर महिना

रेते.क्र. प. स्थित. ट्. वेट. चोर्ड.च्. चार्था इसस. ज. ट्वार. क्रंट. हिट. ह्या नाहर्ट. य. ज.स्सस. (Present root) य.जस्

यसरे.तर.चेत्रश्चरात्रस्य। यस्रे.सि.चेत्रः पच्चेर्यः स्त्रस्या And as they went on their way. (Acts viii. 36).

And while they, thus conversing, questioned each other. (Acts xxiv. 15).

And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the Lord's disciples. (Acts ix. 1).

And when Paul was now about to open his mouth. (Acts xviii. 14).

And should have been killed, i.e., being about to be, or on the point of being killed. (Acts xxiii. 27).

(9)—5. This is expressive of condition, hypothesis, contingency and even doubt, and may be rendered by If, When, On, Since, As, Should, Had, Were, etc. It is generally added to the Root, but sometimes (though not often) to the Infinitive, and is much used at the end of verbal phrases both in the Colloquial and in the written language. Sometimes the phrase which it concludes is introduced by the expression TAT, but the subjunctive idea is in no way affected even if this expression be omitted.

Examples of its use with the Root are given under 35'3' (§ 35), and 34'4' (§ 37).

5 is also used in Literary Tibetan, adversatively, to express Though, Although. Thus:-

पर्ने हिन पुर्सेन पार्सेन पार्थिन व ! Although he was formerly a trans-

It also expresses the idea of Reason for, or Causality. Thus:—

Since this existed, that arose.

(Das.)

252

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

संस्प्रदेश विष्य मुख्य । स्था सम्बद्धाः स्था सुद्धा

Since fire existed, smoke arose.
(Das.)

(On) seeing me the thief fled. . .

Used with AN it expresses When, or If and when. Thus:

क्षार्थशास्त्रवन्त्र। क्षार्थः If and when, or when, I go. (Das.)

If and when, or when the time comes, i.e., it comes down to the time. (Das.)

(10)—2. Annexed to the Participle, this Suspensive may mean To, At, In: With respect, regard, or reference to: Concerning: Relative to: In consequence of.

ENAMPLES :-

ह्मिनाराजाउद्देशःस। महाराजाउद्देशःस।

Fo rejoice in killing. (Jäschke.)

To shrink from, or be afraid of (i.e., with respect to) sinning. (Das.)

Annexed to the Root, it may be used for the Present Participle in minor phrase, much like 37 and its variants. Thus:---

पर्ना २ हेर् हें राष्ट्रेट या र टानी चनु दश Denying himself and taking up his cross.

It is also often used like \$\frac{1}{2}\$, \$\frac{3}{2}\$, but annexed to the Participle, and meaning As.

EXAMPLES:

झ देन निगर्भर यात्र।

As there is (was) an idal shrine.

क्या शिक्षेत्र रावर्षेत्र रादेशाहुका हेन्। नु वर्षो वाया

As the king your there duily to hather.

व्हेस्टिंश्नीप्रयास्थितियास्य।

As it Joes not occur in the world. (Jaschke.)

Annexed to the Root, it is used adversatively for Though, Although.

Example:—

पूराकिजाश्वराचिटानि

Though looking, he did not see.

Annexed to the Repeated Root, it expresses While, Whilst.

EXAMPLE :--

दश'र्घे' क'र्रे मूर्मिम् मूर्मिष्य' (म्राट') बेर' Whilst I am reading this book note down what I say.

When annexed to adjectives, A includes the idea of the verb To be, being indeed an abbreviation of WFIA Being, and seems to have the force of And, or But, according to circumstances.

EXAMPLES :-

सुन्दाम्सु श्रेर य ने दान

लिश्र भू र्वेचा १८. वेट जरिट हा केरे ता

र्युतसायेनसायेटास्यम् । र्युतसायेनसायेटास्य स्मायासहसाय। Hair and beard being yellow and long. (Das.)

Being ugly as to his body and of small stature and (or but) having a fine voice. (Das.)

Being ugly and short. (Jäschke.)

Being of good figure, nice to look at, and pretty.

In double Imperative or Precative expressions, at has the force of the Present Participle, or of And, and is annexed to the root of the first verb.

EXAMPLES:-

च्ना अर्ड्स विना।

र.जूट.ज.ब्र्य.जूना

र.ज.जटश.ज.पर्. २. मूना

शट.ज.र्जेश.चेचा

म्जाया क्रा

Come and see (coming, see).

Now, rise and come hither (rising, come hither).

(in and look (going, look).

In sentences like the following, where our Supine means In order to, or For the purpose of, A, annexed to the verbal Root, is used Supinally both in Literary Tibetan and in the Colloquial.

EXAMPLES: -

Well, I am going to dine. वें बट अयाद में निष्पेत्। यु न हिंद रद ने भे ने वर्डेर वर श्रेवश The boy has come to get your letter. NE. I

(: i) 一街

254

When connecting a verbal root with the auxiliary verb 따라고 or 555, this particle forms, in modern Literary Tibetan, a Future tense which is practically a kind of periphrastic conjugation of in (as a Future Participle, About to) with the auxiliary verb.

EXAMPLES:-

टर्नेट्नं भेष। म्ट्रिंग मुर्ग् सार्द्र।

I shall come; I am about to come.

He will not speak : He is not about to speak.

It is also used in older Literary Tibetan to express necessity, obligation, expediency.

EXAMPLES :-

ट.प्ट.च्.ल्बस्य मिंट जीश द याद ट की राव। ट.ज.पर्इ.सी.अट.सं.लूर।

1m. I to come? Must I come? .

He ought not to beat the horse.

I have many things to write.

In the Colloquial m, a exed to the verbal Root, is extensively used for the Infinitive.

EXAMPLES :-

ररेर उन्ने मुंग में पर्देश एट.राज्ञेतःराजावर्जे.सं.साद्धराज्या

I do not wish to go there.

How far have we to walk to reach home?

हिंद्र-माट-त्यमः कुः स्पेद्र। इ. दश्यः प्रचः कुं के त्युना। त्यदः देश्वः देशः व्यक्तः स्वारः प्रचः देशः कुं स्पेदः दशः। त्यदेश्वः देशः देशः कुं के त्यदेशः।

What have you to say?

There is nothing at all to say.

Be pleased to rise.

Is there any sport (game) to be got here?

I do not wish to be there.

(12) - W ···· (5)

In the Colloquial this particle, with or without the 95, is also extensively used, annexed to the Verbal Root, to express what correspond to our Verbal Nouns in *ing*, i.e. the Latin Gerund.

EXAMPLES:-

केंश्रान्त्रात्त्रीयाच्याः (५६) न्यासम्मा देशस्यान्त्रीयाच्याः (५६) न्यासम्मा

Literary language: The reading of the Literary language, etc.

It is very wrong to tell lies: The telling lies, etc.

It is very confusing to read the

च्च-वाकुशराःस्रवाचादर्द्धरः प्यदे: नुसादेन।

The second month (March) is the time for selling (of selling) shares.

भै सि से से सिर मिर सर्वर से दि हैं के नि

Few people need learn this extraordinary language; There is no meaning of many people having to learn this, etc.

(13) - 57

Both in Literary Tibetan and in the Colloquial this enclitic, used after the Infinitive or Participle in Zi or Zi, may be rendered As, When (carrying a Past signification), and it also has the force of the Past Participle.

EXAMPLES:-

भटाचग्रारे ते भारा गुरायर्टा।

.Ind the Word decame (havin become) flesh. (John i. 14). 256

श सर त्यः त्रिया नी नुर सेर् हिना हा सेर त्य 3541551

र्वेनासर कार् जूर अन्याय रा दूर। हिंद्र-इस्रक्ष-गुक्ष-इस-स्राम्य-धुका-ध-द् श्रवः चर तमर र

रेक्स देश परे हेश वाले प्रमा माम माम Then, in the calculator's computa-W5-41-22.1

はが、そこくが、日に、これ、が日か、こうて、 लट.ज्.चड्डेच एश.श्ट.च.रट.। ट्रे.थंश.चिचाल.कट.श.ट्रे.क्ट.र.ट्ट.। देवाक्रेवर्रे द्रग्रेयाय द्रारा

There cometh a woman of Samaria (a woman of Samaria having come) to draw water. (John iv.

In the beginning was the Word (the Word having been). (John i. 1).

Ye shall see the heavens opened. and, etc. (The heavens having opened, ye shall see, etc.). (John i. 51).

tions the year omens having been harmonious.

When he has arrived (He having arrived) at the house of the family.

When about a year had elapsed.

When at last the wedding was over.

As the big bell was tolled.

In Literary Tibetan, especially in Western Tibet, 57 is often used gerundially with the Present Participle in 15, 15, etc., and means In, When, While, etc.

EXAMPLE :-

मालेन मीन निः पारश दश स्र पार पाना When singing, it is best to stand र्नेश रेर।

In Literary Tibetan, and especially of late in the Colloquial, it is used as a familiar form of the Imperative, and implies advice, exhortation and entreaty.

EXAMPLES:

वें के लिंद ग्रीम त्यन केंस (चेना) दूट | Oh, do eat your food. मिन्दरम्भीकीनामुन्त्राञ्चिन (केन्) नृतः। Do learn your lesson.

(14) - 7 ofter E', 5', 4', 8', 5', A'

रं. after मा, चः रः राहमा

Till after vowels.

N after N

A after anything.

These particles, as Verbal Auxiliaries, are extensively used in Literary Tibetan to express the Infinitive Future and the Supinc. They are seldom, if at all, used in the Colloquial, save by those who affect Literary forms.

EXAMPLES :--

प्रहेमीतर.पंचींर.र्.। श्री.मीज.घ.रं.ज.टश.सूची.घी.पीट.जश.झ.३.

दर् हिं तार्केट रे वहबातर प्रेचेर रा

क्ष्मश्चाव्यानर्द्धानःश्वाप्तर्

त्रु.र्वट.वर्भेर.वर.बैर.ट्रा करु.वर.रे.हैंबी.व्हिल.बर्ट्ट.टे.प्रहेबी. इ.रेबी.ण.शु. र्थको.शु.बर्ट्ट.वर.च्र.च.

हिंद् दें दे दा द प्रिम्य रा भेद पर हिंद्

प्रमाधार्यः मायसः सम्माम्प्रस्थाः ह्रिन्तुः

To him that overcometh will I give

TO EAT of the tree of life.
(Rev. ii. 7).

To him that overcometh will I grant to SIT with me in my throne. (Rev. iii. 21).

Who is worthy to open (opening) the book and to loose the seals, thereof? (Rev. v. 2).

And to them it was given that they should not kill them (not TO KILL them) but that they should be tormented (but TO BE TORMENTED) five months. (Rev. ix. 5).

See that he BE with you without fear. (1 Cor. xvi. 10).

But to SIT on my right hand or on my left hand is not mine to give. (Mark x. 40). अद महिंच दे म्यामा ये से व्यक्त केंद्र हैं प्राप्त केंद्र हैं।

त्रभारतेयशःश्वित्। या न्त्रीतः या ता र्सूत्। इन्द्रायः वि स्था हिन् या नृत्यीतः या या र्सूत्। The Lama will allow you TOOFFER prayers to-morrow in the monastery.

देन्म मेश्रामिट अधिम देम द्वार्य । They have allowed him to Build the house.

The last of these particles, namely A, is not much used in this connection in Literary Tibetan. It may, however, be so used instead of any of the others.

EXAMPLE :-

टक्ष्यत्वे व्

I go to see.

(15)— The and The state of the Present Participle, and, with the state of the Present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the Present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the present Participle, and, with the added, may be used as an adjective; while the state of the present Participle, and the present Participle, and the state of the present Participle, and the present Participle, and

EXAMPLES :-

द्यम् वित्रमळेश।

I am going. (Elegant form).

प्रमुखार्थे।

प्रमुखार्थे।

He glanced at me with a loving look.

र्मेशियटश्रा । विश्व क्षेत्रश्रा कीका देनूषे राजा प्रधिना यहिना यहिना

As the Lamas entered the monastery (while entering the monastery) they chanted hymns.

कि वामार्थिय हार्थेर निविद् र अ निविद्या विश्व कि had tea he did not drink.

कर मिर जी हिंद र पेरि जिल्द र Since the beer was in front of him he drank.

(16)—3年.

This is a Colloquial Suspensive. Added to the verbal Root, it means As, Since, Because, and implies either Present or Past.

EXAMPLES:

वे अहिं तम् उटा दि दाय विकर्ता

Well, as you are going, ride my horse, do.

लुब। ह्रिंट.गुका.रेत्रा. क.चरेट.थ्ट. टका.टे.ग्रॅंची.ची.

As you have sent the book, I will read it.

(17)- 5% and 5% []

These also are much used Colloquially. Annexed to the verbal Root 5% acts as a Gerund, meaning As, When, While, At the time of etc.

ENAMPLES:-

मिंद्र गुरुष दिन हैं हैर र (प) दें When writing take care what you say.

मि ब्रेंब इस मि केंपिक प्रमाय देया । As he went off, he smiled.

JAMA has the same meaning, but is annexed to the simple Infinitive, or Participial form of the verb, put into the genitive case.

EXAMPLES:-

できる。日本のでは、 (コ・) ディー When writing take care what you say.

मित्रें मित्रें नुसाया मिळेंना केंना नुसाया As he went off, he smiled

A Literary equivalent of 5 NA is 3 N

V. - Moods and Tenses.

.1 .- Infinitive Mood.

The Iminitive, both in Literature and in the Colloquial, is the simple form of the verb as given in dictionaries, i.e. the Root, with \(\mathbf{T} \) or \(\mathbf{T} \)

annexed, according to the rule regarding the final letter of the root.

It is the same as the Participial form, and also as the form of the verb regarded as a substantive. Thus \$5.77 may mean To do, or Doing, or A, or the doing.

Each root can be regarded as the basis of a special Infinitive.

Present: पहिन्य

पहिन्

In Tibetan the latter of two related English verbs takes precedence of the other, and may be put in the Infinitive, or in the Genitive form of the Infinitive. Thus:—

At the same time the Colloquial construction by which g is added to the verbal Root has largely taken the place of the Infinitive.

Thus:—

In conversation, however, it is quite allowable and common to omit the \(\mathrice{\Pi} \) or \(\mathrice{\Pi} \) of the verb that is governed by the other.

Thus:-

ट्रामट्रस्य वर्गे वर्रे

I wish to go home.

ट.र्ज्ञच.क्.र्ट्डि.चेशचं चं मु.स.ट्रेरी

I am unwilling to write with ink and pen.

This is particularly the case where the governing verb is \mathfrak{F}^{\square} . To be able, \mathfrak{F}^{\square} To be allowed, \mathfrak{F}^{\square} To allow, \mathfrak{F}^{\square} To be necessary; must ought, and the like.

EXAMPLES :-

दशःरेवे सेट वार्येन रावे नादश अर्थिट हों। I cannot see the snow on the hill.

व्या

दर्बर क्रेन नी रेर् रक्ष or क्रेन माम।

Are we allowed to smoke in this room?

ट.कू. प्रेंब्र चढ्गा

Let us go away.

टशामिर्जाय वेर्नि यहिना।

I allow you to depart.

मक्षेत्र परि देश वाज देश ।

In order to live it is necessary to eat.

हिर्म्म न्यू वा व में द्वीश

You must go to school.

मिंदिगीससमादे द्रार्थितम्

You ought not to beat that child.

Where the governing verb is one of Knowing, Saying, Hearing Thinking, or the like, the governed verb, in sentences like the following, is put in the Infinitive, or else the verbal Root, with m annexed, is used.

EXAMPLES: -

हिरावरी हैं व्याद्यासा तेया

I did not know that you were here twon to be here).

262

দ্বিশাঘন্ত্রির (or ব্রাক্রা) হয় I do not know where you are going (you to be going).

लुन्त. (or लुन्देने.) उन्तर। जुन्मेश.ग्रेश.श्रदश.मेश.र्ह्नर.मेण.त्र्

History relates that Buddha was (Buddha to have been) at first a king.

हिर्देहि मिट्यापम् (वर प्रमें मुं)

I heard you were going (you to be going) to Darjeeling.

हिरारे हे ब्रीट वार्च्य या ध्येत या दशा में या ध्येत्।

I heard you had left (you to have left) for Darjeeling.

- दसामुद्दिन् गुर्भाद्द क्रियायाय्यस्य।

I thought you had bought (to have bought) the horse.

मि कुर्य दः यां जशामा दे वहून वः भूष वः सम्म

When they saw that the work had been entrusted to me (the work to have been entrusted to me).

The same construction is also used in connection with phrases like It were better that, It is evident that.

मी अपू तु सरामार् ने ना मी अपना मार हर।

It were better that a large stone were bound on his neck and he nere (he to be) cast into the sea. (Mark ix. 42).

द्रश्रक्तिः हेन्द्रश्रक्तः व्याप्तः विषयः क्षेत्रः व्याप्तः विषयः क्षेत्रः व्याप्तः विषयः विषयः

It is evident that no one is justified by the law in God's sight. (Gal. iii. 11).

In phrases containing That, So that, In order that, With the object of, To the end that. For the purpose of, the verb is put in the genitive case of the Infinitive, and is followed by 53.2 in the Colloquial, and by 3.5 or 3.5 or 53.5 in Literary Tibetan.

EXAMPLES :

In order that I may, or might, be here.

Where, in English, a mandatory Imperative governs a verb in the Infinitive, e.g. Order him to come, Tell him not to go, the Tibetan construction puts the governed verb also in the Imperative, not the Infinitive, mood.

EXAMPLES :-

चि.ला.चूना (हेना) लान।

Tell him, come (to come).

चि.ला.सा.चूना (हेना) नागादानाहरा।

Order him, do not go (not to go).

नहर्ना नहरूर नुसा सुराणुराहिंद सुनासा Take care that no man lead you astray.

Whenever it is possible to turn a verb into a Verbal Noun, or what is called in Latin a Gerund, it should be done.

EXAMPLES:-

শানিশানে ইনি (বিনি) এই ইটি It is better to be in Darjeeling than in Calcutta, i.e. the being in Darjeeling is better than the staying in Calcutta.

or ইনি অনানানি ।

তা কিনি আনানি নি আনি দিল to me to lice is Christ and to die is gain. (Philipp. i. 21).

B. -The Supine.

The genius of the Tibetan language is so different from that of other languages, both Eastern and Western, ancient or modern, that to

speak of Supines, Gerunds, and the like, in connection with it, is at least to strain the limits of analogy, if not to include in the illegitimate. But, so long as this is remembered, the Supine of Literary Tibetan may be said to be susceptible of several constructions. First, it may appear in the shape of the Infinitive put in the Terminative case with 3

EXAMPLES: "

श्रिशः ग्राटः द्रामी रारः द्रशः या दे दः मी रारः र्जुशः विमा।

He that is able to receive (hear) it let him receire (hear) it. (Matt. xix. 12).

इ.इमारायार्भवार्त्रायार्थे।

I ask to be forgiven this wrong. (2 Cor. xii. 13).

ह्रि. व. माई यहर . यथ्य . तर . प्रां . ता . यम्बर्भा

Worthy art thou to receive glory. (Rev. iv. 11).

टश.उट्य.चर.चाडश.च.जश।

. I was about to write. (Rev. x. 4).

त्यूर्या देशशामा नोरंश क्ट. हैंद तर श. **≣ेर** उँमा।

Forget not to show love unto (bestow lone on) strangers. (Heb. xiii. 2).

Secondly, it may take the form of the Verbal Root, with 5, 5, 5, 8, or, less frequently, A, annexed.

EXAMPLES :-

एके केंद्र दूर हो दे से इसस देहें, रस. I came not to call the righteous but विद्यानुषा भूमास्य इस्रय प्रवेदः र Z=N:NI

sinners. (Mark ii, 17).

वर्रम्यानी सर्वी यास्या चत्रा सुर्देश यश माद्यः ।

That he should lay his hands on their heads and pray. (Matt. xix. 13).

EY! 」近二、お、変」が、りて、いれ、ヨ、そ、くだれ、 शर दिनार दे।

I will give him to eat of the tree of life.

व्यादात्र द्वामार्थात्र त्रा हिंद देवडा दा दिया महिल्या असेवडा हो।

This bottle is (likely) to crack. He has gone to buy a horse.

Thirdly, it may appear as the Infinitive, put in the genitive case and followed by 3x or 3x7

EXAMPLES :

णः वेश्यत् हीरा अट्रास्त्र व्यास्त्र हो होना था। इं ह्यांस ती तीया सार्था व्यास्त्र हो हेना था।

The Queen of the South came from the ends of the Earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon. (Luke xi. 31).

हिट मिल नेट मिल मेर मिर मेर मेर

He came forth conquering and to conquer. (Rev. vi. 2).

The Colloquial has no Infinitive in the Terminative case with That is only found in Literary Tibetan. In the Colloquial, therefore, the Supine never appears in that form. It expresses itself either through the Infinitive aione, or through the Infinitive put in the genitive case and followed by 55% (and generally means "In order to," or "For the purpose of"), or through the particles \$\vec{\pi}\$ (when necessity or obligation is implied), or \$\vec{\Pi}\$ (object or purpose) annexed to Verbal Roots.

EXAMPLES: -

भूट.चर्ड्रच-मैच-र्गम् इ.स्र्र्म्चा-सःहोचसःस्टा।

A curpenter has come to mend the

टाहिमसाहटायानेच न्हेंन्नेपन्नेपने हेंन्

I am on my way (going) to Court, to see the trial.

दः इदः अक्षः दुः देवः चे कुरः वदे देव वा

Come with me to hear the music.

र्मेग।

दार्थन।

हें हे ब्रै भार्यों का श्रमा केट श्रुट या केंद्र। े How far is it (to go) to Darjecting.

C. The Verbal Noun:

What this is may be seen in the sentence. For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain. Here, the lumnitives. To live, and To die may be turned into Nouns, The living, and The dying.

In Literary Tibetan the Verbal Noun appears either in the guise of the Infinitive (which, as already explained, is formally the same as the Noun and the Participle) or in the guise of the Infinitive followed by the Definite Article 3. Thus, in Literary Tibetan, either of the following contractions is right:—

द्रायात्र्वे त्यापायाः विभागिषे । ५केः वाष्पदायस्य प्रेतिक्षेत्र्वे । or:--

प्रस्यक्रियक्षेत्रक्षिण्यक्षेत् दक्षेत्र

For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain. (Philip. i. 21).

So also: -

प्रभारति पा (के) येन्यासाम्भेत्र । It is not expedient to marry. (Matt. xix. 10).

श्च. ते. । द्याप्त । व्याप्त ।

It is hard for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of heaven. (Matt. xix. 23).

মূর্বা ইন্ক্রমার্ন্নিস্ট্রা (বি) Master, it is good for us to be here.

(Luke ix. 33).

Colloquially the Verbal Noun may be expressed either through the Infinitive followed by 35, or 5, or through the Verbal Root followed by 5, or w, with or without 5

EXAMPLES :-

व्योभः वदे से भार्ट्ट था श्रेमस हर हट

The hitting, i.e. To hit a man when he is down, is cowardly.

प्रमुप्ति ।

प्रमुप्ति ।

प्रमुप्ति ।

The being here is better, etc.

35 or 5 may be annexed to W if desired, but its omission make o difference.

Examples:

वर्रे उत्वों भः भ्रेर ये देर।

0r:-

It is pleasant to walk here.

In fact, the Verbal Noun, just like any other noun, is subject to declension.

EXAMPLES :-

सः नुष्या द्या विद्यस्य अपाया अपाद्या अद् इत्या विद्यस्य अस्याम्य अपाद्या अद्

Let every man be swift to hear. slow to speak, slow to urath. (Every man should be swift as regards hearing, slow as regards speaking, slow as regards being angry). (James i. 19).

The Verbal Noun may be formed out of any of the Infinitives. Present. Past, or Future.

D .- Participles.

Participle, by taking the Present or Perfect Root and adding to it the word 35%, or 35%, or 35%, or 35%, signifying the Doer.

268.

The phrase thus formed can be used either as Agent, or Instrument. an adjective or as noun.

EXAMPLES:-

रीया.चार्रार. (or वसर.) शांच्यरी The sheep-killer. त्मामार्केन (or पर्का) सम्बन्धिकेने The sheep-killing man.

These, it is obvious, can also be rendered periphrastically, thus: He who kills, or killed, the sheep.

But the simple Participles, Present or Past, can also themselves be used periphrastically, by regarding either as an adjective and putting it in the genitive case if it precedes its noun, or in the nominative if it follows its noun.

EXAMPLES

इसाने द्वादे व्यक्ष दे पदानी साम्यानी सा The work that I do (the by me ब्दरकं भेदायर दयह वे बेद दें।

שביביםקביםמ ישם אַן יווֹאייותביביםי ちなにごがおきていいる!

doing work) itself bears witness that the Father hath sent me (to have sent me). (John v. 36).

And the Father which sent me (the me having sent Father) hath also borne witness of me. (John v. 37).

The above illustrate the adjective phrase preceding its noun. The following are examples of the Participial Adjective following its noun:

इं. दें = च ने instead of दे='यदे'शेरे। र्टे र यरदायारे instead of

שבניםב יקבי בילן

The man who is coming: The coming man.

The book that was sent : The sent

In the Colloquial the construction of these Active Participles and Periphrastic Participial phrases is in AFT for animates, human or otherwise, and in 3' or 3' for inanimates, in both cases annexed to the root. Here, too, the expression or phrase may be treated either as a noun or as an adjective, and in the latter case it may precede or EXAMPLES :-

लट सम्ब में से दे।

Or:- ् श्रे:ऑट:अह्नर-५ ।

स्रेर.चे च.म्राम्य.ची.स्रचाः।।

Or:

त्रचाराः सर्मुचः स्राप्तः र्।

ल्लास्यास्य में से है।

Or: -

शुःल्ट्रास्मान्द्रिते।

सर.वर्षेव.श्रीवर.ची.तवा.त।

()r:

तमाराःसर्यन्त्रेयःभाष्यःर्।

केर केर दिन् वितर वितर्धेता दे।

Or:

विटार्शेट हे रु हे हु तु में यादी।

रे.इ.इ.इ.श्रंट.चर्च भूट.ब्रंट.दे।

01

मदार्थेट हे दु हे र स्ट्रिंग वादे।

In the case of verbs with no Future root, the Literary Future Active Participe is formed thus: -

केर्केर्द्र दर्गे सम्बंती केट हेंट दे। or

perhaps वर्गें मुं ध्येष सदि जीट हिंद दे।

মর্থী: মান্ধ্রী: হিন্ত্র। or perhaps মর্থী: কার্ফার্মার ।

The coming man: the man who is coming; the comer.

The grunting pig; the pig that is grunting; the grunter.

The man who came.

The pig that grunted.

The growing tree : the tree that grows.

The grown tree : the tree that grew.

The tree that is to grow, or will grow.

The man who is to see, or who will see.

In the Collequial m' is used thus;

क्षेत्र के के के के के किया है।

The tree that is to grow, or that will grow.

As regards the rendering of the Passive Voice, see § 31, ix. A. Relative Pronouns.

The Future Participle, in Literary Tibetan, is expressed by the Present Participle put in the terminative case with 7, and followed by 97 signifying About to ..., or To be ...ed. In fact, formally, it is the same as the Present Infinitive of the Passive Verb.

Also by the Future Root with 3 annexed, signifying For., .ing: or by the Present or Future Root with 3 annexed.

EXAMPLES :-

त्र क्षम नम् यर ये गर् हैन हर देखयणेता

We were accounted as sheep for the slaughter (To be slaughtered cheep). (Rom. viii. 36).

करनेश्वर क्रम्भ कार्य दे दे देवार ने से Whatsoever things were written निर्वेषयण्य

aforetime were written for our learning. (Rom. xv. 4).

The Colloquial is the Root with \$79 or \$19, or \$19 annexed: TE THE THE THE THE WE were regarded as sheep for the यर्भेद (वर मार्केर यदे सुना)!

अर केंग प काम उदा केंद्रे क्षेत्र पदि Whatever was formerly written was (व मेर्रे) दिवर्षमध्ये

written for our learning.

Many Participial expressions with a Present or Past signification are also formed by samexing to the bare Verbal Root, or to the Participle, the Auxiliary Verbal Particles already dealt with at an earlier stage of this paragraph. The following are all annexed to the Root:

ने, में में, के, के

...ing. Present signification. Periphrastic form

भ, जि, भी, भी

....ing. Present. Sometimes periphrastic.

5. 5. \$...ing

....ed. Present or Past according to root.

5. 65, 45 ... ing. ... ed. Usually Present, but sometimes

বুম. বুম. and এম.	inged. (As, when, since. (Really & annexed to Participle. Usually Past.
W.	inged.	Much like 35° and 5° and their
यहिंद. and चहिंद.रे.		variants. Present. Present or Past.
5ª.		Present or Past.

The following are annexed to the Participle:-

E.-Gerunds.

This name is another instance of the attempt that has somewhat unfortunately been made to present the mysteries of Tibetan in the guise of western nomenclature. What has already been dealt with under the heading Verbal Noun was really the Gerund in the Nominative case (equivalent to the Present Infinitive); and the constructions usually called Gerunds in Tibetan Grammars are really a kind of Participial expressions; none other, in fact, than those which we have just been considering.

Here reference may be made to a form of the Gerund in the genitive case which is common in Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, though it might equally well have apppeared under the heading Verbal Noun.

EXAMPLES :-

ষ্ট্রবার্থনার বিশ্বনার নির্মান বিশ্বনার বিশ্বনার Brethren, these things ought not so to be (of the being so, there is not propriety). (James iii. 10).

ट्र जीश हुश पर् निर्धास्

We ought to give the more earnest heed to the things that were heard (of the taking pains by us as regards the heard-things there is the more propriety on necessity). (Heb. ii. 1).

दशक्ति। (or क्रियि or क्रिक्ति)

Now is the time to buy, i.e. of buying = for buying.

(N.B.—This last is Colloquial.)

F .- Indicative.

(a) PRESENT.

In Literary Tibetan this is formed with the Present Root in several ways, some of which are as follows:—

1.—By the simple Root for all persons, singular and plural; as द्विन्।
1 go; हि5 दिन् Thou goest; विद्विन्। He goes; द्विस्पर्वे We go,
etc.: ध्यानीहरः I send, हि5 गुँश निहरः Thou sendest, etc).

2.—At the end of sentences, by the simple Root as above, with the addition of \widetilde{A} in the case of verbs like \widetilde{A} , the root of which ends in a vowel, and, in the case of other verbs, reduplicating the final letter of the root, and putting over it; as \widetilde{A} I go; \widetilde{A} I send, and so for all persons, singular and plural.

. In fact, throughout all conjugations the singular and plural are alike.

Where, however, the Root ends in β , another β with \sim superposed is not added, but the \sim is put over the first β . Thus 556.

3.—By putting the Infinitive into the Terminative case with र and adding the auxiliary है or है हैं। Do, or Does, for all persons; as द्वारा है कि का द्वारा है हैं। I do walk हिंद विचारा है हैं। Thou dost walk; विद्वारा है हैं। He does walk; द्वारा है हैं। I do know, etc. An intensive form.

- 4.—A rather obsolete form is to add the $\Im 5$ or $\Im 5$ direct to the Root; as $5 \Im 3$ 1 do go, etc., $5 \Im 3$ 1 do know, etc.
- 5.—Periphrastically, by the simple Participle Present, combined with the appropriate conjugation of Q572 or \$\tilde{\Sigma} \tilde{\Sigma} \tag{To be, or any of their elegant or honorific forms. But this is rather a doubtful form and in any case old.

EXAMPLES :-

ত্বের্ল্র নিউন্, or মঠিয়।

हिँद বে্ল্র নিউন্, or নার্ব।

किट বর্ল্র নিউন্, or মঠিয়, or

বর্ল্র , or নার্ব, or মঠিয়, or

বর্লা, or নার্ব, or মের্ন্র , he is going.

or মঠিয় নার্ব।

6.—Periphrastically, by connecting the root with the appropriate conjugation of W5 T To be, the link being one of the auxiliary particles निज, नुज, नुज, जिन or W5 according to the rule relating to the final letter of the root, as:—

「本で可うでです。」

I am sending.

Thou art starting.

The is throwing, offering.

「名質、現るで述す。」

I am going.

I am going.

7.—Periphrastically, by connecting the root with the appropriate elegant or honorific form of W5'Z' or 359'Z', the link being the auxiliary particle 53' or 35' This is, however, obsolete

EXAMPLES :-
दश-मोर्डिट-पर्वेद-सकेश । । व

I am sending.

Thou art sending.

274

मिट दोश महिं : नहीं अर्थ शं, or महिन ; He is sending. or सकेश मारेत्।

And :-

टसम्प्रेट निर्दे निर्देश

छेरणेश्रमहरूपविश्वस्य

म्हिः नीश्रमहें विदेश प्रविनाशः, or अटतः, or प्रविनाशः सदि।

As regards the Colloquial, when the Present Root of a verb ends in an inherent W, or Q or in or , that Present Root is generally used for the Present Indicative. With all other verbs the Colloquial, according to Mr. Bell, usually adopts the Perfect Root, if any; or, as seems more likely, at least the sound of it. When writing the Colloquial it is advisable, or allowable, to employ the proper root.

The formation of the tense then proceeds thus:- .

- 1.—The Root (Present or Perfect) for all persons, as INT I see or look; CNITEQ I bring forth; CNIQ I request; but either CNITEC or [N-955, I send.
- 2.—Periphrastically. The Root (Present or Perfect) combined with the appropriate conjugation of W5.47 To be; the connecting link being भ, भ, or ч, of these last two), agreeably to the final letter of the root.

EXAMPLES:-

दशक्षेत्रमार्ख्रा

I am looking.

ট্র-বের্জ (or ব্রুর দ্বি) শ্রীবর্ণ।

Thou art starting.

দিল্লুর (or প্রুরয়) শ্রীঅর্, or He is arriving. पर्मा, or व्यर्धारेरा

TIBETAE GRAMMAR.

(b)—IMPERECT.

This expresses the idea of the Periphrastic Past: Was, wast, wereing.

In Literary Tibetan it may be rendered by the Perfect root (if any), with I or I annexed combined with the Indicative Present of Literary WII To be. Thus:—

अद्भुष्य देवे मिंद्यस्य प्रस्तु And Saul was consenting unto his death. (Acts viii. 1.)

Or it may take the form of the Perfect Root (if any) with one of the auxiliary Verbal Particles or Suspensives annexed, and combined with অনুমান্ত্ৰ

EXAMPLES:

भेभार्य विश्वभावसञ्जा वामान्य होर Many were (being) guthered to gether and were praying. (Acts xii. 12.)

Probably however, it would generally be found put participially.

Thus:—

न्ति दुस शु है नहस्र दुस्स ने नदस्य In those days, when the number of the disciples was multiplying (the number, etc. multiplying). (Acts vi. 1.)

This almost endlessly Suspensive Construction, as the ordinary feature of a Tibetan sentence, which really only contains an absolute statement at the end, must never be forgotten.

In the Colloquial the Imperfect Indicative has no special form. It simply employs the Present Tense construction, leaving the context (generally some adverb like FANN Yesterday, Westerday, Long ago), to indicate the Past idea, if it exists.

EXAMPLES:

भित्र । प्रमान पिट वा विमानी स्पर्त प्र Yesterday I mas going to Court.

म्बलामुदेवन्याम् नायेवाद्यायम् नी प्रिन The herd was roving about in the

हर से सेव रट दर्नी विर य दर्ना

Anciently man resembled a monkey.

(c)-PERFECT.

This, which expresses the idea Have, hast or has ed, is rendered, in both Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, by the Perfect Root combined with the appropriate elements of War To be, which, it will be remembered, are not quite the same in the two modes. Thus, in Literary Tibetan the construction is as follows:

दसम्बद्धारमध्येद्रते।

I have spoken.

हिंद्र.गुरामश्रदशःसद्दमान् or, occasionally, Wata 1

Thou hast spoken.

मूट.मीश.मिसंटश.च.लुर.रे

He has spoken.

This tense is not infrequently used for our Past Indefinite. Thus:

दं वे देव वर्ष वा व्याप्त वा वा विकास

To this end came I forth. (Mark i. 39.)

In Colloquial the construction is as follows:-

टश्रम्भ्राह्म राज्य

I have spoken

मुद्रिः गुरुष्य प्रस्ता प्रमु or देद्। Thou hast spoken.

मिरापाद्यद्यादादेन or occasionally He has spoken.

95ना

This also is often used for our Past Indefinite. Thus:

P. NC. CN. 2. 92. 34. C. CN .

. bought this horse yesterday.

Another Colloquial rendering of the Perfect Tense is to add वैट. or श्रूट. or ल्रांट. or अर्थ. or even श्रूट. पर्या. or वैट. श्रूट. to the Perfect Root, if any; the construction being the same for all persons.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Thus :--

दशःह्वानः प्रतिरः स्प्रदशः स्पर्

I have brought the box.

I have read the book

म्रिश-ली-मी-ध्रेच-चैट-।

He has received the letter.

निर्देश्वीस्ता

The dog has died.

मि.शक्. रे.शचा चर्ट्र श्र्राट पर्वेची।

The suit has been decided.

Certain verbs usually take \(\frac{1}{2} \) in preference to \(\tilde{

(d) PAST INDEFINITE.

In Literary Tibetan, at the end of sentences, this consists of the plain Perfect Root for all persons, with the final letter generally reduplicated.

EXAMPLES

ने वहार हैं। ने वहार हैं। ने वहार हैं।

Then they came up to Jesus and took him. (Matt. xxvi, 50.)

मिट मीय ब्रिट माय नहीं हिर र् ह्वि है।

He came forth conquering and to conquer. (Rev. vi. 2)

278

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

When the verb possesses no Perfect Root the Present Root is used.

EXAMPLES :-

अटरशर्ये के मान्य निमा श्रम युमाराक्स And I saw another angel ascend from the sun rising. (Rev. vii. 2.) 9वेंबयर अवेंदिरे।

But in phrases like the following, introductory to what a speaker has said, the Perfect Participle is always used :-

लं न्यम्ब्रूद्या

Jesus said. (John xx. 17.)

हेर अम मन द्वास देश हे ने निका Mary Magdalene came and said to इम्राथ केर्य।

the disciples. (John xx. 18.)

क्रेम्ब्र्सम्ब्र्स्स्सम्भूसम्बर्धाम्या The other disciples said unto him.

(John xx. 25.)

देवे व्यन् च च सम्बद्धाः

Thomas answered and said. (John xx. 28.)

But note the following construction where the verb, being at the end of the sentence, is not put participially, but in the form of the plain Perfect Root again :-

अंभुशमिय। "दिश्वे समूद्रियाद्रद्रा Jesus to him...blessed are they नुसाय इससाय देवें लिसम्बद्धार में

that have not seen and yet have believed. Thus he said. (John xx. 29.)

Sometimes one sees :-

वेसमास्ट्रस्य प्रविक्र के।

Thus it has been said. (1'Cor. x. 7.)

Note also the following construction, where १७७४ for she could does not occur at the end of a sentence, and is put participially:

अन्तर्गीसमाद्रम्यम् प्रमान्य । The woman hath done what she could. (Mark xiv. 8.)

In the Colloquial the Past Indefinite is rendered by the piain Perfect Root, if any, or, if none, then by the Present Root, with BE or WC added : and this holds for all porsons.

EXAMPLES :-

प्राचित्र क्रि. द्वा क्षेत्र विद्याल । sent my clerk to Court to-day.

व्यम् शःश् । दशः भी में में में में में में प्राप्त । I received the letter all right.

In these cases, however, it would be just as correct to use the Perfect Tense: \Past \Past

(c) PLUPELFEOT.

This tense, which expresses the idea Had...ed, is seldom or never seen in Literary Tibetan at the end of a sentence, i.e. as an absolute statement. It is usually met with in an introductory or suspensory clause, and is then rendered participially with a past signification. Thus:—

लट. ट्रे.ज. चर्चास्य ह्या. चर्टा बुझ ।

And when he had considered the thing; i.e. Having considered, etc. (Acts xii. 12.)

लेखाः बेर्द्या

When she had thus said: i.e. Having thus said. (John xx. 14.)

Sometimes it is turned into an adjective phrase, i.e. the Past Participle is put in the genitive case. Thus:—

ल. चैयु. भे. मैं र पर्वचा तयु. चर्मा ता

Where the body of Jesus had lain. (John xx. 12.)

In phrases like the following it is constructed by combining wattreet with the Perfect Participle, thus making a sort of Past Infinitive.

EXAMPLES :-

ট্রিই ই দ্রীন মের্ব না দেব ব্রহার I heard you had gone (you to have gone) to Darjeeling.

নির্ন্তুমার্ম হা নাইদার্ম নাত্রির দাহের। I thought you had bought (to have bought) the horse.

TIBETAN GRAMM

280

प्रश्रीहर्ष प्रभागाद्य प्रश्रीप्र When they saw that the work had been entrusted (to have been entrusted) to me.

When it does appear at the end of sentence, it may take the form of the Perfect Root, followed by on, and combined with the Present Indicative of W5'U'. Thus:—

दशःवर्द्दशः व्य

I had sem:

मिंत्रण्डिस न्तरः वस निर्मा

Thou hadst sent.

मिसा वर्दा वहा व्या पर or पर्मा

He had sent.

or स्रेंद्रश्रद्रा

Or better :

हिंद्र'ग्रीस'यरट स्ट्रिंद्र' or वर्तुमा or स्ट्रिंद्र'

Ditto.

Sometimes, e.g. in cases in which the direct mode of speech is adopted, the Pluperfect is avoided in favour of the Perfect

EXAMPLES :

प्रथा प्रमाण हराय। दशामी हुन्य महित्यामा ध्रमाण हराय। दशामी हुन्य महित्यामा ध्रमाण हराय। दशामी हुन्य महित्यामा

Mary Maydalene cometh (having come) and telleth (told) the disciples, I have seen the Lord; and how that he had (has) said these things unto her (me). (John xx. 18.)

The Colloquial has no special Pluperfect Tense. Any of the preceding Past Tenses belonging to it may be used (whichever is the more convenient), or even perhaps the Literary construction in 32 attached to the Perfect Root and combined with 22

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

EXAMPLES :-

मि श्रेमश्राय दर र विव श्रेट ।

When he arrived I had gone.

दशद्योक मिया द मी दशप्त प्राप्त । I had already sent him the book.

田.岛.女.切.4知.MC.6点.知.近C.1

He had never been to Lhasa.

(Note .-- KT (pron. nyung) Ever, or, with a negative, Never, 18 11 all tenses attached to the root, and treated as part of the verb.)

In other respects the Colloquial constructions are much like the Literary.

EXAMPLES :-

मिंदा अवद अ निर्देश or विद्राय अदि I did not know that he had married. त.एश.चुश.श.श्रट.।

页刻[375]

When he had gone.

(f) FUTURE.

The Literary construction of this tense is either with the plain Future Root (if any) of the verb, or with the Present Infinitive in the Terminative case, combined with the auxiliary verbs and and become, or be; J'A' To become or do; and AL'A, or XL'A To come. The construction with 50 is Intensive. There is also another construction with the Present or Future Root combined with 5 and the auxiliary verb War To be. This carries the meaning I am to, or I have to. All these constructions, save the last, are used with all persons.

EXAMPLES :-

हराद्येक दे हिद्भागित है। दश्रन्धे कु ने हिन् अमिर्दे प्रमानिक प्रमानिक book. दश्र-द्यो क दे हिंद त्य मार्नेट चर नुद्रे।

दसन्दोकने होन भागित पर सिट ।

दसन्दोक ने हिन भागित दे ।

दसन्दोक ने हिन भागित के ।

हिन के सन्दोक ने हिन भागित के ।

विकास मिरान्ये के ने हिन भागित के ।

विकास मिरान्ये के ने हिन भागित के ।

I shall send thee the book.

I am (or have) to send thee the book.

Thou art (or hast) to send me the book.

He is (or hath) to send thee the book.

In the Colloquial the Simple Future is formed either with \widetilde{WL} (for all persons) annexed to the Perfect Root (or probably more correctly to the Future Root), or with the Present Root combined with the Present Indicative of \widetilde{WAL} To be, the link between them being \widetilde{W} , \widetilde{Y} , or \widetilde{y} , according to rule with reference to the last letter of the Root.

EXAMPLES :-

विस-द्ये क दे विद्यामान्य विस्ति। विद्यान्य क दे विद्यामान्य विस्ति।

Or :-

टक्ष.चिंहर.ची.लुद्र।

वित्रिंगुर्सामित्रिंगीरित्।

मिर्शामिरिट मी देर।

I shall send thee the book.

Thou wilt send me the book.

He will send thee the book.

I shall send.

Thou wilt send.

He will send.

The other Future tenses, as known to Tibetan, are only found in connection with the Subjunctive and Conditional Moods. The first is similar to the Perfect tense. Thus:—

दश.चर्ट.च.शूर्।

हिंद. श्रीशंपर द.प. प्रतीयाः, or देवा

विकायन्दर वारेन्। or वर्ना

I would send.

Thou wouldst send:

He would send.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

However, with this the Simple Future may also be used.

The second is formed with the Perfect Participle combined with the Indicative Present of 3757. Thus:—

दशक्द्र वर्षेत्।

I would have sent.

हिंदिगीशनहर वर्षेद्र or वर्तना

Thou wouldst have sent.

विस्य वर्ष्ट्र वर्षेत्, or वर्ष्ट्र वर्ष्ट्र मार्ने He would have sent.

Or even thus :-

EA.

म्रा

or gri He would have sent.

He would have sent.

N.B.—The Future Root is seroom used in the Colloquial, unless, in the case of verbs like 75.7, it really lurks in the sound of 75.7 as said to be sometimes used in the Future tense, and in the Participles, etc. Even in Literary Tibetan it is not met with very much.

G .- Subjunctive or Conditional.

When the sentence consists of a conditional clause dependent upon a preceding hypothetical clause in the Present Tense with 50.11, or 5 alone, the conditional clause takes the Indefinite Future in Literary 55. or Colloquial 55. for all persons. In this Literary and Colloquial Tibetan are the same.

EXAMPLES :-

माय हिंदे. ब. हर्न. चीस ट. वा मोड्स हाट. घर. If ye love me ye will keep my commandments.

284

हिंद नुष्य मिं श दे द्विश वर्षेत्र स्थितः (or I) thou askest him he will give.

When the preceding clause is in the Past Tense, and the conditional clause signifies I, Thou, He, etc., would.., this last clause, both in Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, takes the Perfect Participle, combined with War in the Present Indicative, which, it will be remembered, is not quite the same in the two languages. Thus, in Literary Tibetan:—

मिंद्र समाणिश्वाद प्रेमाय भेदाद। दिः 11 ye know me yo would know my Father also. (John xvi. 7.) भवाणा दि प्रेमाय भेदादे or प्रमाणी।

हिन् गुरु प्रमान है वा प्रमान । we loved me ye would rejoice (i.e. be glad.) (John xiv. 28.)

This construction may also apparently be used when the conditional clause signifies Would have...d, e.g. ATTWAT Would not have died (John xi 21), ATTWAT Would not have crucified. (! Cor. ii. 8); but the construction in WTT (to which we shall come presently) is better.

The Colloquial is much the same as the above.

EXAMPLES :

मुद्दि केंद्र दिन्द्र प्राप्त का कि or ब्रिन्थ प्राप्त विश्व का अल्ला would also know my Father.

Or, for all persons :-

टश.ट्. पुश्राचाल्य

I would know.

हिंदि की शास प्रमान है ना , or देरी

Thou wouldst know.

क्रिंग्ट्र. येशत. इटे. o. ४८ची

He would know.

But, when the preceding clause is in the Past Tense, and the conditional clause signifies Would have d, then, both in Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, this last clause ought to be constructed with .he Perfect Participle combined with the appropriate forms of W5'5" in the Present Indicative. Thus, in Literary Tibetan :--

रिन्दरभारीयवादशहिर्द्रमसायासुसारा II it were not so, I would have told you. (John xiv. 2.) व्याद् I would have win **८श.संश.रा.लूर्**। Thou wouldst have told. हिर्ग्रेशःश्रुशःयत्रन्ता

मिर्ह्म श्रुर्थ पर्दे , or प्रमा, or प्रमा . He would have told. 1755

The Colloquial construction is similar.

EXAMPLES:

वर्दे वर्षाय भेवत्र दस्य र्हे यार तर ए सेन का स्तर सेंद or 275.4241

Were it not so I would have told you.

प्रशाहित पर देश के हिंद स्प्रेटश पा ततुमा) If I had asked you, would you have come?

मिंद्राटा वर्ष्ट्र or देशस्त्र etc. | He would not have asked me.

II. -Potential.

In the Colloquial this is formed by adding the auxiliary \$7.7 To be able, properly conjugated, to the Present Root of the verb it governs. Thus:

. 286

PRESENT.

(CN) मिर्टि श्रेप (for all persons).

(I) can send.

(CN) निर्ट मुक्किट (for all persons).

दशक्तिः व्याणे स्रि

I can send.

हिंद् गुर्भ नार्दे पुर गु पद्मा

Thou canst send.

सिंश निर्देश मुच गु रेंग् or पर्मा or रेंग् He can send यरेरा

PAST.

(CAT) = TET AT ME. | (for all per-(I) could send. sons).

ट्समहिंद व्यामार्थि।

I could send.

हिंद गुंब महिंद मुद्र या पद्रमा or देद। Thou couldst send.

मिश्रामिट्ट प्रुवायारेद or वर्गा।

He could send.

दशन्त्रिंदः बुवःयः स्त्रि। हिर्गीशनिर्द्धन्यत्नुन। ब्रिन्दिर्मः, Thou couldst have sent. मिंडा निर्दे : मुन पार्थे or वित्ता or भूत नुदः He could have sent.

or gawa, I could have sent.

The Literary construction with भूप्य is as follows:

PRESENT.

ZN'

निर्देश्ययंत्र

He can

PAST.

CN. I could नहर विश्वास्ट्रा Thou couldst मूट्रं मीश He could Or :

दशमिंद्र-श्रवायाधिक व

I could send.

हिंद्राणुक्षामुद्रे प्रवास प्रतिमाना का अवर्षे।

Thou couldst send.

मिट मीशामित्र म्यापार्थित है।

He could send.

दशःगर्देः घवःयः व्यं रे

I could have sent.

(And so on as in the Colloquial.)

But the Literary construction may also be with the auxiliary 4817 To be able, which, unlike ATH, governs the Infinitive put in the Terminative case. Thus :-

PRESENT.

दशःमोर्टेट पर बुद्धा हो।

I can send.

(And so throughout.)

PAST.

दशःमोर्टेट पर वशायाध्येव दे। हिन् गीरामहिट पर रेशास देवा में

I could send.

or ध्रेंब रें।

Thou couldst send.

He could send.

दशमार्ने पर वृश्य पेपिट् दें।

मिंट मीशामिंद्र यर वृक्षाय भीव वे।

I could have sent.

हिर्नित्रमहिट वर बुधाय व नेना में।

Thou couldst have sent

मिट नीश मिट्र चर कुश दा र्ये द रे

He could have sent.

or पर्माम्में or सर्म्यः स्वार्

N.B.—It is important to remember that A, both in Literary Tibetan and the Colloquial, is annexed to the Root of the verb it governs.

I.—Probability, etc.

Phrases expressive of the likelihood or possibility of doing any thing are, in Literary Tibetan, rendered by means of the auxiliary verb 55% To be possible, or by the expression 55% Who knows?

—May be.

EXAMPLES :-

क्षानिकार त्र्में ते or त्रमें नर त्रमुर रें। I may go; perhaps, possibly, probably I shall go.

EN 450 (or even 450 45) \$15 1 may send.

Bर्गुअम्पितः (or परित्परः) श्रेर् रें। Thou mayest send.

मिट मीस मार्नेट (or मिर्नेट चर) श्रेन न | He may send.

देशमिर्देश्चर्याधिर्देश I might send.

हिंदि की समिति हैंदि दानि कि Thou mightest send.

or श्रेष्ट्रेष्ट्रे ।

मिट मीस महिंद श्री प्याप्येत हैं। He might send.

दशन्तिः र्येत् पर्मित्ति। I might have sent.

हिर् कुंश निर्ट श्रीर पत्र नाने। Thou mightest have sent.

मिर नीश नार्दे श्रीर पायर ना ना , He might have sent.

or ॲरर्<u>र</u>

The auxiliary R5TH To be, combined with the Root or the Infinitive, put in the Terminative case, also conveys the idea of probability or likelihood. Thus:—

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

भ्रत्रित्मूर वर्गा दशरे छेर र्नेश धर पर पर ना। नुस्यादे द्याक्ष शुप्त द्या।

This man is probably going.

I shall probably have to give it.

That bottle is likely to crack.

In the Colloquial & AN, or The Perhaps, or the auxiliaries Waras, or Wari, may be used instead of 3541

N.B. - ਘੌਰ ਸ਼੍ਰਾਂ is sometimes written ਘੌਰ ਪ੍ਰਸ਼੍ਰਾਂ Which of these two is the more correct form is somewhat uncertain.

EXAMPLES :-

श. वेश. ट. प्रमामी।

I may go, or be going.

शुनियाहिं पर्में मी पर्मा, ज देरा

Probably thou wilt go.

शुः वेश मिं वर्गे नी रेर, or वर्मा।

It is likely he will go.

माठमा नेर्दर दार देशें मी।

Perhaps I shall go.

(And so on, as above.)

दःदर्ने ने भेद दाद् : or भेद ने

I may be going.

(And so throughout.)

ट'र्सेट'च'र्धेद'च'वर् or धेद'र्चे।

I might be going.

(And so throughout.)

다시다고 교육 다 교육 이 교육 기 I might have been going.

(And so throughout.)

माठेमा नेर कर र श्रीट मध्येत।

I might go.

माउँमा ने दिन सिंद प्रायन्त्रमा, or देन। Thou mightest go.

महिमा हो न कि लांद्रीर कर के देन । He might go.

मारेमा नेदाबादा शेंदा मारेदा

I might have gone.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

290

मञ्ज्ञ निर्दानिर्धिर प्राप्त , or त्रुमा He might have gone.

or धिर् य रेर्।

J .- Hortative.

In the Colloquial this is rendered by 5 \$\text{N} \text{N} \text{ or vulgarly 5 \$\text{N} \text{N}} \text{need. To be necessary. To be obliged or compelled; also where we Must, Ought, Should, Have to. Like \$\text{N} \text{N} \text{N} \text{To be able. it is texted to the Root, not to the Infinitive, and is used with or without the auxiliaries \$\text{N} \text{N} \text{N} \text{N} \text{N} \text{And \$\text{N} \text{N} \text{

EXAMPLES:

न्द्रान्त्र प्राप्त का प्रमाणि Now I must start. प्रमाणि का प्रमाणि I have to send him the book क्ष्मि

ट.र्च. क.चि.च.चार्रेट.र्चोकायाधेक। I had to send him the book.
ट.र्चे.क.चि.च.चार्रेट.र्चोची धेका ! shall have to send him the book.
ट.य.र्ट्हेन्चीट.व्य.व.ची.र्चेश or र्चोची I want to go to Darjecting.
थर।

हिन्द्रान्त्रअन्तुः अद्यान्निनित्न्न। You ought to come with me.

In Literary Tibetan the construction for all persons is in 5 NT, not added to the Root, but to the Infinitive put in the Terminative case. Thus:

ह्मुत्रियः सर द्योषः स्

He must increase but I must decrease, (John iii. 30).

There is however, another construction for all persons in 5 or 57 (Future Root of 55,27), added to the Infinitive in the Terminative case or to the Root, but sometimes used by itself.

EXAMPLES :-

ダイダ・型ダ・ロガダ・グ・グ (世) カナ・ゴー

(Dulva, Vol. 5, Leaf 30).

Let us not (i.e. we should, ought, must not) be weary in well-doing. (Gal. vi. 9).

All should hear this precept;

Having heard, should keep it well:

Whatever things we do not ourselves like;

Should not be done to others.

(Tangyur).

You must exert yourself and arise;

And walk according to Buddha's teaching.

There may be said to be still another construction in a added to the Future Root (or to the Present Root if there is no Future Root) combined with ward in the Present Indicative. This expresses the idea of I am to, or I have to. Thus:—

<u> इसम्मात्रः कुः</u> योदा

हिंद्र गुरु मारद मुं ५ तुना।

मिश्रामाऽटः मुं प्येत्।

ट.उ.च्ये.च्ये.क्ये.

हिंदिन्यों मुन्दून।

मिः द्र्रीं क्ं भेव।

I have to send.

Thou hast to send.

He has to send.

I am to go.

Thou art to go.

He is to go.

And also another in W Thus:

दायमात्रदायादेत्।

I hace for umy to send.

= नायना अन्देन।

I buy (or umi lo an.

K. - Purposive.

To express In order that, In order to, With the object of, or other similar phrase, the Infinitive is put in the Genitive case, followed, in the Colloquial, by 5500, and, in Literary Tibetan, by 355 or 555, the construction being the same for all persons.

EXAMPLES :--

or Br. or Fry!

CM नेश दारे दें वा मिश C' वा चेश प He wrote to me in order that I might know.

ब्रिन निम्त नर नेन पर प्रेर नु पर में प्राप्त कार्य of pleasing you.

निर्मानिस्मार्श्वेन पर्द देन त्याद्ये क देन्त्रीमा He is reading the book in order to learn law.

L .- Precative.

In Literary Tibetan the construction is in §T or]; Imperatives of RETU and TEUT To allow; the verb it governs being put in the Terminative case of the Root or of the Infinitive.

EXAMPLES :-

स्यार्नाश्चान्।

Let these go their way. (John xviii, s.)

Let me send thee some tea.

If the governed verb is active and transitive, the subject is in the

निर्मित्र द्वारा कुंश रह नी मिनिर्मे Let the dead bury their dead.

The Colloquial construction may also be in [7], but it is usually in 737 (the Perfect Root used as an Imperative); but in either case only the Root of the governed verb is used.

EXAMPLE:

N.B. ইল্ম' in the polite expression ইল্ম'ন্স্চ', is merely the Colloquial way of pronouncing সুন্ধ' in the polite Literary expression মুন্ম'ন্স্চ' Please, Be so good as etc.

M. -Permissive.

In Literary Tibetan the construction is in Ent. To be allowed or permitted: the governed verb being generally put in the Instrumental case of the Infinitive, and the subject in the Agentive, if connected with a Transitive verb

EXAMPLES:

[स्यान्दिः प्रश्नार्ते | I may (or am allowed to) send.

[स्द्रिंगु सम्बद्धः प्रश्नार्ते | Thou mayest send.

[स्थान्दिः प्रश्नार्ते | He may send.

[स्थान्दिः प्रश्नार्ते | I was allowed to send.

[स्थान्दिः प्रश्नार्ते | I shall be allowed to send.

(N.B. This construction in 되자, or 되자, is generally used in books only.)

Sometimes the construction in 5CT. To be suitable, or proper, is used idiomatically instead of the above.

EXAMPLE :

Whaterer has been done is proper, which is the ordinary idiom for You may do as you please, or whatever you like.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

The Colloquial construction is in APA added to the Root of the governed verb. Subject in Nominative for Intransitive verbs.

EXAMPLES :-

दः प्रज्ञों केंगा, or केंगा मी र्पेर्।

हिंद् दर्में केंग, or केंग मी दर्म।

मित्रज्ञें केंग, or केंग मी स्पर,

or वर्तुना, or सेर्परेर्।

द्भार्थें हेम् यं केंद्र , or हेम् केंद्र

दःवर्गेंद्रेन्नामी भेषः, or क्रेंगेंग्रेंदः।

or रूची.लूट.।

मित्र्याक्रियामीरेदः वर क्रियाळ्टा।

I may (or am permitted to) go.

Tho' mayest go.

He may go.

I might have gone, or would have been permitted to go.

I shall be allowed to go.

Thou wilt be allowed to go.

He will be allowed to go.

But with Transitive verbs the subject is in the Agentive.

EXAMPLES :--

दशमाद्र केंगा

दश:बन्दःहेनः or हेन्यःपःभेता

दरामान्द्रः सेंचाः, or मन्द्रः सेंचाः स्टा

Aiso note:

I may (or am allowed to) send.

I was allowed to send.

I shall be allowed to send.

दर्बर् हेंचा ने देर रहा or हेंचा महा Are we allowed to smoke in this

N:-Oplative.

In Literary Tibetan this may be formed by putting the verb in the Terminative case of the Infinitive and adding The the Imperative of ATE. To be. To become followed by of 11. and NE. an interjection.

294

EXAMPLE :-

दशानिट्ट. चर. चीर. वे. छाट. ।

Would, or Oh, that I might send.

Another Literary construction is in 377, the Imperative of WE'T or 357 To come; the verb being similarly put in the Terminative case of the Infinitive.

EXAMPLES :-

टश महिट पर मेना हम।

Would that I might send.

हिर्श्राह्मा वर्षेत्र वर्षा वर्षेत्र वर्षा May you without futigue proceed happily. (Das.)

Another Literary construction is in & If, combined with the expression 3837 How suitable, or excellent.

EXAMPLES : --

C.は到えるが2と.1

Oh that, or would that. I were going.

C. M. SIC. 4. S. M. SC. 1

Would that I had not gone.

दशन्योक्षर् निर्माय्रेरक्षिण याधिक्षक्षे Would I were permitted to give you 4.2E.1

the book.

In the Colloquial the Root or the Infimtive of the verb is used, followed by ब्ना

EXAMPLES :-

ट.एम्. (य.) युना।

Would I were going.

दश'गेर्देट' (य') र्गेमा।

Oh that I might send.

The following Colloquialism is also heard :-

दान्द्रियात्राक्षा

Oh that I might send

दाय्जीय देनायाका।

Would I were going.

O .- Imperative.

It will be remembered that many verbs have no distinctively imperative Roots. Such, for instance, are NACA To see, and ALL To receive, each of which has only one Root throughout; and To weep and ALL To flee, each of which has only a Present and a Perfect Root. In all such cases the Present Root is used in Literary Tibetan for the Imperative, with the addition of the Imperative sign ALL, ALL To flee, each of which has only a Present and a Perfect Root. In all such cases the Present Root is used in Literary Tibetan for the Imperative, with the addition of the Imperative sign ALL, ALL TO FLE has a softening effect, and so has INCA A politer form adds ALL TO the Root, and a still more respectful form adds ALL TO the Root.

Rules, it is true, are given in some grammars for the formation of the Imperative Root, but, as they are somewhat complex, and, moreover, do not always work, it is just as easy and much safer to look up in the dictionary the Imperative Root of each individual verb, and remember it as well as one can.

Prohibitives are formed with A (never A except in the case of 5 and 5) preceding either the Imperative Root or the other part of the verb, if a compound one, e.g. A E , or A E , or A E , or E .

With some verbs, even though they have Imperative Roots of their own. the Present Roots, and not the Imperative Roots, are used for Prohibitions.

EXAMPLES :-

ব্রার To go: Present Root ব্রা; Imperative Root মান Go; .
Prohibitive ম'ব্রা (pron. Man-no.) Do not go.

35'3' To do: Present Root 35'; Imperative Root 38' or sometimes 35' Do: Prohibitive 8'35' Don't do.

Come; Prohibitive NGC Don't come.

In the case of Double Imperatives, the two Roots are united by

EXAMPLES :--

र्च्या.ज.र्ड्श.च्या।

Come and see. (John i. 39.)

In the Colloquial, if one is using the different Roots properly, the true Imperative Root, or, if none, then the Present Root, is adopted for the Imperative, as in Literary Tibetan.

EXAMPLES :-

ট্রি-শ্রীমার-পরি-রিশালা (for ঘা) ব্রীমা। Take charge of this horse.

साहेर्याचेर्।

Don't forget.

Or, if the Colloquial has a special Root of its own, it may be used

Examples:—

ই'বেই'বিশ্'না'ন্ত্ৰীই', or elegantly শ্ৰীম', or vulgarly দ্বীমা', Take charge of this horse.

But if, as may often be done, one is using the Perfect Root for all moods and tenses, then that Root is also used for the Imperative, with or without हैन, हैन, or निम्

If this latter Imperative sign is used at all, the Colloquial usually adopts the form উন্।

उना, however, is only used in the case of stern or urgent orders or injunctions, or when talking to coolies and the like.

The Colloquial equivalents for मुन्य नुर, मून्य म्नूदः, and । । are रम्य नुर, र्न्य म्नूदः, and । ।

স্ট is also largely used in the Colloquial instead of উল, and has a softening effect.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

The following are some of the commoner Colloquial Imperatives and Prohibitives:—

Infinitive.

व्रमाप To go.

35'A' To do.

WE'T or AE'T' To come.

प्रहिर स्टियः or प्रहिरं वः or प्रमिरं वः

To bring (in hand)

नर्दान (मर्दिन न) To send.

नुन्य (नुन्य) To pour.

Mara To lay or put down.

Imperative.

श्रदः or मुना Go.

र्जेश. or र्जेश. or त्रीश. 100.

ন্ন Come.

विष्टेर विना or विषय विना Bring

ब्रेंट or महिंद (उमा) Send.

व्युनाडा (वैना) Pour.

र्ह्में (बिना) Put down.

Negative.

हादनी Don'l go.

माने Donit do.

N'WE or N'3= Don't come.

प्रहित्र अपट Don't bring.

सान्द्रः or मान्द्रः Don't send.

अत्वा, or अविवास Don't pour.

अर्थिय or अप्रश्निय Don't put down.

As a matter of fact, in these matters there is no rule save custom; for, according as a man is more or less educated, so he will mix up in his speech literary with vulgar forms, and the only way to learn is to keep one's ears open and observe what the prevailing custom is amongst different classes of Tibetans; for some will prefer to use the roots properly, while others, knowing little or nothing of them, will adopt the sound of the perfect root. So far as speaking is concerned, it will not much matter which method is adopted, unless of course one is talking to a cultured Tibetan; but, when writing in Tibetan, the roots should be used properly, and the usage with the perfect root discarded.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

298

VI.—THE PASSIVE VOICE.

In Literary Tibetan, as a rule, the subject of a transitive active verb, or of a causative verb, is put in the agentive case, and the subject of a neuter or of a passive verb is put in the nominative or the accusative (objective) case. When, however, the active verb is intransitive, the subject is put in the nominative case. Moreover, when the subject, even of a transitive verb, is a pronoun emphatically used (as, for instance, with the particle annexed to it), the subject is put in the nominative case. Further, when the subject is obviously the agent or instrument, as, for example, when the postposition are expressly used with the objective, then it is not necessary, though duite allowable, for the subject to be put in the agentive case; in other words, it may appear in the nominative case.

EXAMPLES: --

ম্বালী মান্ত্রমার মি।

মান্ত্রমার মিন্ত্রমার মি।

মান্ত্রমার নির্মান ক্রিন্ত্রমার মিন্ত্রমার মিন্

But what is a Passive Verb in Tibetan? How does the construction of the Passive Voice differ from that of the Active Voice? In a sense every Tibetan sentence, even when the verb is what we call Active, is permeated with the Passive idea. For, even such a sentence as WNNININININI The father loveth the son, may be rendered equally correctly The son is loved by the father; for, literally translated, it is By the father, to, or as regards the son, a loving is. It practically therefore comes to this, that, when the subject is in the agentive case, the Active Voice is intended; but, when the subject of a transitive

verb is in the nominative or objective case, the Passive Voice is intended, unless some other structural peculiarity in the sentence indicates otherwise

The same remarks hold as regards the Colloquial. The subject in the agentive case indicates the Active Voice; the subject in the objective (with or without CI) indicates the Passive Voice. As a matter of fact, the Tibetan language strongly favours the agentive construction; and therefore the Passive Voice, or what passes as such, should be avoided as much as possible.

The Infinitive of the Passive Voice is, in Literary Tibetan, the same as the Participle Future of the Active Verb, i.e. the Future Root with the particle, e.g. 57 To be done.

In the Colloquial it is the Root with ক্লা, or সা added. These, however, may also be used in Literary Tibetan.

VII.—COMPOUND VERBS.

In Literary Tibetan these are of several kinds.

(a) A Substantive combined with an Active Verb.

ENAMPLE :

er. In such cases the Substantive remains constant, and 35'4' is conjugated regularly as an Active 4-Rooted verb; Present Root 35', Perfect 5N', Future 5', Imperative 5N|

(b) An Adjective in the Terminative case with ₹ combined with an Active Verb.

EXAMPLE:

Terminative case remains constant, and the Active Verb is conjugated regularly, or according to its nature with reference to the Roots it possesses.

301

(c) A Principal Verb in the Terminative case of the Infinitive with a Combined with an Active Auxiliary Verb.

EXAMPLES :-

महिंद्र पर पहनाय।

To permit to send.

मार्थेर सर पर मेर्

To awake ; To rouse.

In such cases the Principal Verb so formed remains constant, and the auxiliary is conjugated according to its nature.

(d) The Root of a Principal Verb put in the Terminative case with 5. 5. 5. or 5, agreeably to the final letter of the Root, combined with a Causative Verb.

EXAMPLE :-

नेर्नु पहनाय!

To bid to do

In such cases the Principal Verb so formed remains constant, and the Causative is conjugated according to its nature.

(e) The Present, Perfect, or Future Infinitive of a Principal Verb put in the Instrumental case and followed by the Root of an auxiliary.

EXAMPLES :--

टश.मोर्टट.चक्र.क्रमा

I am allowed to send.

दश्च पर्ट प्रसक्ता

I was allowed to send.

ट्श.मेर्ट.चश.क्र्मी

I shall be allowed to send.

Or, Present Infinitive of Principal Verb in Instrumental case, declining the auxiliary regularly in W531

EXAMPLES :--

नार्ट्र. चक्षक्रमा मी र्लर।

I am allowed to send.

मोर्ट्र. पश. क्र्मे. त. लूपे।

I was

म्प्रिंग्यशः कूर्याः तर विर्या

I shall be ,, ,, ,,

Here the auxiliary alone is conjugated.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

(f) A Principal Verb (itself consisting of the Root of one verb added to the Root of another) combined with an Active Verb. EXAMPLE—not very idiomatic, but merely adduced by way of illustration:—

वर्गेवरुग छेर्य।

To stroll about.

Here the two Roots remain constant, and the Active Verb is conjugated according to its nature.

(g) A Principal Verb (itself consisting of two Roots as above, combined with the Root of an Active Verb in the Terminative case with 5, 5 etc.), combined with a Causative Verb.

EXAMPLE :--

वज्ञवरुमानेर र वहमाय।

To cause to stroll about.

Here all except the Causative remains constant, and the Causative is conjugated according to its nature.

In the Colloquial the Infinitive and the Root of a verb are never put in the Terminative case as they are in Literary Tibetan.

Moreover, the Infinitive may represent the Substantive or Noun as well as the Verb.

Hence, when the Infinitive, in form, is combined with an auxiliary verb, it may be regarded either as a Substantive or as a Verb.

Thus 3NU may mean either A mistake or To make a mistake.

and hence the Colloquial phrase 3NU35U may be rendered either

To make a mistake, or To mistake, To err.

However regarded, the tendency of Colloquial Tibetan, when a Substantive or a Verb is combined with an auxiliary verb, is to drop the Infinitive form of the verb, or the full form of the Substantive, and to use only the Roct, though this is not always done.

For instance the Literary पूरा (5') भूगाय To arrange or prepare (literally To place in rows) is used Colloquially with 35'4, thus:—

पूरा (or even पू) भूगाउँ,

When, however. 257 To have, is the auxiliary, what looks like

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

302

a formal Infinitive is obviously a Substantive, e.g. 977 in 977.

IN To have a, or the, wish or desire, i.e. to wish or desire.

In short, the tendency to use the Root of the Principal Verb, or of the Substantive, holds, whether the auxiliary is an Active or a Causative Verb, though not where it is a verb like W5.77 To have.

The ordinary Colloquial Honorific auxiliary verb is The Tobe pleased, good enough, so kind as. It is combined either with Infinitives, or Roots followed by \$\overline{3}\$, or bare Roots.

EXAMPLES :-

विवारः (tor यः) नाबरःय। रुप्तः विदेशः विवादःय।

To give.

To return, or come or go back.

To aessre.

VIII.—In Literary Tibetan verbs of Becoming, Growing, Changing, Turning, Getting, and the like, are often expressed with the aid of the auxiliaries ANTO To become, etc. or ANTO To go, the latter being the more modern. The noun or adjective governed by such auxiliary is put in the Terminative case, e.g. ANTONIO or ANTO To become a Lama; ANTONIO or ANTO To get rich. But sometimes the Literary Tibetan has in these cases a special verb, e.g. ANTO Grow old

The Colloquial, when it does not have a special verb, uses ATT and does not put the noun or adjective in the Terminative case.

EXAMPLE :-

युनारात्नान To get rich; but क्षाय To grow old.

IX.—INCEPTION is expressed in Literary Tibetan with the aid of the verb 오늘마시디 이 클디지 (Perfect Root 디ố디지 or 클디지 Future Root 디클디지 Imperative Root 클디 or 클디지 To begin. It is used

with or without the prefixed word AT When used as an auxiliary the construction is that described under Compound Verbs, No. VII.

The Colloquial equivalent is () 되는 To begin, which when used as an auxiliary, may be combined either with the Infinitive or the Root (generally the Root) of the Principal Verb

Inception may also be expressed by the verb next noticed.

X.—IMMINENCE is expressed in Literary Tibetan (amongst other ways) by the verb ABNA To be about to, To be on the point of, To be just going to. When used as an auxiliary the Principal Verb is generally put in the Terminative case of the Infinitive.

EXAMPLE :-

टश्चत्री चर मात्रश्चा वायश

I was about to write; or as I was about to write. (Rev. x. 4.)

In the Colloquial the same idea is expressed by means of the auxiliary verb auxiliary verb auxiliary verb auxiliary verb auxiliary verb auxiliary verb.

EXAMPLES :-

दश्यीमीय्ययम्बर्भित्।

दशक्षेने व्यविम् अन्यक्षा

मिसट दसकी नीव सेव में लेंद्र।

I am just about to write.

I was just about to write.

Yesterday I was just about to write.

XI.—In Literary Tibetan Verbai Continuatives are expressed with the aid of some adverb like 55 or 575 Always, Continually, Perpetually, or of a phrase like 55 35 35 35 35 Without ceasing.

EXAMPLES :-

मुन्द्र-नेश्न-प्रम्पुर-क्रम्। द्रम्पुर्-नेश-पर-मुर-क्रम्। प्रम्-नेश-द्रम्-र्-(०० मुन्दु-क्रम्।

He hopes on, keeps on hoping, hopes continually.

Go on rejoicing; Rejoice always. (1 Thess. v. 17.)

Pray on; keep on praying; Pray without ceasing. (1 Thess. v. 18.)

Colloquially they are formed by repeating the Root of the verb, with \vec{A} , \vec{A} , or \vec{A} added to each Root, and combining the whole with \vec{A} , \vec{A} To do, as an auxiliary.

EXAMPLES :-

「「記事中」」 「記事」 「記事」 「記事」 「 shall go on eating. 「「記事」 「記事」 「記事」 「記事」 「記事」 「記事」 「記事」 「 So on reading this book. or 引み」)

XII .- FINALITY OR COMPLETE ACCOMPLISHMENT.

In earlier Literature this is expressed by putting the verb in the Terminative case of the Infinitive with ξ , and adding $\Re \xi$, the Root of $\Re \xi$. To be finished, and then conjugating regularly.

In later Literature the same construction is adopted, but, instead of It, use is made of It Perfect Root of GITT To be completed, terminated, finished, with or without the preceding adverbunced Will Wholly, Entirel:

The Colloquial custom is simply to add & to the Root of the verb, and then conjugate regularly.

EXAMPLES :-

त्सर्वः क.पर्ने वयानाः करः सूटः । त्सर्वः क.पर्ने वयानाः करः सूटः । त्सर्वः क.पर्ने व्यानाः करः सूटः ।

I am reading this book right through.

I have read this book right through.

I shall read this book right through.

XIII.—Desideratives are expressed, both in Literary Tibetan and in the Colloquial, with the aid of the auxiliary verbs (355%) To wish. To desire, and 597% (the vulgar Colloquial form of which is 597%) To wish, want, etc.

In Literary Tibetan 355 T is combined with the Infinitive of the

Principal Verb put in the Terminative case with 5, e.g. 5395 95 2555 I wish to see, but sometimes only the Root of the Principal Verb is used. Thus: ६ द्रमु दर्दे or even the Infinitive, ६ द्रमु द वर्दर्दे।

When ज्नारा or ज्नाप (which latter is never written) is used, the subject of course is put in the Dative case. Thus: in Literary Tibetan :-

टम्सर्वेट वर दम्स से।

I wish to see.

Or, in Colloquial:-

ट्यमर्डट पर्वेश।

ट्यासर्वेट द्वास मी सर्

प्यमर्थेट द्वा वीच्यर।

टमकेट मु १९५१।

I wish to see.

lo crave.

EXAMPLE :-

टाई हे मीट वाय में केट वर्ते।

I long to go to Darjeeling.

Instead of an another Literary form is विम्यादे विदेशमाँ I have a desire for going, i.e. to go.

XIV. -FREQUENTATIVES may be formed, not by repeating the Root of the Verb, but by the Periphrastic Present.

EXAMPLE :-

मिन् भिन्नशामः वात्रों नी वर्तामान।

Do you often go to Court (i.e., Law Courts)?

Or the adverb अर्द्धस्य सर्द्धस्य Often, may be added. Thus:—
मिंद्र मिंद्रस्य प्रदेशस्य सर्द्धस्य सर्द्धस्य पूर्वे

Do you often go to Court?

XV. -Use of the PERFECT ROOT in the Colloquial.

When the Present Root of a Verh ends in an inherent W (e.g. 27 To look), or in an inherent 3 (e.g. 5327 To bear, or bring forth), or in (e.g & To request, to ask). or in (e.g. & To live, feed, nourish), that Present Root is generally used for the Present Indicative, the Future Indicative in TWG etc., the Present Participle, Periphrastic Present Participle: Present Infinitive, Supine and Verbal Noun. Of course, it is quite allowable, and even proper, both when speaking and writing, and especially when writing the Colloquial, to use the Roots that are assigned to particular moods and tenses for those moods and tenses. It is said, however, that as a matter of fact this is seldom or never upne, at least in Vulgar Colloquial. It is also said that if, in the verbs above referred to, the Future is formed with WE for all persons, instead of with Two etc., the Perfect Root should be used; and that for all other verbs the Colloquial usually adopts the Perfect Root, if any, for all moods and This is very doubtful, except perhaps in vulgar Colloquial. The idea, especially as connected with the Future Tense, probably arises from the fact that the Perfect Root often has the same, or nearly the same, sound as the Future Root. For instance, in the Verb 3522 To send, the Perfect Root 355 and the Future Root ASE' sound alike or nearly alike. In this case, the better course would be to use 757 instead of 355 for the Future in WI The best course would be to use the Roots properly, mall cases.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX.

§ 39.—Most of what the student will desire to know under this head has already been dealt with in Chapter II, ETYMOLOGY, in connection with each of the different parts of speech, but a brief résumé of the main rules will doubtless be appreciated.

1.—Every Tibetan sentence is ordered thus: Subject, Object, Predicate.

EXAMPLES :-

दसद्येक दि ग्रेमिनी विभिन्।

I am reading this book.

ट or ट्याइंहिनीट्यवन्दिमाणु I want to go to Darjeeling.

क्र पर्टेर पर्यो क्रिट पर्टेर or वर्गे

- 2.—As regards the component parts of the subject, or of the object, if the student thinks more or less backwards, he will get a very fair idea of the order in which they should be spoken or written. That order is as follows:—
 - (a) The principal substantive; unless it is qualified by an adjective in the genitive case, in which event the adjective comes first.
 - (b) The adjective when in any case other than the genitive.
 - (c) Participial clauses containing relative or correlative pronouns, and auxiliary to the principal substantive. These follow the rule of the adjective.
 - (d) The numeral, or the definite or indefinite article, and then the postposition.
 - 3.—Adverbe precede, and interrogative pronouns immediately precede, the verb which they qualify or with which they are connected.
 - 4.—As regards the predicate, the verb comes last, every extension of the predicate preceding it. As regards the verb itself, the principal

verb comes first, either in the shape of an infinitive in the terminative case, or of a simple infinitive, or of a root, and then comes the active, auxiliary, or causative verb, these last alone being conjugated with reference to mood and tense.

5.—The general aspect of a Tibetan sentence, particularly if long and complex, is a series of subordinate clauses in a state of suspense, winding up with a definite statement.

EXAMPLE .--

रे. वंश मिट. मीश भे. क्ष्मीश श्रेश माज्ञेमश्र है। रे. व्य. खेवश वंश. च बिमाश दावश है. मार्थ रेश स्था मिट. मीश श्रेश हैं देमावाः क्ष्म प्रमार्थ रेश श्रेष्ट मीश श्रेष्ट रेश प्रमाण प्रमाण है। रे. व्य. खेवश वंश च बिमाश दावश । क्ष्म प्रमाण प्रमाण विकास क्ष्मिश स्था प्रमाण विकास क्ष्म प्रमाण विकास क्ष्म प्रमाण विकास क्ष्म प्रमाण विकास क्ष्मिश क्ष्म प्रमाण विकास क्ष्मिश क्ष्मि क्ष्मिश क्ष्मिश

And seeing the multitudes he went up into the mountain: and when he had sat down, his disciples came unto him and he opened his mouth and taught them, saying.

But the literal Tibetan is :-

Then by him the crowds seeing, into the mountain having gone, having sat down, the disciples into his presence having come, by him mouth having opened, to them teaching was said.

APPENDIX.

CONJUGATIONS.

Note. -These are intended for ready reference; and, to economize space, pronouns have been omitted, except at the beginning. The plural is the same as the singular. They are not to be regarded as rigid, immutable expressions, but as forms which take on a moulding according to the structural necessities of the sentence.

1.—Colloquial W5 To be present : To exist : To be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

E.M. 1

I am, or We are.

हिंदिलंद or बहुना

Thou art, or You ar.

मिंच्येन or प्रनुषा or व्यन्धरेत।

He or it is, or They are.

Or with an Indefinite signification:—

Past.

Same as Present, context shewing Tense.
Or:-

ट लेंद्र या भेदा 1 was.

দ্র্মির্মার্ম্বর্ল or occasionally অর্মার্ম্বর্ণ or (rarely, chiefly interrogatively) অর্মার্ম্বা Thou wast

मिं भेर वार्त or occasionally भेर वाय्रुम or rarely भेर पाभेर। He was.

Imperfect: I was existing.
Perfect: I have existed.
Pluperfect: I had existed

Same as Present, context shewing Tense; or same as above form of Past.

Future.

WE for all persons : I shall wrist.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS

Present: If (so and so)...(then) I shall exist.

(Present Root).... Tor all persons.

Past: If I would exist.

(Perfect Root)....ব অস্থাতিব and so on as in Past Tense
Indicative Mood.

Or : -

(Perfect Root).... 🗸 Ā f. a. p. (= for all persons).

Perfect: If I would have existed.

(Perfect Root).... 4 45 or 35 or 35 f. a. p.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: I can exist.

र्भेर विव. or स्रेर बैव सूट. t. a. b.

Or :-

ल्ट्रेबिय की लावा

र्भर वुष में विष्य (or देर or rarely, chiefly interrogatively, भेरा।

र्भेर मुन गुःरेर (or प्रुमा or rarely भिन्)।

Past : I could exist.

लेर्-ब्रन-श्रदः। f. a. p.

()r:---

মৃত্যুব্দ অব | and so on, as in Past Indicative.

PROBUBILITY.

Present: Perhaps I shall exist; I may exist; It is likely, etc.

मार्डमा ने दाव पर मार्डमा ति स्ता पर

Or:-

ऑट मी फेंक्य पत्र 1. f. a. p.

Or :--

ब्रिट माध्येद में (or वर्गे)। f. a. p.

312

Past: I might exist.

महिमा निर्दे : ऑर् पार्थित। and so on, as in Past Indicative.

Or :-

महिमा होत्र अप का विकास कि के p.

Or :-

र्षेत् (or १५म) यप्पेक्यप्र । f. a. p.

व्यूर (or प्रमा) मधीद में or प्रमा f a. p.

HORTATIVE MOOD.

Present : I must exist ; I ought to exist.

चेंद्र'द्रमेंश f.a.p., or चेंद्र'द्रमेंशचेंद्र' f.a.p.

Or :-

એં- દ્વારાનું એન્ and so on, as in Indicative Present of Colloquial ખેનુવા

Or vulgarly :-

अर् द्वाचा भेद। and so on, as next above.

Past: I ought to have existed.

चित्रप्रभित्। and so on, as in Indicative Past.

Or :-

ल्र्र-र्वेक्षानुदा f. a. p.

Or vulgarly :--

ऑर्-र्नेव अंद। and so on, as in Indicative Past, but with प instead of

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Present and Past: That, or In order that, or So that I may or might exist.

चित्र प्रति द्वाया f. a. p.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Be; exist.

नुदः, or र्भेर्यानुँशः, or र्भेर्यानुशः, or र्भेर्यानुरः, or र्भेर्यानुशः, or र्भेर्यानुशः, or र्भेर्यानुशः,

If Attributive only, then বুঁঝ', or বুঁঝ' (Coll.), or বুঁহ' or সুঁঝ', or মার্হিণ

Prohibitive : মাম্বুমা, or মা (অঁস্যা) ব্রিস্, or মা (অঁস্যা) বর্তীস্, or মা (অস্যা) মার্চ্যা f. a. p.

Note.— उँना, or रेनाझ नेर, or रेनाझ नायर, or रूट, or आ may be added according to rule.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me exist.

प्रिन्यदुम्। (with or without देमा etc.) f. a. p.

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

I may exist; I am allowed to exist.

चित्र केना f. a. p.

Or:-

ळ्ट्राची.ची.लूर।

लूर.कूचा.ची.लूर. or परची।

ळूर.कूचा.चा.ळूर. or पर्चेचा or लूर.च.रुरे।

(This last may be conjugated on, according to mood and tense.)

OPTATIVE.

Oh that I existed; Would that I existed.

र्येर निना, or स्पर्धानिन। f. a. p.

314

PARTICIPLES.

Present: W571

Existing; Being.

Past:

व्यदःय।

Existed; Been.

Com. Perfect: चेंद्र'याभेद्र'य।

Having existed; having been.

Future: बार्म, or बार्मा About to exist or be.

PERIPHRASTIC EXPRESSIONS.

W5 3143 | Who or which exists or existed.

Which exists or existed.

प्रति (or प्रति) समित्। Who is to, or will, exist.

ब्राट मी (or ब्राट कु) श्रेष पदी Which is to, or will, exist.

लॅट में ज लेट में) दे।

Ditto.

君

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

মৃত্তি | As, since, because, etc. ... exists, exist.

At the time of existing: when, while exists, exist. ॲर्'यर्'र्राया

व्यक्ति In or by existing : if, when, ... exists, exist.

ब्रिन्त्य। Existing.

Wing Though, because cristing

स्दिन्दि देश For existing.

Past.

ळ्द्यमा

WTT551 As, since, because, when, after, etc. ... existen.

ॲर्-दा'वाहा।

💢 र जुड़ा | Though, because . . . eristed.

VERBAL NOUNS.

ॲर्म, or ॲर्यर्।

The existing.

UPINES.

स्त्रिंग, or स्त्रिक्षु।

ल्ट्रम्पर्दे द्वाया

ळॅर सुवै रेव व। ॲर अवै रेव व। To exist; To be.

For existing; For being.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ळॅइ'दा।

To exist : To be.

ल्ट्रम्भ्रम्।

To have existed : To have been.

ऑट नें (or ऑट क्युं) अवदा। To be about to exist.

N.B.—Wੱਤਿਧਾ may always be used for ਘੰਤ੍ਰਧਾ but ਘੰਤ੍ਰਧਾ may not be used for ਘੱਤਿਧਾ

II.—LITERARY 354 To exist; To be present; To be.

(N.B.—The forms in ATT are only used when that verb is being used as a mere copula.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I exist; I am existing; I am present; I am.

Same as in Colloquial.)

Or, elegantly but rather obsoletely :--

L. 知多刻 |

I exist.

हिर प्रदा

Thou existest.

मिं राहेश, or मारव, or महमाराधित। He evists.

Or respectfully :-

वद्वाः चेर्

BY WEA

प्रिंट. यवेबोश.' or शटंड.' or यवेबोश.रा.लूबी

N.B.-

মন্ত্রমান is an elegant form for আঁত্রা

मिरियः ,, ,, ,, पर्नियाय।

लम्भारा ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, ,,

सद्द , , a respectful ,, ,, ऑर्प]

चित्रमधारा ,, ,, ,, र्भिराय।

Past : I existed.

(Same as in Colloquial.)

Or :-

व्यद्भार मुर्देश f. a. p.

Or :-

آج آ f. a. p. I was....

र्भिर्परमुद्र प्रभेत्। and so on, as in second form of Indicative Past of Literary Wary

Or :-

मेर.तालुब।

Ditto.

Imperfect: I was existing.

(Same as Present, context showing tense.)

Perfect: I have existed; Pluperfect: I had existed.

(Same as Past.)

Future : I shall exist.

ळॅर्यर देनुर दें। f. a. p.

Or :--

विमुर्दे f. a. p. I shall be....

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present: If I shall exist.

(Present Root) " (any Future form as above).

Past: If I would exist.

(Perfect Root) " \$ " W5 Z" W5 and so on.

Or :-

... व ... यूर्यर मुर य भेवे | and so on.

Or :-

"ব্" নুহ'ম'অব। and so on. I would be...

Or :-

ं क् प्रमुद्देश f. a. p

Or :-

''ব্ শুন্ট্। f. a. p I would be....

Perfect: If I would have existed

(Perfect Root) "] 1, or "] 1, or "] 1, a. p.

Or :--

ं क्रियर मुर य र्षेत्। and so on.

Or :-

্র সুহ'হাঅব। and so on. I would have been.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: I can exist.

ळेर्न्यर बुझ श्री f. a. p.

Past: I could exist.

ल्र-प्रश्नुक्षायाक्षेत्।

र्भेर्यर दुरायत्रुण, or occasionally, chiefly interrogatively, भेदा

ळ्ट्रायर व्यायक्षेत्।

Perfect : I could have existed .

चित्र विकास चित्र and so on.

318

PROBABILITY.

Present: Perhaps I shall exist: I may exist.

शुःनेश " र्यूर पर प्रमुर रे । f a. p.

Or :-

ळॅर्यर:ब्रॅर्-र्रें। f. a. p.

Or :-

- ब्रॅंड्स्ड्रियम् (f. a. p.

Past: Perhaps I would exist: I might exist.

शुनेश " अर्परमुरप्पीर्। and so on.

Or : -

र्पेर्यरःश्रेर्ध्यभेद् | and so on.

Or : -

श्वानेश " ऑर्यरमुर रें। f. a. p.

Perfect: I would have existed: I might have existed.

सु-विध .. जूर-पर मुर-पर्जर। and so on.

Or :-

स्र्यरश्रीरयस्र। and so on.

HORTATIVE MOOD.

Present: I must exist; I ought to exist.

व्यन्तरम्बार्थः or व्यन्तरम् । f. a. p.

Past: I must have existed; ought to have existed.

व्यद् पर द्वाराय प्यत्। and so on.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Present and Past: In order that I may or might exist.

अर्परावन्तरम् स्था १. a. p.

Or :— ऑटासुरी दुर। f. a. p.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

प्रबुम्बरा भेषा or भेर्प्य मुर रेमा। Exist.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me etc., exist.

ळॅर्-रु-हुमा-हेमा or ळॅर्-यर-हुमा-हेमा f. a. p.

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present: I am allowed to exist.

चेंद्र'दाश'केंमा'में। f. a. p.

Or :-

พีรุ:นุร:35. [f. a. p., or พีรุ:นุลิ:ริศุส:ลั] f. a. p.

Past : I was allowed to exist.

चित्र्यसर्केनायाधित। and so on.

Future : I shall be allowed to exist.

र्भेर्'पशर्द्धवा'सर द्वीर रें। f. a. p.

OPTATIVE MOOD

Oh that I might exist.

०r:— ०r:— ०r:— ०r:— ०r:— ०r:— ०r:— ०r:— ०r:—

PARTICIPLES.

(Same as in Colloquial.)

PERIPHRASTIC EXPRESSIONS :-

Same as in Colloquial. Also:-

ळ्र-वेर्-सम्ब or ळ्र-वेर्-चर्च।

He who exists or existed

ळ्ट्.चेट्.ता

320

That which exists or existed.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present : Existing.

ळ्द्रदे, ळ्द्रवा, ळ्द्रवावा, ळ्ट्रकुर, ळ्द्रवि ळेटा, ळ्द्रवि ळेटा, ळ्ट्रवा, ळ्ट्रवा,

Past: Having existed ...

ळॅर्-रे-, ळॅर-पश्च, ळॅर्-दश्च, ळॅर-पायश्च, ळॅर्-प-र्-। etc.

VERBAL NOUN.

चेंद्रम क चेंद्रमदी।

Existing, To exist.

SUPINE.

व्यन्धर or व्यन्तु।

To exist.

INFINITIVES.

(As in Colloquial.) Also :-

ल्रं.तर.पंजर.व।

To be about to exist.

N.B.— \(\vec{\pi}\vec{\pi}\) may always be used instead of \(\pi\vec{\pi}\pi\), but \(\pi\vec{\pi}\pi\) may never take the place of \(\vec{\pi}\vec{\pi}\pi\) when the latter means To be present, To exist.

III.—COLLOQUIAL WATE To be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

अर

I am.

त्रुचा or occasionally दे5', or rarely, chiefly interrogatively भेद।

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Past: [was.

Imperfect: I was being. Same as Present, context showing Perfect: I have been. Tense.

Pluperfect: I had been

Future: I shall be.

… শ্রীপ্রধা

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present. If ... I shall be.

(Present Root with " of followed by either of above Future forms."

Past: If I would be.

Or :-

(Perfect Rodt) ... J. WIT f. a. p.

Perfect: If I would have been.

(Perfect Root) " 5" 5 W5 | and so on.

Or :-

(Perfect Root) "A" W5 or "A5A or 351 each f. a. p

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: Lean be. অসম্বন or অসম্বন্ধনা f. A. ...

322

Past: I could be.

মেব্রুব। f. a. p. context showing Tense.

Or :-

되다. 됩니 f. a. p.

Or :-

भेद मुद्राय भेद | and so on.

PROBABILITY.

Present and Past: I may or might be; Perhaps I shall or would be.

मार्डमा ने देन प्रता र कि. a. p.

Or ·-

स्प्रिम् भेद्रयाप्त्र। f. a. p.

Or :-

ऑट मी भेर में। f. a. p.

HORTATIVE MOOD.

Present: I ought to be: I must be.

धेर् र्मेश। f. a. p.

Past: I ought to have been; must have been.

মধ্বিত্য বুলা for 1st person, others taking ব্বুলা।
Purposive Mood.

'n order that I may or might b

भन्दादी देना f. a. p.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

चुँभ', मुभ', नेर्', or नेश।

गनेता

Do not be.

Be.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me, etc. be.

अव प्रद्वा | f. a. p. with देन or दूर or आ o । भारा ने or or

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present: I am allowed to be.

भेद हेंग। f. a. p.

Or :--

भेद केंगा मा भेर। and so on.

Past: I was allowed to be.

'भेड़' रुपा'र्सेट | f. a. p.

Or :--

धेर केना या धेर्। and so on.

OPTATIVE MOOD

Oh that I were: Would that I were.

ल्य ज्वा or ल्या ज्वा । f. a. p.

PARTICIPLES.

Present:

लबना।

Being.

Past:

लुब.च।

Been.

Com. Perfect :

ळॅर्या भेराय।

Having been.

Future :

लूट.मैं. or लूट.च्रे।

About to be.

PERIPHRASTIC EXPRESSIONS.

धेर्य or धेर्यारे।

Who or which is or was.

लूट.म्.मान्य।

ME.4.2

लूट.च्री.शास्त्र।

ॲट मिन्।

Who or which will be, or is or age ... to be.

324

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

भेदनुष। भेदन्देनुषः व।

At the time of being; when, while .. am, is.

अवव।

By. il. when . . am, is, are.

इंट. or लुब. इंट. ।

As, since, because .. am, is, are.

ध्येष त्य।

Being.

भेद्रया ।

As..am, is, are.

लेब परि।

Of or for being.

Past.

भेदर्घ। भेदर्यदेर्दश्या

When, while .. was, were.

धेर्याय।

As was, were.

लेब्द्रा।

भेद प्रश्

Having been; as, since, when, becausewas, were.

र्भेर्यायम्।

As, since, because, when ... was, were.

थेव धर्

3E.

श्रुब.ब्रट.।

VERBAL NOUN.

ध्यद्रश ध्यद्रश

Being; The being; To be.

SUPINES.

लुक्ता लुक्ता

भेवमा

To be.

INFINITIVES.

श्रेद्य।

ल्र्न्यल्य

लूट में क्ष्या

To be.

To have been.

To be about to be.

N.B.— 짜죽다! is only a copula, and may not be used for 짜둑다!
but 짜둑다 may be used for 꽈숙다!

Moreover, it must always be remembered that WAW, whether Colloquial or Literary, is never used substantively, but always in connection with some noun, adjective, or substantive or auxiliary verb, into which its forms have to be moulded.

IV.—LITERARY WATI To be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Présent : I am.

धेवः (व्)।

৭১না (না) or coasionally, chiefly interrogatively, এব।

Or, honorifically :-

(Not used: ordinary No. with 757 instead of F.)

मार्दे।

जन्मश. (ड्रॉ.) or जन्मश्र.त.लूब. (ड्रू)।

326

Past; I was.

Same as first Present form, context showing Tense.

Or :-

... यर्भवः (ब्रा)।

সন্ত্ৰ (মা) or occasionally, chiefly interrogatively এব। ... यथिर (र्वे।।

Imperfect: I was being.) Same as first Present form, con-Perfect: I have been text showing Tense; or same Pluperfect: I had been. as Past.

Future:

I shall be.

... धर.एचीर. (र्.)। ... घर प्रचीर. (र्.)। each f. a. 1 ... जूर प्रचीर. (रू)।

CONDITIONAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS.

Present: If I shall be.

ं दं त्रीर (र्)। f. a. p. (Present Root)

Past: 11 I would be.

ं वृः न्त्र्राध्यक्ष (र्वे) | and so on. (Perfect Root) ()r :--

…क्"नुर्दें। f. a. p.

Perfect : If ... I would have been.

(Perfect Root) " 4" TX TWT (5)1 and so on.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present : I can be.

भेद. बेंच. (च्र.)। f. a. p.

Or:— অধ্যমে বুঝ (ই)।

Past : I could be.

र्भेद मुदाय भेद (वि)। and so on.

Or :--

ध्येदगर-वृक्षायाध्येद (दि)। and so on.

Perfect: I could have been.

पेत्रवृत्रायाप्पर् (ह्)। and so on.

Or :-

धेदायर दुशाया सेर (र्रे)। and so on.

Or :--

भेद्र: मुद्र: श्रॅट: (ट्रें:)। f. a. p.

Or :-

लुब.चर.बेश.चैट. (ट्र.)। t. a. b.

PROBABILITY.

Present: I may be; Perhaps I shall be.

श्रे.वेश... वर. (or ... तर. or ... ग्रूर.) प्रीर. (रू)। f. a b

Or:-

धेव धर र्शेट् (र्दे)। f. a. p.

Or :-

भेदान त्रुमा (में)। f. a. p.

Past : I might be : Perhaps I would be.

शं.पुरा... वर. (or ... तर. or ... त्रूर.) चैर.त.लूब. (र्यू) | and so on

भवः पर होर् पा भवः (व) | and so on.

Perfect: I might have been : Perhaps I would have been.

श्चित्र... चर. (or ... चर. or च्रूर.) चैर.त.लूर. (रू)। and so on.

भेदायर श्रीदाय भेदा (र्हे)। and so on.

HORTATIVE MOOD.

Present: I must be; I ought to be.

Past: I must have been ; I ought to have been.

पेद्रपर:र्मेश पर्येद (दें)। and so on.

Or :--

क्षवायर द्वीश वुदः (हः)। f. a. p.

Or :-

धेर्द्रपर उट प्रधेर (रे)। nd so on.

Or :-

धेद यते देणहाय भेद (व) | and so on.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

In order that I may or might be.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me, etc. be.

भेदायर हुमा हमा। f. a. p.

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present: I am allowed to be.

धेव प्रशास्त्र (में) f. a. p.

Or :-

र्भेद प्रश्र केंग् में र्भेर (र्हे)। and so on throughout.

OPTATIVE MOOD.

Would that I were; Oh that I were

लूब्र.तर.चेर.श्वी। f. a. b.

VERBAL NOUN.

र्भेद्राय or भेद्राय है। Being : The being ; To be.

SUPINE.

धेव्यार or भेव्दा Tr be.

PARTICIPLES.

Present: 외국디 Being. 최국디 Not being.
Past: 외국디 Been. 레즈디 Not been.

Com. Perfect: अइया Having been. अइया Not having

Future: WE' or WE'] | About & WE or & WE' TI Not about to be.

PERIPHRASTIC EXPRESSIONS.

स्विद्धाः वर स्विद्धाः वर वि! स्विद्धाः सम्बद्धाः वर वि! स्विद्धाः सम्बद्धाः वर वि! स्विद्धाः सम्बद्धाः वर वि! स्विद्धाः ने वर्षे। स्विद्धाः ने वर्षे। स्विद्धाः ने वर्षे।

Who or which is or was.

Who will be, or is or are to be.

Which will be, or is or are to be.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

र्णद्रम्पते कें त्या र्णद्रम्पता हिता र्णद्रम्पता हिता र्णद्रम्पता हिता र्णद्रम्पता हिता र्णद्रम्पता हिता र्णद्रम्पता हिता

> ध्येद देश। ध्येद देश। ध्येद घरा।

At the time of being; when, while,

as .. am, is, are.

Being: as, since, when, after,
while .. am, is. are.

In or by being: if, when .. am,
is, are.

Being.

Though, since. because ... am, is,
ore.

Of or for heing.

Past.

Having been; as, since, when,

Because, since, when ... was, were.

ম্ব্রমা As ...was, were.

ম্ব্রমায় | After, since, because, when ..was,
were.

ম্ব্রমায় | If, when ...was, were.

INFINITIVES.

জিব্ব।

তি be.

তিব্যাসিক্ষ।

তি have been.

তিব্যাসিক্ষ।

তি have been.

তিব্যাসিক্ষ।

তি be about to be : going to be.

তিব্যাস্থ

V .- 4 To have ; To possess.

Same as Colloquial or Literary \$\subsection 5'\subsection To be present, To exist, save that it is conjugated with the subject in the Dative case with \$\subsection Thus:--

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I have: I possess.

E.네.近之1

To me there is.

हिर्लन्त्ना

To thre there is

मिंश्रें or तर्ना or स्रिन्स्देर। To him there is

and so on throughout.

VI. Active, Transitive, 4-rooted Colloquial verb

ROOTS

Present: निर्दे: Perfect: निर्दे: Future: निर्दे: Imperative: निर्दे!

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I send.

टश.चट्टि.।

हिंद्र गुरुष महेंद्र ।

मिश्रमिंद्रः।

Periphrastic Present: I am sending.

दशमिर्देट मी र्लेर ।

हिंद्र गुरुष महिंद मा स्पूर or बहुना

मिश्र महिंद मी अर or बहुमां or अर सारेड़।

N.B.—Pronouns are henceforth omitted, except where necessary to make the construction clear.

The construction is in the AGENTIVE, save where otherwise indicated.

Past : I sent. .

755'] f. a. p.

Or :-

मर्टाम्थिक्।

निहान ति प्रति or occasionally देह. or rarely (interrogatively) भेद।

यत्राचारेत् ,, ,, वतुमा ,,, ,, ,, ,, ,, ,,

지5다'시다' | f: a. p.

Imperfect: I was sending.

Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense; or

Perfect: I have sent.

Same as Past,

Pluperfect : I had sent.

Same as Past or Perfect.

Or, seldom used save at end of sentences:

वहदःब्हार्स्य ।

चर्टा दश सेर्- or पर्मा।

वद्रान्त्रसच्चेत् or प्रतुम्त or स्पेत्रपारेत्।

Future: I shall send.

चीर्ट्ट. (or चीर्ट्ट.) लूट.। t. a. b.

Or :--

महर्मान्य ।

मोर्टे. मी परुवा or देइ or क्षेत्र।

निर्देश के प्रमा or भेदा

Or :--

ग्रा भारत्। I am (or have) to send.

And so f. a. p.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS:

Present: If ... I shall send.

Present Root) "4" मिंदि (or मिंदि) स्प्रिंग f. a. p.

(Present Root) ज महिंदिन धेर्दा and so on.

Past: If ... I would send.

(Perfect Root) ज्याप्त | and so on.

Or :--

(Perfect Root) "기가 비중다" (or 미동다") 있다" f. a. p.

Perfect : If ... I would have sent.

(Perfect Root) "3" 755 7 7 7 and so on.

Or :- -

(Perfect Root) --- 4" - 255 - 25 or 255 - 25 - 25 - 1 f. a. p

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

except that 55 is usually confined to the first person, and 355 used with the others.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: I can send; am able to send.

महिंद में विश्व f. a. p.

_r:-

महिंद मुक्किए। f. a. p.

Or :-

गहें प्रवाणी स्था and so on.

Past: I could send.

निर्दे श्वर पार्थेक्। and so on.

Perfect : I could have send

पार्ट्र मुन पर्भेर् | and so on.

Or :-

मिर्नेह सुशाय प्रमा। f. a. p.

PROBABILITY.

Present: Perhaps I shall send; I may send; It is likely that I shall send.

ন্ত্ৰা ট্ৰিব্ৰ ... (Either form of Simple Future).

Or :-

महिंद मी भेदारा १५ व. p.

Qr :-

म्हिं मी भीत्र में। f. a. p.

Past: Perhaps I should send; I might send.

न्या हेर्न ... न्या भेता and so on.

or:

माठेमाचेर् वे चोर्ट्रिया f. a. p.

Or :-

वर्ट व भेर पाय्या f. a. p.

Or :-

वर्टा प्रमुद्रम् र a. p.

Perfect: Perhaps I would have sent; I might have sent.

मिर्डमा ने देन प्रतास्त्र । and so on.

Or :--

बहार वर्षेड्य प्रदा f. a. p.

Or :-

वर्ट क्यें दर्जे। f. a. p.

HORTATIVE MOOD

Present: I must send: I ought to send

... त्रामिहर देवें हा f. a. p.

Or :-

... अमिर्दि निकारी and so on.

Or :-

... तानार्नेट. द्रनिहा गु : भेद। and so on.

Or vulgarly :-

... त्रामार्ट द्वी वी स्पूर्। and so on.

Also the following, sometimes used:-

.. नार्टाभारेर्।

I am (or have) to send.

…四十八十八八

Thou ari (or hast) to send.

... यामहत्यारेता

He is (or has) to send.

Past: I must have sent; ought to have sent.

... व्यमहिंद ह्मीहा रा (or vulgarly हम् न) धेव। and so on.

Or :---

... अनिहिट देनीश नुदा। f. a. p., except that नुदा is usually confined to the 1st person, and विद्या used with the others.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Present: In order that I may send.

महिंद प्रदे दें दा। f. a. p.

Past: In order that I might send.

बदर बदे दें दें त्या f. a. p.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

- AE or AFE: Isend.

N.छ.--विमा (commonly but improperly देपा), or रेपाश मुर्, or र्पा , may be added according to rule.
अप रिं or vulgarly अपर्ि | Do not send.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me, etc. send.

च्रित्र नेपूर्ट : नश्ची. (कृती.)। च्रिन्न ग्रीम स्पूर्ट : नश्ची. (कृती.)। टश्म नेपूर्व : नश्ची. (कृती.)।

N.B.—The construction here is, "By me (or thee or him) a sending permit"

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present: I am allowed to send; I may send.

दश नार्देट केंग। f. a. p., or नार्देट केंग ना भेंद। and so on.

Past: I was allowed to send; I might send.

Future: I shall be allowed to send.

दश महिंद हिंग स्टिं! f. a. p.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Or :-

दर्भ महिंद र्हिन नि स्पिट | and so on.

N.B.—Here the construction is, "A sending by me is allowed, or was allowed, or will be allowed."

The following is more Bookish :-

दश्यार्टिः यश्रः केमा

I may send.

मिंद्र गुरुष मिंद्र पर रहेंग।

Thou mayest send.

मिश्रामिर्टर पश्र केना।

He may send.

OPTATIVE MOOD

Present: Oh that I, etc. were sending, or might send.

दशम्बेट्ट. जेना or दशम्बेट्ट. य. जेना।

Or, better :-

दशमार्नेट्य केमा या छ।

Past : Oh that I, etc. had sent.

टश. नरेट. जुंचा or चरेट. च. जुंचा।

Or, better :-

दश्यन्दर्वे केमायाषा

PARTICIPLES.

Present:

महर या

Sending.

Perfect:

7557

Sent.

Com. Perfect: 555 5 W4 4 1

Having sent.

Future :

मोर्रिट कुं or मार्रिट कुं भेद म। \ About to send.

ACTIVE OR PERIPHRASTIC.

महिंद आमार or महिंद नहीं or महिंद नहीं He who sends.

בובר: אותא or בובר: בילו

He who sent.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

337

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

338

महर आमद। He who will send, or is to send. 455-251 मारकुरे or महिंकुरी।

Or the following constructions may be used :-

महिंद्याम्बर्गिके।

Or :-

The man who sends.

मार्डेट मदे से दे।

मन्द्राम्बन्ते ने से।

The man who sent.

45t. 28.8.51

मार्टासाम्य में से।

Or :--

The man who will send or is to send.

महरायदे शरे।

See regarding Active and Periphrastic Participles generally, § 38, V. D.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

मॉर्ने: है।

Sending.

महरान्य ।

Sending; Because, since, when, while . . sending .

Sending; at, for, though sending.

Though, because . . sending .

As, since . . sending .

महिंद महिंद थ। महिंद नहिंद थ।

Whilst sending.

Having sent.

If, when, though..send, sending. etc., etc.

Past.

न्द्र है।

מבריםאן

225-481

コケニコ・ロを

न्द्र-मिश्र।

755-91

225.2.41

355.3.25.1

지5='다'여자 I

Sent; because, since, when . . sent.

Having sent.

Because, though ... sent.

If, when, though ... sent.

As, since, because, having ... sent.

etc., etc.

SUPINES.

To send.

For sending.

नहिंद्य। नहिंद्य। नहिंद्य।

नंदिः द्वे दिक्षाः।

गर्देर कुदै दें राय।

VERBAL NOUNS.

.INFINITIVES.

Present : निर्देश | To send.

455-व।

455-व।

455-वंधिक्य।

VII.—Active, Transitive, 4-Rooted LITERARY Verb 75-7

ROOTS

Present: निहः | Perfect: निहः | Future: निहः |

Imperative: श्री or न्रिन्तिना

N.B.—Pronouns are omitted, but the construction is in the AGENTIVE, save where otherwise indicated

> The अर्प्यस्प or placed over the reduplicated final consonant, or final vowel of a verb is also omitted.

> > I am
> >
> > Thou art sending
> >
> > He is

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I send.

महिन्। f. a. p.

Or. Intensively :-

महिन्यर वेद् । f. a. p.

Periphrastically :--

मार्टिन मीर स्पर

मोर्टर मेंब स्ट्रंड or बर्मा।

निर्देर मीद स्पेर or बर्मा or स्पर स देर।

Elegant but obsolete form : -

मार्टेट. चलुक् सम्बद्धा

महन्यविश्माद्य।

नहिंद्र चतिर सहस्र or महित or सहस्र मा भेरे।

Or :-

Same, substituting 35 for 735

Or, Respectfully :-

न्द्रनामिद्रः मीरार्थेत्।

हिंद् गहें दे नी दे सद्दे ।

ब्रिट-चर्ट्ट-च्रिय-प्रिवाया. or भटत. or वर्षेत्राय-ग्रन्थ।

```
342
```

Past: I sent.

755' f. a. p.

Or:-

नर्टन येष्व।

प्रदान or occasionally and chiefly interrogatively श्रेत्।

वनद्य भेदा

Or : -

디도 시구 ! f. a. p.

Imperfect: I was sending.

Same as Periphrastic Present, the context showing Tense

155 TWG | and so on, as in Past.

Or :--

गुद्रान्द्रियाँ प्राचित् (a. p.

Perfect': I have sent.

Same as Past.

Pluperfect : I had sent.

Same as Past, or :-

925-502.1

यहर अई or पर्मा

जर्म कर पर्ना or प्रमारेडा

Also, but seldom used, and only at end of sentences:

वर्दाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः

यहर दश्या or प्रमा or प्रारेश

Future : I shall send .

नाइद्र'। f. a. p.

Or : -

महिंद चर दिसुरा f. a. p.

Or :-

मार्ट्र पर छ। f. a. p.

Or:-

माइट ऑट | f. a. p.

And note the following :-

मार्ट्सु भेर

I am (or have) to send.

मार्ट्स दुन। or interrogatively भेद। Thou art (or hast) to send.

चिर्षः मैं.लूब।

He is (or has) to send.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present: If ... I shall send.

(Present Root) " are (any of the above Future forms), f. a. p.

Past: If ... I would send.

Same as Present, save that in the Introductory Clause the Perfect Root is used: or:-

(Perfect Root) " 4" 455 4 and so on.

Perfect : If .. I would have sent.

Same as Past.

Or :-

(Perfect Root) " 5" 75 7 W5 | and so on.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: I can send.

पहिंचित। t. a. p.

Or:-

महिंद्यर देश। f. a. p.

Or :--

महिंद मुन ऑद । f. a. p.

Past: | I could send.

महिंद श्रुव श्रद्धा (. a. p.

Or:

महिंदार कुश र्सिंद । f. a. p.

Or :--

पहिंद श्रुव य प्येष् | and so on.

Or:

नहें नर क्या या भेव। and so on.

Perfect : I could have sent.

महिंद्धुतायाधित्। and so on.

Or:

महित्य दश्य प्रभेत्। and so on.

PROBABILITY.

Present: I may send: Perhaps I shall send.

श्र-विश "निहा f. a. p., or महिट स्प्रिटा f. a. p.

Or :--

श्च नेश... नोर्ट्र. तर त्युर | f. a. p.

Or :--

महिंदानर होत्। f. a. p.

Or : --

महिन्द्राई। f. a. p.

Past: 1 might send.

महिंद शेर पार्थेष् | and so on.

()r:--

As in Past Tense, Potential Mood.

Perfect: I might have sent.

नॉर्डेट घुन सेंट । f. a. p.

Or: -

नार्दे: धुन श्राचेर्। and so on.

Or ._

महिंद होद दा स्पर् | and so on

HORTATIVE.

Present: I ought to send: I must send.

ः यानिहें वर द्वेश f. a. p.

Or :--

मॉर्टि: चर मुद्रे | f. a. p.

Or :-

मार्टिस्

I am (or have)

माइद्रम् or interrogatively भेदा Thon art (or hast) bo send.

He is (or has)

मार्टा मी. राज्या

Past: I ought to have sent.

.... वान्द्रिः नर द्रमें हा दार्थेद | and so on.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

So that I may send, or might send.

महिंदः महै हिंदा । महिंदः महै हिंदा था। महिंदः महै हिंदा था।

Each f. a. p.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me, etc. send.

चार्ट्र. तर. किंची. or चार्यट. 1

Or:-

चार्ट्र. टे.किमा. or मोब्र.।

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present: I am allowed to send: I may send.

निर्दे प्रशास्त्रमा f. a. p.

Oc :--

मिर्देट मशक्ति मिर्मे श्री and so on.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

346

Past: I was allowed to send: I might send.

महिंद्यक्षक्षायाधेन। and so on.

Or :-

महिंद प्रशास्त्र वा पार्थ | and so on.

Future : I shall be allowed to send.

मिट्र प्रशास्त्रम्।

Or : ---

महिंद नश्किमाधर त्युर। f. a. p.

Or :-

महिंदायश्क्रियायर वि f. a. p.

OPTATIVE MOOD.

Present: On that I, etc. were sending, or might send.

मिर्देट मु रे स दुट । 1. a. p.

Or :-

मॉर्न्ट वर वेना हेन। f. a. p.

Past: Oh that I, etc. had sent.

महिट पर मुर द अट । f. a. p.

Or :-

. मंद्र प्र ज्वा हेवा। f. a. p.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ब्रन्थ। ब्रन्थिया स्रम्भा

मोर्ट्र लिया।

... मार्नेट्र वर द्वेश।

Send.

अ'मर्टिः (लिमा)। Do not send. ... प्रमहिंद्र पर शेर्ज्य।

N.B. - विमा is not used with द्वारा

PARTICIPLES.

मार्टिया Sending. Present:

7557

755.92.41

Perfect :

यरट. मुक्रमा

45E.XIC.41

यरट.य.लुब.च। Com. Perfect:

Having sent.

Sent.

वर्ट्टियर देवीर व ।

महरायरामा

गर्डे- ना

गर्देट पर मात्रक्षाय।

About to send.

ACTIVE, PERIPHRASTIC, OR SUBSTANTIVE.

मार्ट्र आयव।

Future:

पहिंद नेर स्थापन।

महिंद्र याची।

महर नेर्या

महिंद्र मेर् मार्गे।

155... MEG 1

He who sends; the sender; the sending person.

He who sent. The sent,

348

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Or the following simple construction may be used :-

See generally, § 38, V. D.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.
As in Colloquial.

VERBAL NOUN, OR ADJECTIVE.

महिंद्य (वै)।

प्रमाण क्षेत्र क्ष्म क्ष्म क्ष्म क्ष्म हिंद्य क्ष्म क्ष्

SUPINES.

महिन्द्र ।
महिन्द्र ।

महिन्द्र ।

महिन्द्र ।

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

349

महिंद्रमध्रेद्रिन्तु। मार्देट मदे देव थ। महिंद्र मत्रे सुर-५।

For sending.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present: 95571

To send.

255.41

755.92.71

Past: पर्ट पर्यं प्रदा

यर्टाय जेराया

महर:य।

महर-पर-पना

महर-य।

Future:

मोर्टे-चर-मानश्रम।

मर्ट्रिनर वर वर्गर व महर मु व्यवपा

To have sent.

To be about to send; to be sent.

VIII.—Passive, 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 4557, 4554, नार्ट मुं, नर्ट मुं, or नार्ट मुं। To be sent.

Roots.

As in Active Verb No. VI.

N.B.—The construction throughout is in the OBJECTIVE or 'ACCUSATIVE case, with or without [4]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I am being sent. गर्ने मिर्भेर।

महरमियंद or पर्ना।

मार्डेट मी व्हें or पर्मा or व्हें पारेदा

Past: I was sent.

नरद्य भेदा

उद्भायत्वा or occ. देई or interr. भेदा

न्द्राचारेद् or प्रमा or rarely भेदा Or :-

775 75 | f. a. p.

Imperfect: I was being sent.

Same as Present, but with adverb or other context showing Tense,

Perfect: I have been sent.

बद्ध । and so on.

Or, same as Past.

Or the following, though seldom used save at end of sentence :-रदान्याण्डा and so on.

Pluperfect: I had been sent.

Same as Perfect.

Future : I shall be sent. As in Active Verb No. VI.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present : If .. I shall be sent.

Past: If .. I would be sent.

Perfect : I1 .. I would have been sent.

As in Active Verb No. VI.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: I can be sent.

Past : I could be sent.

Perfect : I could have been sent.

As in Active Verb No. VI.

PROBABILITY.

Present : I may perhaps be sent.

Past: I might

As in Active Verb No. VI.

HORTATIVE MOOD

Present : I ought to be sent ; I must be sent.

मन्दर-दम्बाराणी-ल्या and so on.

Or :--

निहर निहा में भेद। and so on.

वर्द्ध हैं। f. a. p.

नदर दर्गेश स्पर । f. a. p.

Past: I ought to have been sent

यर्टर्नेशयाधेत्। and so on.

Or :-

वर्ट्टर्नेश वृद् | and so on.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Present: In order that I may be sent. Past: In order that I might he sent.

As in Active Verb No. VI.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

मार्टें लिमा। गर्ने मान्द्र।

यददाया येद।

अमिर्टेन में नेरा

Do not be sent.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

मार्डेट (or यहरा) परुमा। Let me, etc., be sent.

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present: I am allowed to be sent.

गाँहर (or यहर) हिंगामा अह। and so on

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

352

And so on conjugating En' regularly.

Or :-

पाउँ (or पाउँ) केंग। f. a. p.

OPTATIVE MOOD.

Present: Oh that I were being sent.

महेंद (य) विमा f. a. p.

Or, better :-

महिंद केंग पार f. a. p.

Past: Oh that I had been sent.

पर्ट (प) ज्या। f. a. p.

Or, better :-

यद्र व केंगायाजा f. a. p.

PARTICIPLES.

Present:

महान। Being sent.

Past:

755.71 Been sent.

Com. Perfect: \$55.3.3454 | Having been sent.

Future:

निहः मुँ। About to be sent.

PERIPHRASTIC.

चरट.शक्रि

He who is or was sent.

He who will be sent.

Or the following simple construction may be used :-

दश्यन्दरास्त्राम्यमी से दे।

Or :-

दस्य वर्दा वर्ष से दे

मुँद् गुरु मार्ट सामक मुःद्ये क दे।

Or :--

हिंदि-किश्नानिट-केंदि-दिन्दि-हिं

The man who is or was sent by me.

The book which will be, or is to be, sent by thee.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

지도 원

45E.481

755.4% I

חזבים מאו

755-41

755.7.01

אלביטילבין

12C.1.UKI

नर्ट मीरा

Being sent, having been sent.

Because, since, when was or were sent.

Having been sent.

If, when, though..was or were sent.

As, since, because..was or were sent: having been sent.

Because, though .. was or were sent.

SUPINES.

म्रह्म मुर्

미주도 - -

지수도 됩니

म्राइट में।

गर्दे: कुरे देवाय।

To be sent.

For being sent.

45

354

VERBAL NOUNS.

वन्द्यदे।

नदरम्प्य यदे।

महरक्रे

ERBAL MOUNS.

The being sent.

The having been sent.

The being about to be sent.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

भेट्र-मी लुबत।

मिट्र कु भेदन।

महर मुं भेद य।

The same or :—

To be sent.

To be about to be sent.

IX.—Active, one-rooted Colloquial Verb 31957 | To see.

Root throughout ART

N.B.—The construction is in the AGENTIVE, except where otherwise indicated.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present : I see.

和第二 f. a. p.

Periphrastic : I am seeing.

अर्थेट मी भेर्।

अर्थे: मी व्यं or वर्गी

राष्ट्रिः मी स्पूर or 95म or स्प्रियरेर।

Past: I saw.

सर्वे: वुर * or सर्वेर सेंट । f. a. p.

* N.B.—35 for first person, 957 for the others.

Or :--

मर्डे: मार्थेव।

अर्चेट पत्रुच or occ. देर or rarely, chiefly interr. धेर्।

अर्वे-परेर ,, पर्मा ,, धेर्मा

Imperfect : · I was seeing.

Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.

Perfect : I have seen.

Same as Past.

Pluperfect: I had seen.

Same as Past or Perfect.

Or, seldom used save at end of sentence:-

अर्थेट दश भेर्। and so on.

Future : I shall see.

सर्बेट स्ट्रा | f. a. p. ~

Or :-

अर्थेट मी भेरी and so on.

Note also the following :-

मर्चिट कुं पोद । I am (or have) to see.

And so on.

Also :-

अविद्यानेत्। I am (or have) to see.

And so f. a. p.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present : If .. I shall see.

(Present Root) " বু" মই নী মৰ। and so on.

Or :--

(Present Root) " 4" अर्च - Wall f. a. p.

Past: If .. I would see.

(Perfect Root) " 5" N9 N 1 1. 4. p.

Or:—
(Perfect Root) "न् अविद्याप्त्वा f. a. p.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Similar to construction in 9559 | To send, No. VI.

PROBABILITY.

Present: Perhaps I shall see: I may see.

Same as in ASEA To send, No. VI.

Past: Perhaps I would see: I might see.

सर्वेद्याधिक पाय 5 ! f. a. p.

Or :-

सर्वेट मार्थेक दर्जे | f. a. p.

Or :--

मर्हना मुद्देन अर्बेट व्यट । f. a. p.

Or :-

महिमा नेदार कार्येट वार्यक्। f. a. p.

Or :-

Perfect: Perhaps I would or might have seen.

सर्वेद मार्थेद य प्रदा f. a. p.

Or :-

, अर्थेट वार्षेत् वर्षेत्र (f. a. p.

Or :-

माठिवा मेर् न अर्थिट मार्थेर। and so on.

HORTATIVE.

Present: I ought to see: I must see.
েশে মার্থি বিশ্বানী আবু | and so on.

Or :-

द्रात्मसर्वेद द्रमिहा गु भेद। and so on.

Or :--

... वास्प्रेट द्वीश चिट | f. a. p.

Or :--

भट्ट.मी.ल्रा

I am (or have) to see.

And so on.

Or :--अर्बेट :- अर्बेट :

I am (or have) to see.

And so, f. a. p.

Past: I ought to have seen; must have seen.

द्रायासर्वेद द्रमेंश दाधित। and so on.

Or :--

... (व. अर्बेट देनों श.चेंट.। f. a. p. But see note re चुंदा on p. 354.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Present and Past: In order that I may or might see.

सर्वेट:नेत्रेन्य। f. a. p.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

अर्घेट. (बिना)।

See.

असर्वेट. (धूना)।

Do not see.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

शर्त्रट.चक्रमा. (क्रमा)।

Let me, etc. see.

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present : I am allowed to see ; I may see.

सम्दिन्। f. a. p. and tenses.

Or :-

मर्चिट किमामी रेपेर | and so on.

358

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

And so on, conjugating 574 regularly.

The following is more Bookish:-

सर्वः प्रशः केमा f. a. p.

OPTATIVE MOOD.

Present and Past : Oh that I were seeing, or had seen.

अर्थ- विमा अंब्रेट.य.व्या। राष्ट्रीय केमायासा

PARTICIPLES.

Present:

शर्वेट.च।

Seeing.

Perfect:

श्रव्या

Seen.

Com. Perfect: রব্রীর বার্থার্য।

Having seen.

Future:

About to see. .

ACTIVE, PERIPHRASTIC, OR SUBSTANTIVE.

सर्वेट्सम्बर (रे)। मर्ह्राया (दे)।

सर्वट मर्गे।

र्खेट कुरी

अर्थे: अस्त (रे)।

He who sees or saw. The seer.

He who will see. The seer.

See also the other examples under this head in Thank To send, No. VI.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

राष्ट्र-हो।	Seeing.
सर्वेट यहा।	Seeing; because, since, when, whileam, is, or are seeing.
सर्वे:चव।	Seeing; at, for, though um, is, or are seeing.
अर्हेट मा श्रम	1
सर्वेट.य.ज	As, since am, is or are seeing.
भट्ट-ज।	
शहूट:भंडूट.ज।	Whilst seeing.
अर्थेट.चीश।	Though seeing.
अर्वेट द।	If, when, though am, is or are scen.
Pa	ast.
शर्वेट-वसा	
भग्नेंद्र-विद.ही।	Having seen.
भद्रूट.वैट.चश।	Seen; because, since, whenwas or were seen.
	or were seen.
भद्रेट-वुद-वस	Seen; because, since, whenwas or were seen. Having seen.
सबूट-वैद-क्ष। सबूट-वैद-कश।	or were seen.
भट्ट-विट-वज्ञा भट्ट-विट-वज्ञा भट्ट-विट-वज्ञा	Having seen. If, when, thoughwas or were
शहर-वैदःय। शहर-वैदःयःगश। शहर-वैदःयश। शहर-वैदःयश।	Having seen. If, when, thoughwas or were seen. Because, thoughwas or were
भग्न्-वैद्यामा। भग्न्-वैद्यामा। भग्न्-वैद्यामा। भग्न्-वैद्यमा।	Having seen. If, when, thoughwas or were seen. Because, thoughwas or were seen. Having seen; as, since, when
शहर-वैद्यम। भहर-वैद्यम। शहर-वैद्यम। भहर-वैद्यम। भहर-वैद्यम।	Having seen. If, when, thoughwas or were seen. Because, thoughwas or were seen.

360

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

SUPINES.

VERBAL NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present : मर्द्राया

To see.

Perfect : अर्थेट पुट पा

To have seen.

Future : अर्बेट कु प्येन्य।

To be about to see; To be seen.

X.—Neuter, One-Rooted Colloquial Verb 543.4 To be glad,

Root 573 | throughout.

Conjugated throughout like Colloquial মন্ত্ৰিন To see, save that in the forms in ইন্ধিন and ইন্ধিন the auxiliary particle is ইন্ধিন কিবা, while the Imperative is ব্ৰাইন্ট্ৰিন (ইন্মিন) or ব্ৰাইন্ট্ৰিন (ইন্মিন) or ব্ৰাইন্ট্ৰিন (ইন্মিন) or ব্ৰাইন্ট্ৰিন Rejoice, Be glad.

The construction throughout is in the Nominative, save that in the Hortative Mood it is in the Dative with as in AFTI To see, No. IX.

XI.—Neuter, One-Rooted LITERARY Verb 5737 To be glad, To rejoice.

Root 573 throughout:

N.B.—The construction is in the Nominative case, except where otherwise indicated. The START is omitted.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present : I am glad : I rejoice.

र्माद। f. a. p.

Or, intensively :-

नित्रम् रह्य। f. a. p.

Periphrastic: I am rejoicing.

न्माय मार्भेन्।

र्नाद.च.लूर. or परेगा।

नम्त्र मार्थेर or पर्मा or स्रिन्यन्त्।

Or:-

इमाद भे भे दें and so on; or इमाद में भे and so on.

Or:-

र्माद.म.ल्बा

द्वाद चद्वा or occ. chiefly interr. भेद।

नमाय मार्थेव।

Or :-

दमाद भे भेद। and so on.

Or, seldom used now :-

न्माद प्रवेद (or वेट) अक्षा

र्मार मंबुर (or ब्रेट) महिर। प्रमार मंबुर (or ब्रेट) महिर।

Past: I rejoiced: I was glad.

र्नाद ऑट | f. a. p.

Or :--

द्याद चरम्बुर हैं। f. a. p.

Or:

र्नाद न्यर मुर पर पेद। and so on.

Imperfect: I was rejoicing.

Same as Present, context indicating Tense.

Perfect: I have rejoiced.

Same as Past.

Pluperfect : I had rejoiced.

निवित्यर मुरार्ट्रे। f. a. p.

Or, though not common :-

५नान कर क्या पेर् | and so on.

Future : I shall rejoice : I shall be glad.

दमाद चेंद्र । f. a. p.

Or:-

र्वाय: यर: वर्ष्युर । 1. a. p.

Or :-

र्मात कुर्भेत्। I am (or have) to rejoice.

And so on.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present: If .. I shall rejoice.

(Present Root) " 5773777 f. a. p.

(Present Root) "4"593'95'31 f. a. p.

Or :--

(Present Root) "즉" 독기국 교다 | f. a. p.

Past : If .. I would rejoice.

(Perfect Root) ...व...वमार पर मुर पार्थ and so on.

Or :--

(Perfect Root) "즉" 독매국 고독 ŋ독주기 f. a. p.

Perfect : If: . I would have rejoiced.

(Perfect Root) "न" निम्नियम् मुरायस्त्र and so on.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: I can rejoice or be glad.

र्नात् घूरा f. a. p.

Or :-

देनोट.चर.वेश। f. a. p.

Or :-

न्माद मुच ऑट । f. a. p.

Past: I could rejoice.

Same as Present.

Or :--

र्पाय पर बुद्धाय प्रोत्। and so on.

Or :--

नित्र मुन दायी and so on.

Or :-

न्मात्र मुन होता f. a. p.

Or :-

निष्नित्यर नुष्ठाः स्टि । f. a. p.

Perfect : I could have rejoiced

र्नार ध्राया भेर्। and so on.

Or :-

नित्र पर वृद्याय भेरी and so on.

Or :-

र्नार मुन दार र्ना। f. a. p.

Or :--

द्वाद वर बुकाय द्वा f. a. p.

PROBABILITY.

f. a. p.

Present: Perhaps I shall rejoice: I may rejoice.

श. वेश. . रेवार वर रचीर।

Or :-

श्.चेश...रेथेठ.चर.वे।

Or:-

श्.चेश...रेचिर.लूट.।

Or :-

न्नाय पर श्री

Or :-

न्मायः श्रेन्।

Past: Perhaps I would or might rejoice.

निन्द्रिन्दाधिद्। and so on.

Perfect: Perhaps I would or might have rejoiced.

दमान श्रेद य प्येद्। and so on.

HORTATIVE MOOD.

Present: I ought to rejoice; I must rejoice.

.. ज.रेबोर. चर. रेबोस् । f. a. b.

Or :-

599.95.91 f. a. p.

Past: I ought to have rejoiced.

...प्रनित्वर न्विंशचर्येत्। and so on.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

PURPOSIVE.

Present: In order that I may rejoice.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{TAPA AR FAR | } \\
\text{Or :--} \\
\text{TAPA AR BR F. } \\
\text{Or :--} \\
\text{TAPA AR RATE AR F. } \\
\text{Or :--} \\
\text{TAPA AR RATE AR F. } \\
\text{TAPA AR RATE AR F. } \\
\text{TAPA AR RATE AR F. } \\
\text{TAPA AR RATE AR RATE AR F. } \\
\text{TAPA AR RATE AR RAT

Past: In order that I might rejoice.

Same as first three forms of Present.

न्त्रायर मुर पर्दे नेंद्र । f. a. p..

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me, etc. rejoice.

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present : I am allowed to rejoice ; I may rejoice.

... याद्वाद प्रशाहित्। (. a. p.

Past: I was allowed to rejoice; I might rejoice.
েনেব্ৰেয় মুখ্য কৰিব মুখ্য and so on.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

366

TIBETAN GRAMMA

OPTATIVE MOOD.

Oh that I were glad or rejoicing.

र्नार.व.इ.स.३८.।

रेबार.चर.चीर.बाकाट.।

रमार कर मेंगा हमा।

f. a. p

IMPERATIVE.

र्नार यर मुर लेगा

Or :-

15.54.61.5

... वार्वाव कर र्वाहा।

Rejoice, Be glad.

अन्मर।

Or :-

र्वात नर सरवीर विमा

न्याद्र स्ट के मा

... व्यद्वार वर भेर्वोश

Do not rejoice. Re not glad.

PARTICIPLES.

Present:

200.01

Rejoicing.

Perfect :

Com. Perfect: ५७१२ कर प्रभेदप। Having rejoiced.

रेचीठ.चर.चीच्याता

Future:

द्याद:चर:चु:व। द्याद:चु:चे About to rejoice.

ACTIVE, PERIPHRASTIC, OR SUBSTANTIVE.

र्नाद-आम्ब।

दमाय मार्भेर स्थामन ।

न्नाव च र्योद्धा

र्वात्रकर स्वामद्

द्वाद च र्सेन्य स्वत्य दे।

Matt. xi. 14. न्न्य कुं भेद्रयरे।

Matt. xi. 3. इन्न्य-विस्तर्भः यादे।

Rom. viii. 36. 599.95.55

He who rejoices or is glad. The rejoicer.

He who rejoiced, or was glad.

He who is about to rejoice, or will, or is to, rejoice.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

Same as in ANT To see, No. IX.

Past.

Same as in ARCA To see, No. IX, substituting & for grand & taking 5: instead of 8

VERBAL NOUN OR ADJECTIVE.

नम्यतः वर्षः (क्रे)। नम्यतः वरः मः (क्रे)। Rejoicing; A, or the rejoicing.

The having rejoiced.

The being about to rejoice.

TIBETAN GBAMMAR.

368

SUPINES

2010.021

599:31

त्वार पर देन (or देना or भेर है। For rejoicing.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Presen' 57777

To rejoice or be glad

Past:
\[\frac{590.65.0.01}{590.65.0.01} \]
\[\frac{590.65.0.01}{590.65.01} \]
\[\frac{590.65.0.01}

र्वार प्रदेशीर व

Future: 547.45.41 | To be about to reioice or he glad

XII.—Passive 4-Rooted, LITERARY Verb 455.43 g or 455.51 To be sent.

N.B.—The construction throughout is in the OBJECTIVE OF DATIVE case in A

Otherwise it is the same as the Active Literary Verb 755.7 To send, No. VII. as far as and including the Potential Mood.

HORTATIVE MOOL.

Present: I ought to be sent; I must be sent,

कर (or महिंदा) कर दिन्सा f. a. p.

Or :-

455.44.31 f. a. p.

Past: I ought to have been sent.

वदर (or महिंदः) वर द्वासायपित्। and so on.

Then it is again similar to Verb No. VII. as far as and including the Optative Mood.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PERIPHRASTIC.

महिंदानर पुरायः (दे or दे)।

He who or that which is or was sent.

Matt. xi. 3. महिंद्रभर (दें or दें)।
महिंद्रभ (दें or दें)।

He who or that which, will be, or is to be sent.

PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Same as in Colloquial Passive Verb 775° To sent, No. VIII.

SUPINES.

महित्यर।
महित्यर।
महित्यर: गुःगवे देवः दुः।
महित्यर: गुःगवे देवः दुः।
महित्यर: गुःगवे देवः दुः।
महित्यर: गुःगवे देवः।

To be sent.

For being sent.

VERBAL NOUNS.

महिंद्यर पुरावहै। महिंद्यर प्रमुद्दावहै।

The being about to be sent.

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

महिंद्य प्रस्ता | To be sent.

महिंद्य प्रस्ता | To have been sent.

XIII. -Active, 2-Rooted Colloquial Verb QT 7 To go

ROOTS.

Present:

वन्।

Perfect:

श्रद्धः or देव।

Future:

वर्गे।

Imperative:

(क्या or क्या) With Particle

N.B.—The construction throughout is in the NOMINATIVE case.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present : 1 90.

प्रमा f. a. p.

Periphrastic: I am going.

व्रमें में जर्

वर्जे. क. तर्मा

वर्ज्ञ निर्वेदः or वर्जुन or स्प्रियरेर्।

Past: I went.

The or \$41 f a. p.

372

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Or :--

श्राट मध्ये

बॅट यद्वा or occ. देई or rarely, chiefly interr. यद्

र्शेट परेर , युना , प्येरा

Or :--

धुन्यध्य and so on.

Imperfect: I was going.

Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.

Perfect: I have gone.

Same as Past.

Pluperfect: I had gone.

Same as Past.

Or, seldom used save at end of sentences:

श्रेट दशर्भेर्। and so on.

Or :--

युद्धाः भेर्। and so on.

Future: I shall go.

वर्गे भेट । f. a. p.

Or:-

वर्में में भेद। and so on.

Or :-

··· वाद म् अर्देत्। I am (or have) to go.

f. a. p.

Or:-

द्रम् क्युं धोत्। and so on. I am (or have) to go.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present: If ... I shall go.

(Present Root) "] ATTWE! f. a. p.

Or:-

(Present Root) प्राची पाँची and so on.

Past: If ... I would go.

(Perfect Root)...Same as Present, context indicating Tense.

Or :-

(Perfect Root) "ব্ মিন্স (or খ্রীব্না) দীবা and so on.

Perfect: If ... I would have gone.

(Perfect Root) ত্ৰান্থ (or খ্ৰীৰ্ম) অব্ and so on.

(Perfect Root) ··· 즉 ·· 친구 · (or 월즉) 교기 f. a. p.

(Perfect Root) ''국' '최도' (or 결국) 유등피기 f. a. p.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present: I can go.

त्र्ने ध्रुव। f. a. p.

Or :--

दर्ने मुक्किए। f. a. p.

Or :--

दर्ने मुन्ने भेर्। and so on.

Past: I could go.

वर्मे मुन या भेद। and so on.

Perfect: I could have gone.

त्र्भिष्यपर्भे | and so on.

Or :--

त्र्ने वुक्यत्रुम्। f. a. p.

PROBABILITY.

Present: Perhaps I shall go: I may go. আইনান্ত্ৰি, ব্ৰামিনা I f. a. p.

महिमा हो देव पर्मों मी भेरी and so on.

दर्नो ने भेद यद्। f. a. p.

वर्गेमी अंदयमें। f. a. p.

Past: Perhaps I might go.

मार्डमा नेद:द" प्यदाप (or र्सेट्रम) ध्येत्र | and so on.

होदा (or स्टाप) लेदायत् ! f. a. p.

मुद्रम (or स्ट्रिंग) ध्रद्रम्म्। f. a. p.

· Perfect : Perhaps I might have gone.

महिमा ने देन का निकार (or र्काट न) स्ति। and so on.

क्षेद्रय (or ब्रॅंट्च) ब्रॅंट्य द्र् ! f. a. p.

धुद्रादा (or श्रीट पा) प्यद्गत्वा f. a. p.

HORTATIVE MOOD.

Present: I ought to go; I must go.

द्रन्द्रम्थ। f. a. p.

वर्में द्विंश गुः भेद्। and so on.

वर्में दर्मेश खेंद्र । f. . p.

Or vulgarly :— ६म् ६म् मि भे भे and so on.

दर्ने दर्ने भेटा f. a. p.

व्र्वाद्वानाध्या and so on.

Past: I ought to have gone.

दर्ने द्रमें स्पर (or vulgarly द्रमें मा) भेद। and so on.

Or :-

वर्ने दिने सिन्द्र कि. a. p. But see note re नुदः, p. 354.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Present: In order that, or so that, I may go.

वर्ने नित्रे देवाया f. a. p.

Past: In order that, or so that, I might go.

होब्दार्य. (or श्राट पर्य.) र्देब ता f. a. p.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

지도 (축계) | Go. 환도 (축계) | Go. 환도 (축계) | Do not go.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

वर्ने.चक्रमः (क्रम)।

Let me, etc. go.

PERMISSIVE MOOD.

Present: I am allowed to go: I may go.

वर्गे केंगा f. a. p.

Or :-

व्रमुं किना नी भेर्। and so on.

(N.B.—Other Tenses may be formed by conjugating ক্র্যা

OPTATIVE MOOD.

Present: Oh that, or would that, I were going.

ব্লু ব ক্রল ন থে। 'Or:— ব্লু ব্ন ন্ন্ন। 376

TIBETAN GRAMMAR.

Past: Oh that, or would that, I had gone.

खेब (or श्राट.) ब्रेक्ट्रेनातास्त्र।

Or :-

त्रेयदार (or श्राट पर) स्वा।

(N.B.—The expressions in An | are not much used in Colloquial, being rather Literary.)

PARTICIPLES.

Present:

वर्गेवा

Going.

मुक्य।

Perfect:

श्रद्भा

स्प्राचा ।

बुद्य पद्य।

Com. Perfect: 🏋 🌣 🎖 Having gone.

Future:

वर्में में लेका।

About to go.

ACTIVE, PERIPHRASTIC, OR SUBSTANTIVE.

वर्गे.शाम्ब।

वर्गेन्द्री

He who or that which goes; The goer.

Tre

हेब. (or श्रूट.) श्रामधा

मुन्य दे।

XE. 2.51

उर्जे.मी.शामर।

He who, or that which went.

He who or that which will go, or is to go.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

As in Colloquial Verb अधिदान To see, No. IX, वर्ने taking हैं, होंद्र taking हैं, and देन taking हैं If श्रेटश be used it would take है।

SUPINES.

 दर्ने कु।
 To go.

 दर्ने कु।
 To go.

 दर्ने कु।
 For going.

 दर्ने कुवे देवा।
 For going.

VERBAL NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES.

R河(中) (元) | Going ; a or the young.

R河(中) (元) | The having gone.

R河(東) (元) | The being about to yo.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Future: दर्भे कुर्या To be about to go.

378

XIV.—Active 2-Rooted LITERABY Verb () To go.

ROOTS.

Same as in Colloquial Verb, No. XIII, omitting 5

N.B.—The construction throughout is in the Nominative case.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I go.

द्रज्दा f. a. p.

Periphrastic: I am going.

वर्गे में प्रदर्श

वर्जेमिल्रेर.रे or वर्मामा

वर्ज्ञमाळ्यर्दे or वर्ज्जामा or ळ्र्रायरेर्द्री

Or :-

विम्यास्त्री and so on.

Past: I went.

शिंदिं or धुन्ति। f.a.p.

Or :-

युक्सार दें। f. a. p.

Or :--

स्ट्रियणेदर्दे।

र्राट पत्रुवानी or occ., chiefly interr. भेद्र दे।

श्रान्याभवार्वे।

Or :-

युद्धप्रभादे। and so on.

Imperfect: I was going.

Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.
Or:-

श्रीराच (or श्रेक्स) ध्रेक्क् | and so on.

()r :

र्शेट विट (or युन्विट) स्निप्त स्मिन्दिन् and so on.

Perfect: I have gone.

Same as Past.

Pluperfect: I had gone.

Same as Past.

Or, seldom used save at end of sentence:-

र्सेट' (or दुव) दशक्रिं दें। and so on.

Or : --

र्सेट (or दीव) चेंदिरी f. a. p.

Future: I shall go.

वर्ने चरत्वर दे। f. a. p.

Or :--

वर्जे. चर. नेत्। f. a. p.

Or :-

त्र्योभटाः | f. a. p.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present: If ... I shall go.

(Present Root) " (any simple Future).

Past: If ... I would go.

(Perfect Root) স্থান (or মুধ্য) অব্ৰা and so on.
Or, same as Present.

Perfect: If ... I would have gone.

(Perfect Root) "有"祝工口" (or 是有口) 五子子 and so on.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Same as Potential Mood in Literary 755.7 To send, No. VII, using Root And throughout.

PROBABILITY.

Present: Perhaps I shall go ; I may go.

भुवेश। ... (simple Future).

(m -

वर्ने वर रेर्न् । 1. a. p.

380

Or:— 乌河敦5克 f. a. p.

Past: Perhaps I would go; I might go.

द्र्ने र्र्द्र्य भेद्र्व | and so on.

Perfect: Perhaps I would have gone; I might have gone.
৭ নাম্ব্ৰেম্ব্ৰেম্ব্ৰ

HORTATIVE MOOD.

Similar to Literary 5557 | To send, No. VII.

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Similar to Literary 7527 | To send, No. VII, using Root 27 in Present Tense, and 35 or No. in Past Tense.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

 Or:—
 (Or:—

 Or:—
 (Or:—

PERMISSIVE AND OPTATIVE MOOD.

As in Literary 3553 | To send, No. VII, keeping the construction in the Nominative case and using the appropriate roots.

IMPERATIVE.

 0r:—

 २र्ने वर्र्या वर्षा व्याप्त क्षित्र ।

 0r:—
 ८०, Ведоно

 २र्ने वर्र्य व्याप्त क्षित्र ।

381

सन्त्री। त्र्ना पर शेर्निश। Do not go. पर्मे. चर. श्र.मीर . हिमा वर्गे पर शे परें। PARTICIPLES. वर्गे न। Present: Going. श्रद.व. or त्रेथता, Perfect : श्राट. (or होब.) श्र्रदा। Gone. श्राट. (or होंद.) हार्य ता। श्रद्भातः (or द्वेदम) प्रदेशी Com. Perfect : श्रूट. (or होत.) क्र. चलावे.च। Having gone. शूट. (or द्वेब.) चुब.च.लुबेच।

Future:

त्र्ये.चर.चंग्वर.च। वर्जे.चर.चंग्वर.च।

वर्गे.व।

उम्मी

About to go.

ACTIVE OR PERIPHRASTIC OR SUBSTANTIVE.

Same as in Colloquial No. XIII, save for the following:—

त्र्में यरत्रमुरः वःदे। द्रमें यर मुखदे। द्रमें मुख्यान्दे। द्रमें मुख्यान्दे। द्रमें सम्बन्ध

He who or that which will go, or is to go.

382

PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Same as in Colloquial No. XIII.

VERBAL NOUNS.

 वर्ण न (दे)।
 Going: a or the going.

 क्षेट न (दे)।
 The having gone.

 क्षेट न (दे)।
 The being about to go.

 वर्ण क्रें न (दे)।
 The being about to go.

SUPINES.

 역한 1
 To go.

 역한 1
 To go.

 역한 1
 To go.

 역한 1
 For going

 역한 기술·영尔 1
 For going

INFINITIVE MOOD.

 Present: スラコー
 To go.

 Nata or 資本日
 Nata or 資本日

 Perfect:
 Nata (or 資本) 多次日 |

 Nata (or 資本日) 以入日 |

४जॅ.चर.चै.च। ४जॅ.चर.४चैर.च।

Future: द्र्नेप्रम्बद्धाः

वर्षे वर्षेचा To be about to go.

XV.—Two-rooted LITERARY Verb RTTD | To become. To be changed, To be turned, To grow, etc.

N.B.—This verb is often used as an Auxiliary verb, and the way in, and extent to which, it is so employed, is best seen in the other Literary Conjugations. It is purely classical.

The construction here is in the NOMINATIVE case.

ROOT.

Present: २५२ | Perfect: ५२ | Future: २५२ |
Imperative: ११ | but sometimes ११ |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I become.

विगुर:रें। f. a. p.

Periphrastic: I am becomina

व्यार गीव भेर ने

वन् र गुन स्पर् रें or वर्गमें

वनुर निम्पिर रें or वर्गारी or भेर यरेर रें।

Past: I became.

मुर or मुर हैं। f. a. p.

मुर्याधिक वि।

मुरदात्र्यामी or occ. chiefly interr. धेवादी

मीर.ता.लुब.च्।

384

Imperfect: I was becoming.

Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.

Or :--

मुराधभेदाँ and so on.

Or :--

मुर-बिट-ऑर्-यार्थेद-वें। and so on.

Perfect : I have become.

Same as Past.

Pluperfect: I had become.

Same as Past.

Or, though seldom used :-

गुर्द्धाः पर्दे f. a. p.

Or:-

मुरच्चित्री f. a. p.

Future: I shall become.

वनुर वस वनुर रें। f. a. p.

वनुरः वरं नुदें। f. a. p

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present: If ... I shall become.

(Present Root) " (simple Future).

Past: If ... I would become.

(Perfect Root) "] 15 f. a. p.

Ur:--

(Perfect Root) "ব্" নুহ্মের্র্ and so on.

Perfect: If ... I would have become.

(Perfect Root) " T" TX TX T | and so on.

POTENTIAL MOOD. PROBABILITY, HORTATIVE MOOD.

(As in Literary Verb 57777 | To be glad, No. XI.)

PURPOSIVE MOOD.

Present: So that I may become.

विश्वर विश्वर के प्राप्त के कि के प्राप्त के कि के कि

Past: So that I might become.
নুহামান হিন্দ্ৰ or দ্বাহাত্য f. a. p.

PRECATIVE MOOD.

Let me, etc. hecome.

PERMISSIVE AND OPTATIVE MOODS.

As in Literary The To send, No. VII, keeping the construction in the Nominative Case, and using the appropriate Roots.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PARTICIPLES.

386

Gom. Perfect: नुरः र्ढरः प्रभेदः य।

पुरः चेदः प्रभेदः य।

पुरः चेदः प्रभेदः य।

द्युरः परः द्युरः य।

द्युरः परः द्युः य।

द्युरः परः द्युः य।

द्युरः परः द्युः य।

द्युरः परः द्युः य।

About to become.

PERIPHRASTIC EXPRESSIONS.

स्वार प (ने or दे।

प्रार भावत (न or दे)।

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Same as in AAT To see, No. XI. using the appropriate Roots.

Both AAT and AAT take 7 and AAI

AUXTI SUPINES.

AUXTI To become.

वनुर पर्दे देव रू। विचार चर् दूर थ। वन्तर वर्ष सुर-५।

VERBAL NOUNS.

विचेर.च. (ब्रे)। क्रीर.त. (ब्रे)। वर्गर.घर.वर्गर.घ. (मू)। वर्चेर.चर.चे वः (कृ)। वन्तरमुः धेरायः (वे)।

Becoming A or the becoming. The having become.

The bring about to become.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present: Antal

To become.

Perfect : गुरःर्करःम।

वर्तीर.घर.वर्जेर.घ।

Future: Ant. at. au

वितीर.चर.पोड्स.त। विचेर.में.लुर्ता

To be about to become.

XVI Active. 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 355 To do. To make.

etc.

N.B. -The construction is in the AGENTIVE case, save where otherwise indicated.

ROOTS.

Present: 55| Perfect: 58| Future: 5| Imperative: र्वेश, नेर, नेस, नेस।

388

The construction is throughout similar to that of Colloquial 7555 To send, No. VI, up to and including the Optative Mood, save for the following:—

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

 जैंदा नेगा

 जैंदा नेगा

 जैंदा नेगा

 जैंदा नेगा

 अप्तेगा

 Do not do.

N.B.—The form 35 Do is probably really 581

PARTICIPLES.

As in Colloquial 755 To send, No. VI.

ACTIVE OR PERIPHRASTIC EXPRESSIONS.

As in Colloquial 45 To send, No. VI.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Present.

वित्ता विश्वा

Doing

Because, since, when, wnile...

And so on, as in Colloquial To send, No. VI.

Past.

वस्यक्ष। वस्यक्ष। वस्यक्ष।

Having done.

Because, since, when . . did, or was done, or had done.

And so on, as in Colloquial The To send, No. VI.

Supines, and Verbal Nouns and Infinitive Mood.
As in Colloquial 7557 To send, No. VI.

XVII.—Active, 4-Rooted LITERARY Verb, 35.27 To do, To make, etc.

Roots.

Present:

As in Active Colloquial Verb, No. XVI.

Future:

Imperative : नुस (नेन)।

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present: I do; I make.

3551 f. a. p.

Intensive: I do do; I do make.

वेदायर वेदादी f. a. p.

Periphrastic: I am making.

नेन कुन व्यन्ते।

जेर गुन पर रें or वर्गमा।

नेन गुन व्यन्तर or वनुनामा or व्यन्यर दिन

Or, elegantly, but seldom used :-

नेर.१८.भक्ष.म्।

नित्रिम्मित्रे।

नेद्र-हिट्सकेस-स्. or नेट्रं. or बकुश-दालुबंह्री

Past : I made.

पुरुष् [f. a. p.

Or :-

क्षयप्रेक्ट्रे।

मुख्यवृत्मामा or occ., chiefly interes धेन्द्री

न्यान अवर्षे।

Or:

QN'NE'E' | f. a. p.

Imperfect : I was making.

Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.

Or:-

नुषायाभेदार् and so on.

Or :-

नेद्रजीद्रभद्रप्रभद्दे। and so on.

नुसन्भिर्ध्यस्य भेदादें। and so on.

Perfect : I have made.

Same as Past.

Pluperfect: I had made.

Same as Past.

Or :--

5年近5天 1 f. a. p.

नुशार्कर शेंट टें | f a. p.

Or, though seldom used :-

नुसादसार्थेर्'र्रे। f. a. p.

Future : I shall make.

35.47.99 1 f. a. p.

्रा प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त विश्व कि कि विश्व कि व

- 35 WE'E' | f. a. p.

Or:-

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

Present : If ... I shall make.

(Present Root)... " (any simple Future as above).

The rest as in Literary 4755.7 | To send, No. VII.

The other Moods as in the same Verb No. VII, down to and including the Optative Mood, with appropriate Roots, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

डेर्न्स्टर्स्स्य डेर्न्स्टर्स्स्य डेर्न्स्टर्स्स्य डेर्न्स्टर्स्स्य डेर्न्स्टर्स्स्य डेर्न्स्टर्स्स्य

Make.

Do not make.

PARTICIPLES.

Present:

नुन्य।

Making.

वश्या।

Perfect :

वशक्राव।

Made.

विशः क्रेया।

Com. Perfect :

नेशत्रमूरिया।

Having made.

2.01

नुरम् प्रमा

मुन्त्रम् जिन्या

Future

नुर्यर विगुर व।

नुर्यर नुव।

नुर्यरम्बस्य।

विके.गुरात।

चे.ठ में. लुब.त।

About to make.

ACTIVE OR PERIPHRASTIC PARTICIPLES.

हेर-माम्य। हेर-माम्य।

नेद्रायादे।

चेकाश्रीवर्।

He who or that which makes or does; the maker or doer.

He who or that which made or did.

नुमान्त्।

प्रचरे।

नेत्यरत्युरःवर्। नेत्यरःवयर्।

न मुर्थिय मरी।

He who or that which will make or do, or is to make or do.

Or the following simple construction may be used :-

निमास्त्रमः नेर्त्यते रिन्त्यार्त्रा भाषात् ।

The carpenter who makes the box.

युनासमः मुन्दे न्युः महंन् त्यन्यारः ने।

The carpenter who made the box.

The carpenter who will make, or is to make, the box.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS.

As in Colloquial 357 | To make, No. XVI.

SUPINES.

डेर्पर। डेर्पर रेंग्री डेर्पर रेंग्री डेर्पर रेंग्स। डेर्पर रेंग्स।

To make

For making

VERBAL NOUNS.

चकः (के)। चेत्रःयः (के)। चेत्रःयः प्रचुः (के)। चेत्रःयः प्रचुः (के)। चकः प्रवेशः (के)। चकः प्रवेशः (के)।

Making; a or the making.

The having made.

The being about to make.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present: 35'41

To make.

नुश्य।

Perfect: 54.65.01

वेश.चुरे.ता

विश्वाय भेद्य।

नुदायरादनुराव।

न्तरम् ।

गुर्यायरमा ।

नेरकु येदय।

Future :

ने के लुक्ता

901

नुन्दर्गे क्रिया।

वि.जर्जे.लुब्सा

To be about to make.

To have made.

XVIII.—Passive, 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 커플 바다 or 때문대 To be made, To be done, etc.

394

Conjugated on the lines of Passive Colloquial Verb 75-51

XIX.—Passive, 4-Rooted LITERARY Verb 57 To be made, To be done, etc.

Conjugated on the lines of Passive LITERARY Verb 75.75.71

To be sent, No. XII, as far as, and including, the Compound Perfect of the Participles, and with the appropriate Roots, etc. Then:—

PARTICIPLES.

बुर्यः तर्यवीरः च। बुर्यः तरः चेवा

Future: नुर्मु भेद्रम

ने में कूर त

991

About to be made or done.

OTHER PARTICIPIAL EXPRESSIONS

Present.

छेर:रे। अधे।

नेर्यम।

नियम।

Being made or done.

Because, since, while, when... being mode or done.

And so on as in LITERARY ACTIVE, No. XVII.

Past.

9र्था रे।

JAI. CAN

Having been made or done.

Because, since, when... is or was made or done.

Ar so on as in LITERARY ACTIVE, No. XVII.

SUPINES.

7.041 531 नेर पर। नेत्र। मु:मदे:र्नेष: (or र्नेष: or धुर:र)। 32. 54.5. (or 54.21. or 35.5) | For being made or done. डेर्पन र्ने प्र (or र्ने प्र or क्षेत्र र।

To be made or done.

VERBAL NOUN.

वयः (व)।

Being made or done. A or the being made or done.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

991

वे.में.लुब्त।

Future: 35 मा अवा

35.02.3.01

Past:

नमायर लेब य।

To have been made or donc.

XX .- Passive LITERARY Verb 35 3 3 7 7 7 To be, made or done, etc.

In conjugating this Verb, 35'55' remains constant throughout, while the rest is in LITERARY W5'W To be, No. II.

396

TIRETAN GRAMMAR.

Or, while keeping 35.4% conctant throughout, LITERARY QUEST No. XV may be substituted for LITERARY W5.41

But then the meaning is,—To become made or done, To be about to become made or done.

FINIS.

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh Agamnigam Digital Preservation Foundation, Chandigarh

A DICTIONARY OF TIBETAN AND ENGLISH

By Alexander C De Koros

compiler of this classic The Dictionary who was a Hungarian by birth, came to India and visited Tibet in the early part of the last He being a Hungarian, century. did not know English or Tibetan and had to take the active help and assistance of an intelligent Lama, Sangh-Rayas Phun-Tshogh, for the preparation of this work. Dictionary was compiled authentic sources and under the able guidence of the native Lama in who's intelligent powers the author had full confidence, and who was thoroughly versed in Buddhistic literature in general, well acquianted with the customs and manners of his nation, and possessed of a general knowledge of those branches of science that are more essential for the preparation of a Dictionary.

The technical terms, in arts and sciences, have been rendered into syllebic equivalents in Tibetan. according to a system framed expressly for the purpose by the contemporary scholars who engaged themselves in the translation of the Sacred Works of the Buddhist into the later languages; as may be seen in the several vocabularies of Sanskrit and Tibetan terms, of which a large number has been translated by the compiler of this Dictionary.

